



Informazioni su questo libro

Si tratta della copia digitale di un libro che per generazioni è stato conservata negli scaffali di una biblioteca prima di essere digitalizzato da Google nell'ambito del progetto volto a rendere disponibili online i libri di tutto il mondo.

Ha sopravvissuto abbastanza per non essere più protetto dai diritti di copyright e diventare di pubblico dominio. Un libro di pubblico dominio è un libro che non è mai stato protetto dal copyright o i cui termini legali di copyright sono scaduti. La classificazione di un libro come di pubblico dominio può variare da paese a paese. I libri di pubblico dominio sono l'anello di congiunzione con il passato, rappresentano un patrimonio storico, culturale e di conoscenza spesso difficile da scoprire.

Commenti, note e altre annotazioni a margine presenti nel volume originale compariranno in questo file, come testimonianza del lungo viaggio percorso dal libro, dall'editore originale alla biblioteca, per giungere fino a te.

Linee guida per l'utilizzo

Google è orgoglioso di essere il partner delle biblioteche per digitalizzare i materiali di pubblico dominio e renderli universalmente disponibili. I libri di pubblico dominio appartengono al pubblico e noi ne siamo solamente i custodi. Tuttavia questo lavoro è oneroso, pertanto, per poter continuare ad offrire questo servizio abbiamo preso alcune iniziative per impedire l'utilizzo illecito da parte di soggetti commerciali, compresa l'imposizione di restrizioni sull'invio di query automatizzate.

Inoltre ti chiediamo di:

- + *Non fare un uso commerciale di questi file* Abbiamo concepito Google Ricerca Libri per l'uso da parte dei singoli utenti privati e ti chiediamo di utilizzare questi file per uso personale e non a fini commerciali.
- + *Non inviare query automatizzate* Non inviare a Google query automatizzate di alcun tipo. Se stai effettuando delle ricerche nel campo della traduzione automatica, del riconoscimento ottico dei caratteri (OCR) o in altri campi dove necessiti di utilizzare grandi quantità di testo, ti invitiamo a contattarci. Incoraggiamo l'uso dei materiali di pubblico dominio per questi scopi e potremmo esserti di aiuto.
- + *Conserva la filigrana* La "filigrana" (watermark) di Google che compare in ciascun file è essenziale per informare gli utenti su questo progetto e aiutarli a trovare materiali aggiuntivi tramite Google Ricerca Libri. Non rimuoverla.
- + *Fanne un uso legale* Indipendentemente dall'utilizzo che ne farai, ricordati che è tua responsabilità accertarti di farne un uso legale. Non dare per scontato che, poiché un libro è di pubblico dominio per gli utenti degli Stati Uniti, sia di pubblico dominio anche per gli utenti di altri paesi. I criteri che stabiliscono se un libro è protetto da copyright variano da Paese a Paese e non possiamo offrire indicazioni se un determinato uso del libro è consentito. Non dare per scontato che poiché un libro compare in Google Ricerca Libri ciò significhi che può essere utilizzato in qualsiasi modo e in qualsiasi Paese del mondo. Le sanzioni per le violazioni del copyright possono essere molto severe.

Informazioni su Google Ricerca Libri

La missione di Google è organizzare le informazioni a livello mondiale e renderle universalmente accessibili e fruibili. Google Ricerca Libri aiuta i lettori a scoprire i libri di tutto il mondo e consente ad autori ed editori di raggiungere un pubblico più ampio. Puoi effettuare una ricerca sul Web nell'intero testo di questo libro da <http://books.google.com>

This is a reproduction of a library book that was digitized by Google as part of an ongoing effort to preserve the information in books and make it universally accessible.

Google™ books

<https://books.google.com>



English Month.	MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days.	JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days.	APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days.	FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29.
1	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis	Kalendis
2	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
3	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
4	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
5	a.d. III.	Nonis	Nonis	Nonis
6	Pridie	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.
7	Nonis	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.
8	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.
9	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. V.
10	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.
11	a.d. V.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	a.d. III.
12	a.d. IV.	Pridie	Pridie	Pridie
13	a.d. III.	Idibus	Idibus	Idibus
14	Pridie	a.d. XIX.	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVI.
15	Idibus	a.d. XVIII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XV.
16	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVII.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XIV.
17	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XVI.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIII.
18	a.d. XV.	a.d. XV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XII.
19	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIV.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XI.
20	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XIII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. X.
21	a.d. XII.	a.d. XII.	a.d. XI.	a.d. IX.
22	a.d. XI.	a.d. XI.	a.d. X.	a.d. VIII.
23	a.d. X.	a.d. X.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VII.
24	a.d. IX.	a.d. IX.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VI.
25	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VIII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. V.
26	a.d. VII.	a.d. VII.	a.d. VI.	a.d. IV.
27	a.d. VI.	a.d. VI.	a.d. V.	a.d. III.
28	a.d. V.	a.d. V.	a.d. IV.	Pridie
29	a.d. IV.	a.d. IV.	a.d. III.	
30	a.d. III.	a.d. III.	Pridie	
31	Pridie	Pridie		

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. Kal. Mart.) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called *DIES BISSEXTUS*, and leap-year itself *ANNUS BISSEXTUS*.]

*The public
school Latin primer*

Benjamin Hall Kennedy

due T 20918.82.479



Harvard College Library

FROM

Mrs. Algernon Coolidge



3 2044 102 875 739

21
6

H

be

SU

KE

SU

CU

PA

*
are
Sch

TI

EI

Th

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN COURSE.

Revised Editions now on sale :—

The PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

Edited with the Sanction of the Head Masters of the Nine Schools named in H.M. Commission—viz. Winchester, Eton, St. Paul's, Westminster, Merchant Taylors', Rugby, Shrewsbury, Harrow, and Charterhouse. 12mo. 2s. 6d.

The following by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Reg. Professor of Greek in the Univ. of Cambridge :—

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, STEPS to LATIN;

Easy Companion-Books to the Public School Latin Primer for Beginners. PART I. Accidence and Simple Construction, 2s. 6d. PART II. Syntax, 3s. 6d.—KEY to Parts I. and II. 5s.

KEY to the EXERCISES in SUBSIDIA PRI-

MARIA, PARTS I. and II. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. 12mo. price 5s. supplied to INSTRUCTORS only, on application to the Publishers.

SUBSIDIA PRIMARIA, Part III. Manual of the

Rules of Construction in the Latin Compound Sentence; a Supplement to the Public School Latin Primer. 1s.

CURRICULUM STILI LATINI, Higher Exer-

cises in Latin Prose Composition; exemplifying principally the Latin Compound Sentence, and also Latin Syntax generally, for *vivâ voce* as well as written use. 4s. 6d.—KEY, 7s. 6d.

PALÆSTRA LATINA, or Second Latin Reading

Book, adapted to the Public School Latin Primer. 5s.

* * The above four books form a Course of Latin Instruction, and are specially adapted to facilitate and extend the use of the Public School Latin Primer.

The CHILD'S LATIN ACCIDENCE, all that

is necessary to lead Boys up to the Public School Latin Primer. Price 1s.

ELEMENTARY LATIN GRAMMAR. 3s. 6d.

The PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR.

Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

London, LONGMANS & CO.

THE REV. CANON KENNEDY'S
COLLEGE AND SCHOOL EDITION OF VIRGIL.

The Third Edition, revised and enlarged, in One Volume, post 8vo.
with Two Maps, price HALF-A-GUINEA.

P. VERGILI MARONIS
BUCOLICA GEORGICA AENEIS;
THE WORKS OF VIRGIL.

With Commentary and Appendix for the use of Schools and Colleges.

By BENJAMIN HALL KENNEDY, D.D.

Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge.

'We recommend those of our readers who desire to keep up their classical knowledge, and even to improve it by acquaintance with recent improvements in scholarship, to procure this excellent edition.' CHURCH TIMES.

'We cannot close this brief notice without thanking Professor KENNEDY for bringing this admirable edition of a work so universally read, which he has enriched with the accumulated stores of the best modern scholarship and of a lifetime of successful teaching, within the reach of teachers and schools; for it is published at a price which makes it accessible to the humblest student. It is, beyond all question, the most complete, compact, and scholarly edition of VIRGIL which has hitherto appeared in this country.' EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

'Dr. KENNEDY's one-volume VIRGIL will be welcomed by Latin scholars on the faith of its containing the responses of a lively and shrewd oracle to Virgilian questions and difficulties. Heredi-

tarily familiar with the Mantuan poet through the translations by his father and brother, and himself a Latin scholar of the highest distinction, Dr. KENNEDY has naturally accumulated a large store of solid criticism on VIRGIL'S Works, and has not been content to acquiesce in the ordinary tradition of readings, explanations, and punctuational variations. He has now fulfilled the hope of many years, and put forth, in what he depreciatingly calls a school edition, a volume of some six hundred and fifty pages upon the text, interpretation, and literature of VIRGIL, in which, though like the late Professor CONINGTON, he does not profess to have collated MSS., he exhibits a thorough acquaintance with the best texts and commentaries, and an acumen which almost always enables him to arrive at a right judgment as to the poet's words and sense, often by weighing the conflicting views of others, not seldom by introducing some shrewd interpretation of his own.'

SATURDAY REVIEW.

~~~~~  
London, LONGMANS & CO.

*Mary B. Lothrop*

*Algers*

*November 1882*

THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

LATIN PRIMER.

**LONDON : PRINTED BY  
SPOTTISWOODE AND CO., NEW-STREET SQUARE  
AND PARLIAMENT STREET**

# THE PUBLIC SCHOOL

## LATIN PRIMER.

EDITED WITH THE SANCTION OF THE HEAD MASTERS  
OF THE PUBLIC SCHOOLS INCLUDED IN  
HER MAJESTY'S COMMISSION.

---

*Ordinis haec virtus erit et venus, aut ego fallor,  
Ut jam nunc dicat jam nunc debentia dici,  
Pleraque differat et praesens in tempus omittat.*

Hor. ad Pis. 42.

---

LONDON:  
LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.  
1882.



✓  
Educat 20918.82.479



Mrs. Algernon Conledge

# PREFACE.

---

THE 'Public School Latin Primer' was not put forth by its compilers as a First Book for children beginning Latin in preparatory schools or with private teachers, but as a concise manual of facts and code of rules in Latin, to be memorially learnt, with suitable practice, in those departments of Public Schools to which its contents are applicable. It was not supposed that all sections and parts of sections in the first ninety pages would be learnt in a first memorial course; nor was it doubted that some passages in accidence would be sufficiently taught by means of questions and answers. These they held to be matters of detail, which could only be left to the judgment of those who teach or direct the mode of teaching. For the facilitation of these lessons to young beginners they relied (1) on the use of good Help-books, adapted to the Primer, leading up to it, and referring to it; and (2) on the 'vis viva' of good teaching, without which all must fail. Of such Help-books many have been published by various authors of large experience in teaching, and, as some of these have passed through numerous editions, they seem to have answered their purpose.



THE  
PUBLIC SCHOOL LATIN PRIMER.

---

ETYMOLOGY.

---

THE LETTERS.

§ 1. The Latin ALPHABET now in use is the English without W. The Letters have two forms : (1) the Capital, or ancient ; and (2) the Small, or modern form.

(1) A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P

(2) a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p

Q R S T U V X Y Z.

q r s t u v x y z.

§ 2. The VOWELS, *sounding by themselves*, are a, e, i, o, u, y.

I and u are called Semi-consonant Vowels.

§ 3. The CONSONANTS *sound with Vowels* : of these

The Mutes are b, c, d, g, k, p, q, and t :

The Nasals are m, n :

The Liquids are l, r :

The Spirants f, h, j, s, v :

The Double, x and z, express two letters each, cs, ds.

1. K remains in a few words before a : as, Kalendae.

2. Y and z only in words from the Greek : as, Dryas, zona.

3. Q blends with u or v : as, quis or quis.

§ 4. Latin has three usual DIPHTHONGS (double vowels)  
æ (æ), oe (œ), au : three seldom used, ei, eu, ui.

§ 5. Latin is spelt by SYLLABLES, as English.

§ 6. The Quantity of syllables is short (◡), long (—), or doubtful (◡—), as the vowels are short, long, or doubtful: fūgērīs.

A Vowel may be—

- (1) Short or long by nature: āmās.
- (2) Short by nature, but long by position: vīndēx. § 162. 4.
- (3) Short by nature, but doubtful by position: quādrūplo. § 162. 5.

§ 7. Diphthongs are long.

§ 8. The modern Stops are used in Latin.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

§ 9. The PARTS OF SPEECH, or WORDS, are of three kinds:  
I. NOUNS; II. VERB; III. PARTICLES.

I. (1) The SUBSTANTIVE names something:

**Rex**, a king; **Caesār**, Caesar.

- (a) Names of Persons and Places are PROPER NAMES.  
All others are COMMON NOUNS.

(2) The ADJECTIVE attributes Quality:

Mārē **vastum**, the vast sea.

**Vastum** is called an ATTRIBUTE or EPITHET of mārē.\*

(3) The PRONOUN stands for Substantive or Adjective.

**Tū**, thou; mēnūs **haec**, this hand.

II. (4) The VERB states what something is, does, or suffers: }  
Hōmīnēs **cānunt**, men sing.†

\* A Substantive attributively joined to another Substantive is called its APPOSITE:  
Croesūs rex Lȳdōrum, Croesus, king of the Lydians; where rex is Apposite to Croesūs, and agrees with it in Case.

† Hōmīnēs is called the SUBJECT.  
Cānunt is called the PREDICATE.

When we say,  
Mors est prōpinquā, death is nigh,

Mors is the Subject;

Est is called the COPULA;

Prōpinquā is called the COMPLEMENT;

And Copula with Complement is the Predicate. § 87.

## III. (5) The ADVERB shews Where, When, or How :

**Hūc currē nunc cōlērītēr,** *run hither now quickly.*

## (6) The PREPOSITION governs the Case of a Noun ; and shews the relation of it to some other word :

**Stō ad** fōrēs, *I stand at the door.*

## (7) The CONJUNCTION links words and clauses :

**Ōvēs et** āvēs, *sheep and birds.*

## (8) The INTERJECTION is an exclamation :

**Eccē** ningīt, *lo, it snows.*

PARTICLES.

*Note.* There is no Article in Latin like *a, an, the*, in English. Thus *lux* may mean a *light*, the *light*, or simply *light*.

## § 10. Hence the Parts of Speech may be called eight :

1. Substantive,

5. Adverb,

2. Adjective,

6. Preposition,

3. Pronoun,

7. Conjunction,

4. Verb,

8. Interjection,

Which have Flexion.

Which are without Flexion.\*

§ 11. (1) The changes made in a word, in order to vary its meaning, are called its FLEXION.

(2) Nouns are DECLINED.

Verbs are CONJUGATED.

(3) A Noun has three ACCIDENTS : NUMBER, CASE, GENDER ;  
A Verb five : VOICE, MOOD, TENSE, NUMBER, PERSON.

[a. The STEM is that part of a word on which the changes of Flexion are based.

b. A Flexional addition at the end of the Stem is called an ENDING or SUFFIX.

c. The last letter of the Stem is called the CHARACTER, and in this book is often indicated by a Capital.

d. The Stem of a Noun is usually discerned by casting off *-rum* or *-um* from the Genitive Plural : † *mensa-*, *dōmīno-*, *lēon-*, *māri-*, *grādu-* *dīe-*.

e. The Stem of a Verb is shewn in the Imperative Mood : *āma-*, *audi-*, *mōne-*. But in the Third Conjugation *-ē* must be cast off : *rēg-ē* ; and in a Deponent Verb *-rē* or *ērē* : *fa-rē*, *re-rē*, *lāb-ērē*.

f. The Root is that part which a word has in common with kindred words. Thus in *āgitārē*, *āgita-* is the Stem, but *ag-* the Root, as shewn by comparing *āg-ērē*, *ag-men*. And *g* is the Root-character.]

\* Except the Comparison of Adverbs, § 37.

† Casting off *-rum* in the First, Second, and Fifth Declensions ; *-um* in the Third and Fourth.

## DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

§ 12. The Substantive is declined by Number and Case: the Adjective by Number, Case, and Gender, agreeing in these with its Substantive. See § 9 (2).

§ 13. The Numbers are two:

1. SINGULAR, speaking of one, *mensă, a table*;
2. PLURAL, of more than one, *mensae, tables*.

§ 14. The Cases are six.

*Answers the question*

|                                                 |                      |           |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| 1. NOMINATIVE . . . Who or what?                | Quis dedit? . . .    | Vir,      |
|                                                 | Who gave? . . .      | A man.    |
| 2. VOCATIVE (Case of one addressed) . . .       |                      | Vir,      |
|                                                 |                      | O man.    |
| 3. ACCUSATIVE . . . Whom or what?               | Quem videt? . . .    | Virum,    |
|                                                 | Whom see I? . . .    | A man.    |
| 4. GENITIVE . . . Whose or whereof?             | Cujus donum? . . .   | Viri,     |
|                                                 | Whose gift? . . .    | A man's.  |
| 5. DATIVE . . . To or for whom or what?         | Cui datum? . . .     | Virō,     |
|                                                 | To whom given? . . . | To a man. |
| 6. ABLATIVE* . . . By, with, &c., whom or what? | Ā quō datum? . . .   | Ā virō,   |
|                                                 | By whom given? . . . | By a man. |

§ 15. The Genders are three: 1. MASCULINE; 2. FEMININE; 3. NEUTER. A Substantive which may be either Masculine or Feminine is said to be COMMON to both Genders.

## SUBSTANTIVES.

§ 16. There are five Declensions of Latin Substantives, known by the endings of their Genitives:—

|            | I.   | II.  | III.      | IV. | V.   |
|------------|------|------|-----------|-----|------|
| Gen. Sing. | ae   | i    | is        | ūs  | ēi   |
| Gen. Plur. | Arum | Orum | um† or ūm | Uum | Erum |

§ 17. (1) In Neuter Nouns, the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative are the same in each Number severally; and in the Plural they end in *a*.

(2) The Vocative of Latin words is the same as the Nominative, except in Singular Nouns of the Second Declension like *dōminūs, filiūs*.

(3) The Dative and Ablative Plural are always the same.

\* Many English Particles may be signs of the Latin Ablative: *by, with, from, in, upon, of, for, at, than*.

The Consonant before *um* is the Character. See § 11 c; § 21 (a).



## THE FIRST DECLENSION (A-nouns).

§ 18. The First Declension contains Latin Nouns, mostly Feminine, with Nominative in **ā**; and a few Greek words, chiefly Proper Names, in **ās**, **ēs**, Masculine, and **ē** Feminine.

|      | Singular.                                | Plural.                                  |
|------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Mensā</b> , a table                   | <b>Mensae</b> , tables, f.               |
| Voc. | <b>Mensā</b> , O table                   | <b>Mensae</b> , O tables                 |
| Acc. | <b>Mensam</b> , a table                  | <b>Mensās</b> , tables                   |
| Gen. | <b>Mensae</b> , of a table               | <b>Mensārum</b> , of tables              |
| Dat. | <b>Mensae</b> , to or for a table        | <b>Mensīs</b> , to or for tables         |
| Abl. | <b>Mensā</b> , by, with, or from a table | <b>Mensīs</b> , by, with, or from tables |

Decline also :

## Singular.

|      | Goddess, f.  | Son of Theseus, m.                      | Aeneas, m.                   | Cybele, f.                    |
|------|--------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Dē-ā</b>  | <b>Thēsīd-ēs</b>                        | <b>Aenē-ās</b>               | <b>Cýbēl-ē</b>                |
| Voc. | <b>Dē-ā</b>  | <b>Thēsīd-ē</b> ( <b>ā</b> , <b>ā</b> ) | <b>Aenē-ā</b>                | <b>Cýbēl-ē</b>                |
| Acc. | <b>Dē-am</b> | <b>Thēsīd-ēn</b> ( <b>am</b> )          | <b>Aenē-ān</b> ( <b>am</b> ) | <b>Cýbēl-ēn</b>               |
| Gen. | <b>Dē-ae</b> | <b>Thēsīd-ae</b>                        | <b>Aenē-ae</b>               | <b>Cýbēl-ēs</b> ( <b>ae</b> ) |
| Dat. | <b>Dē-ae</b> | <b>Thēsīd-ae</b>                        | <b>Aenē-ae</b>               | <b>Cýbēl-ae</b>               |
| Abl. | <b>Dē-ā</b>  | <b>Thēsīd-ē</b> ( <b>ā</b> )            | <b>Aenē-ā</b>                | <b>Cýbēl-ē</b> ( <b>ā</b> )   |

## Plural.

|         |                  |                    |                    |                    |
|---------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| N. V.   | <b>Dē-ae</b>     | <b>Thēsīd-ae</b>   | (as <b>Mensā</b> , | (as <b>Mensā</b> , |
| Acc.    | <b>Dē-ās</b>     | <b>Thēsīd-ās</b>   | but rare.)         | but rare.)         |
| Gen.    | <b>Dē-ārum</b>   | <b>Thēsīd-um</b>   |                    |                    |
| D. Abl. | <b>Dē-ābūs</b> . | <b>Thēsīd-īs</b> . |                    |                    |

Note.—Masc. Substantives in **ā** are declined like **mensā**: **pōētā**, a poet.

## THE SECOND DECLENSION (O-nouns).

§ 19. The Second Declension contains Nouns with Nominative in **ūs**, **ēr**, generally Masculine, and in **um**, Neuter.

## (a) MASCULINE.

|      | Singular.                                | Plural.                                   |
|------|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Dōmīnūs</b> , a lord                  | <b>Dōmīnī</b> , lords, m.                 |
| Voc. | <b>Dōmīnē</b> , O lord                   | <b>Dōmīnī</b> , O lords                   |
| Acc. | <b>Dōmīnum</b> , a lord                  | <b>Dōmīnōs</b> , lords                    |
| Gen. | <b>Dōmīnī</b> , of a lord                | <b>Dōmīnōrum</b> , of lords               |
| Dat. | <b>Dōmīnō</b> , to or for a lord         | <b>Dōmīnīs</b> , to, or for lords         |
| Abl. | <b>Dōmīnō</b> , by, with, or from a lord | <b>Dōmīnīs</b> , by, with, or from lords. |

|      | Singular.                                             | Plural.                                              |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Pŭēr</b> , <i>a boy</i>                            | <b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>boys, m.</i>                       |
| Voc. | <b>Pŭēr</b> , <i>O boy</i>                            | <b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>O boys</i>                         |
| Acc. | <b>Pŭērūm</b> , <i>a boy</i>                          | <b>Pŭērōs</b> , <i>boys</i>                          |
| Gen. | <b>Pŭērī</b> , <i>of a boy</i>                        | <b>Pŭērōrum</b> , <i>of boys</i>                     |
| Dat. | <b>Pŭērō</b> , <i>to or for a boy</i>                 | <b>Pŭērīs</b> , <i>to or for boys</i>                |
| Abl. | <b>Pŭērō</b> , <i>by, with, or from a boy</i>         | <b>Pŭērīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>       |
|      |                                                       |                                                      |
| Nom. | <b>Māgistēr</b> , <i>the master</i>                   | <b>Māgistri</b> , <i>masters, m.</i>                 |
| Voc. | <b>Māgistēr</b> , <i>O master</i>                     | <b>Māgistri</b> , <i>O masters</i>                   |
| Acc. | <b>Māgistrūm</b> , <i>the master</i>                  | <b>Māgistrōs</b> , <i>masters</i>                    |
| Gen. | <b>Māgistri</b> , <i>of the master</i>                | <b>Māgistrōrum</b> , <i>of masters</i>               |
| Dat. | <b>Māgistrō</b> , <i>to or for the master</i>         | <b>Māgistrīs</b> , <i>to or for masters</i>          |
| Abl. | <b>Māgistrō</b> , <i>by, with, or from the master</i> | <b>Māgistrīs</b> , <i>by, with, or from masters.</i> |

## (b) NEUTER.

|      | Singular.                                   | Plural.                                        |
|------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Bellūm</b> , <i>war</i>                  | <b>Bellā</b> , <i>wars</i>                     |
| Voc. | <b>Bellūm</b> , <i>O war</i>                | <b>Bellā</b> , <i>O wars</i>                   |
| Acc. | <b>Bellūm</b> , <i>war</i>                  | <b>Bellā</b> , <i>wars</i>                     |
| Gen. | <b>Bellī</b> , <i>of war</i>                | <b>Bellōrum</b> , <i>of wars</i>               |
| Dat. | <b>Bellō</b> , <i>to or for war</i>         | <b>Bellis</b> , <i>to or for wars</i>          |
| Abl. | <b>Bellō</b> , <i>by, with, or from war</i> | <b>Bellis</b> , <i>by, with, or from wars.</i> |

Decline also :

|         | Son, m.                      | Coin, m.       | God, m.      | Cloak, n.                       |
|---------|------------------------------|----------------|--------------|---------------------------------|
| Nom.    | <b>Filī-ūs</b>               | <b>Numm-ūs</b> | <b>Dē-ūs</b> | <b>Pallī-um</b>                 |
| Voc.    | <b>Fil-i</b>                 | <b>Numm-ē</b>  | <b>Dē-ūs</b> | <b>Pallī-um</b>                 |
| Acc.    | <b>Filī-um</b>               | <b>Numm-um</b> | <b>Dē-um</b> | <b>Pallī-um</b>                 |
| Gen.    | <b>Filī-i</b> or <b>Filī</b> | <b>Numm-i</b>  | <b>Dē-i</b>  | <b>Pallī-i</b> or <b>Pall-i</b> |
| D. Abl. | <b>Filī-ō</b>                | <b>Numm-ō</b>  | <b>Dē-ō</b>  | <b>Pallī-ō</b>                  |

## Plural.

|         |                  |                                       |                                   |                   |
|---------|------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| N.V.    | <b>Filī-i</b>    | <b>Numm-i</b>                         | <b>Dī</b> (also <b>Dēi</b> )      | <b>Pallī-ā</b>    |
| Acc.    | <b>Filī-ōs</b>   | <b>Numm-ōs</b>                        | <b>Dē-ōs</b>                      | <b>Pallī-ā</b>    |
| Gen.    | <b>Filī-ōrum</b> | <b>Numm-ōrum</b><br>or <b>Numm-um</b> | <b>Dē-ōrum</b> or<br><b>Dē-um</b> | <b>Pallī-ōrum</b> |
| D. Abl. | <b>Filī-is.</b>  | <b>Numm-is</b>                        | <b>Dīs</b> (also <b>Dēis</b> ).   | <b>Pallī-is</b>   |

## THE THIRD DECLENSION (Consonant and I-nouns).

§ 20. The Third Declension has two Divisions :

I. Nouns which have for Character a Consonant.

II. Nouns which have for Character the Half-consonant I.

[Of these Divisions the First is Imparisyllable, having more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative Singular.

The Second is Parisyllable, having the same number of syllables in the Genitive as in the Nominative.

But a few Parisyllable Nouns belong to the Consonant Division ; and many Imparisyllable Nouns to the I-Division.

The Endings of the Nominative Singular are numerous.]

## § 21. I. CONSONANT-NOUNS.

## (a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

|       | Singular.                                   | Plural.                                        |
|-------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Jūdex</b> , a judge, or O judge          | <b>Jūdicēs</b> , judges, or O judges, c.       |
| Acc.  | <b>Jūdicem</b> , a judge                    | <b>Jūdicēs</b> , judges                        |
| Gen.  | <b>Jūdicis</b> , of a judge                 | <b>Jūdicum</b> , of judges                     |
| Dat.  | <b>Jūdicī</b> , to or for a judge           | <b>Jūdicibus</b> , to or for judges            |
| Abl.  | <b>Jūdicē</b> , by, with, or from a judge   | <b>Jūdicibus</b> , by, with, or from judges.   |
| N. V. | <b>Ætās</b> , an age, or O age              | <b>Ætātēs</b> , ages, or O ages, f.            |
| Acc.  | <b>Ætātem</b> , an age                      | <b>Ætātēs</b> , ages                           |
| Gen.  | <b>Ætātis</b> , of an age                   | <b>Ætātum</b> , of ages                        |
| Dat.  | <b>Ætātī</b> , to or for an age             | <b>Ætātibus</b> , to or for ages               |
| Abl.  | <b>Ætātē</b> , by, with, or from an age     | <b>Ætātibus</b> , by, with, or from ages.      |
| N. V. | <b>Lēō</b> , a lion, or O lion              | <b>Lēōnēs</b> , lions, or O lions, m.          |
| Acc.  | <b>Lēonem</b> , a lion                      | <b>Lēōnēs</b> , lions                          |
| Gen.  | <b>Lēōnis</b> , of a lion                   | <b>Lēōnum</b> , of lions                       |
| Dat.  | <b>Lēōnī</b> , to or for a lion             | <b>Lēōnibus</b> , to or for lions              |
| Abl.  | <b>Lēōnē</b> , by, with, or from a lion     | <b>Lēōnibus</b> , by, with, or from lions.     |
| N. V. | <b>Virgō</b> , a virgin, or O virgin        | <b>Virgīnēs</b> , virgins, or O virgins, f.    |
| Acc.  | <b>Virginem</b> , a virgin                  | <b>Virgīnēs</b> , virgins                      |
| Gen.  | <b>Virginis</b> , of a virgin               | <b>Virginum</b> , of virgins                   |
| Dat.  | <b>Virginī</b> , to or for a virgin         | <b>Virginibus</b> , to or for virgins          |
| Abl.  | <b>Virginē</b> , by, with, or from a virgin | <b>Virginibus</b> , by, with, or from virgins. |

Decline also :

|       | Singular.      |                 |                 |                   |                        |
|-------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|------------------------|
|       | <i>Law, f.</i> | <i>Foot, m.</i> | <i>Love, m.</i> | <i>Cinder, c.</i> | <i>Father, m.</i>      |
| N. V. | <i>Lex</i>     | <i>Pēs</i>      | <i>Āmōr</i>     | <i>Cīnīs</i>      | <i>Pāter</i> —         |
| Acc.  | <i>Lēg-</i>    | <i>Pēd-</i>     | <i>Āmōr-</i>    | <i>Cīnēr-</i>     | <i>Pātr-</i> <b>em</b> |
| Gen.  | <i>Lēg-</i>    | <i>Pēd-</i>     | <i>Āmōr-</i>    | <i>Cīnēr-</i>     | <i>Pātr-</i> <b>is</b> |
| Dat.  | <i>Lēg-</i>    | <i>Pēd-</i>     | <i>Āmōr-</i>    | <i>Cīnēr-</i>     | <i>Pātr-</i> <b>i</b>  |
| Abl.  | <i>Lēg-</i>    | <i>Pēd-</i>     | <i>Āmōr-</i>    | <i>Cīnēr-</i>     | <i>Pātr-</i> <b>ō</b>  |

|          | Plural.     |             |              |               |                          |
|----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------------|
| N. V. A. | <i>Lēg-</i> | <i>Pēd-</i> | <i>Āmōr-</i> | <i>Cīnēr-</i> | <i>Pātr-</i> <b>ēs</b>   |
| Gen.     | <i>Lēg-</i> | <i>Pēd-</i> | <i>Āmōr-</i> | <i>Cīnēr-</i> | <i>Pātr-</i> <b>um</b>   |
| D. Abl.  | <i>Lēg-</i> | <i>Pēd-</i> | <i>Āmōr-</i> | <i>Cīnēr-</i> | <i>Pātr-</i> <b>ībūs</b> |

## (b) NEUTER.

|       | Singular.                                | Plural.                                     |
|-------|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Nŏmēn</b> , name, or O name           | <b>Nŏmīnā</b> , names, or O names           |
| Acc.  | <b>Nŏmēn</b> , name                      | <b>Nŏmīnā</b> , names                       |
| Gen.  | <b>Nŏmīnīs</b> , of a name               | <b>Nŏmīnūm</b> , of names                   |
| Dat.  | <b>Nŏmīnī</b> , to or for a name         | <b>Nŏmīnībūs</b> , to or for names          |
| Abl.  | <b>Nŏmīnē</b> , by, with, or from a name | <b>Nŏmīnībūs</b> , by, with, or from names. |

|       |                                         |                                            |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Ōpūs</b> , a work, or O work         | <b>Ōpērā</b> , works, or O works           |
| Acc.  | <b>Ōpūs</b> , a work                    | <b>Ōpērā</b> , works                       |
| Gen.  | <b>Ōpērīs</b> , of a work               | <b>Ōpērūm</b> , of works                   |
| Dat.  | <b>Ōpērī</b> , to or for a work         | <b>Ōpērībūs</b> , to or for works          |
| Abl.  | <b>Ōpērē</b> , by, with, or from a work | <b>Ōpērībūs</b> , by, with, or from works. |

Decline also the Neuter Nouns:

|          | Singular.     |                   |              |                   |                          |
|----------|---------------|-------------------|--------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
|          | <i>Head.</i>  | <i>Lightning.</i> | <i>Leg.</i>  | <i>Hard wood.</i> | <i>Body.</i>             |
| N. V. A. | <i>Căpūt</i>  | <i>Fulgūr</i>     | <i>Crūs</i>  | <i>Rōbūr</i>      | <i>Corpūs</i> —          |
| Gen.     | <i>Căpīt-</i> | <i>Fulgūr-</i>    | <i>Crūr-</i> | <i>Rōbōr-</i>     | <i>Corpōr-</i> <b>is</b> |
| Dat.     | <i>Căpīt-</i> | <i>Fulgūr-</i>    | <i>Crūr-</i> | <i>Rōbōr-</i>     | <i>Corpōr-</i> <b>i</b>  |
| Abl.     | <i>Căpīt-</i> | <i>Fulgūr-</i>    | <i>Crūr-</i> | <i>Rōbōr-</i>     | <i>Corpōr-</i> <b>ō</b>  |

|          | Plural.       |                |              |               |                            |
|----------|---------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|----------------------------|
| N. V. A. | <i>Căpīt-</i> | <i>Fulgūr-</i> | <i>Crūr-</i> | <i>Rōbōr-</i> | <i>Corpōr-</i> <b>ā</b>    |
| Gen.     | <i>Căpīt-</i> | <i>Fulgūr-</i> | <i>Crūr-</i> | <i>Rōbōr-</i> | <i>Corpōr-</i> <b>um</b>   |
| D. Abl.  | <i>Căpīt-</i> | <i>Fulgūr-</i> | <i>Crūr-</i> | <i>Rōbōr-</i> | <i>Corpōr-</i> <b>ībūs</b> |

## § 22.

## II. I-NOUNS.

## (a) MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

|       | Singular.                                 | Plural.                                        |
|-------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Ōvis</b> , a sheep, or <i>O sheep</i>  | <b>Ōvēs</b> , sheep, or <i>O sheep</i> , f.    |
| Acc.  | <b>Ōvem</b> , a sheep                     | <b>Ōvēs</b> , or <b>Ōvis</b> ,* sheep          |
| Gen.  | <b>Ōvis</b> , of a sheep                  | <b>Ōvīum</b> , of sheep                        |
| Dat.  | <b>Ōvī</b> , to or for a sheep            | <b>Ōvībūs</b> , to or for sheep                |
| Abl.  | <b>Ōvē</b> , by, with, or from a sheep    | <b>Ōvībūs</b> , by, with, or from sheep.       |
| N. V. | <b>Nūbēs</b> , a cloud, or <i>O cloud</i> | <b>Nūbēs</b> , clouds, or <i>O clouds</i> , f. |
| Acc.  | <b>Nūbem</b> , a cloud                    | <b>Nūbēs</b> , or <b>Nūbis</b> ,* clouds       |
| Gen.  | <b>Nūbis</b> , of a cloud                 | <b>Nūbīum</b> , of clouds                      |
| Dat.  | <b>Nūbī</b> , to or for a cloud           | <b>Nūbībūs</b> , to or for clouds              |
| Abl.  | <b>Nūbē</b> , by, with, or from a cloud   | <b>Nūbībūs</b> , by, with, or from clouds.     |
| N. V. | <b>Dens</b> , a tooth, or <i>O tooth</i>  | <b>Dentēs</b> , teeth, or <i>O teeth</i> , m.  |
| Acc.  | <b>Dentem</b> , a tooth                   | <b>Dentēs</b> , or <b>Dentis</b> ,* teeth      |
| Gen.  | <b>Dentis</b> , of a tooth                | <b>Dentīum</b> ,† of teeth                     |
| Dat.  | <b>Dentī</b> , to or for a tooth          | <b>Dentībūs</b> , to or for teeth              |
| Abl.  | <b>Dentē</b> , by, with, or from a tooth  | <b>Dentībūs</b> , by, with, or from teeth.     |

Decline also :

## Singular.

|       | <i>Cough</i> , f. | <i>Key</i> , f.             | <i>Canal</i> , m. | <i>Shower</i> , m.        |
|-------|-------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Tuss-īs</b>    | <b>Clāv-īs</b>              | <b>Cānāl-īs</b>   | <b>Imbēr</b>              |
| Acc.  | <b>Tuss-im</b>    | <b>Clāv-em</b> or <b>im</b> | <b>Cānāl-em</b>   | <b>Imbr-em</b>            |
| Gen.  | <b>Tuss-īs</b>    | <b>Clāv-īs</b>              | <b>Cānāl-īs</b>   | <b>Imbr-īs</b>            |
| Dat.  | <b>Tuss-ī</b>     | <b>Clāv-ī</b>               | <b>Cānāl-ī</b>    | <b>Imbr-ī</b>             |
| Abl.  | <b>Tuss-ī</b>     | <b>Clāv-ē</b> or <b>ī</b>   | <b>Cānāl-ī</b>    | <b>Imbr-ē</b> or <b>ī</b> |

## Plural.

|          |                   |                   |                    |                   |
|----------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| N. V. A. | <b>Tuss-ēs</b>    | <b>Clāv-ēs</b>    | <b>Cānāl-ēs</b>    | <b>Imbr-ēs</b> *  |
| Gen.     | <b>Tuss-īum</b>   | <b>Clāv-īum</b>   | <b>Cānāl-īum</b>   | <b>Imbr-īum</b>   |
| D. Abl.  | <b>Tuss-ībūs.</b> | <b>Clāv-ībūs.</b> | <b>Cānāl-ībūs.</b> | <b>Imbr-ībūs.</b> |

\* The Accus. Plur. of I-nouns, Masc. and Fem., is also spelt with ending *is*, and so appears in most ancient manuscripts, and in many editions of Latin authors.

† I-nouns in -ans -ens, often drop *i* in Gen. Plur.; pūrentum for pūrentium.

## (b) NEUTER.

## Singular.

|          | <i>Bone.</i> | <i>Sea.</i>  | <i>Spur.</i>    | <i>Animal.</i>  |
|----------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| N. V. A. | <b>Ōs</b>    | <b>Mārē</b>  | <b>Calcār</b>   | <b>Ānīmāl</b>   |
| Gen.     | <b>Ossīs</b> | <b>Māris</b> | <b>Calcārīs</b> | <b>Ānīmālīs</b> |
| Dat.     | <b>Ossī</b>  | <b>Māri</b>  | <b>Calcārī</b>  | <b>Ānīmālī</b>  |
| Abl.     | <b>Ossē</b>  | <b>Māri</b>  | <b>Calcārī</b>  | <b>Ānīmālī</b>  |

## Plural.

|          |                 |                  |                    |                    |
|----------|-----------------|------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| N. V. A. | <b>Ossā</b>     | <b>Māriā</b>     | <b>Calcārīā</b>    | <b>Ānīmālīā</b>    |
| Gen.     | <b>Ossīum</b>   | <b>Māriūm</b>    | <b>Calcārīūm</b>   | <b>Ānīmālīūm</b>   |
| D. Abl.  | <b>Ossībūs.</b> | <b>Māriībūs.</b> | <b>Calcārībūs.</b> | <b>Ānīmālībūs.</b> |

## THE FOURTH DECLENSION (U-nouns).

§ 23. Masculine and Feminine Substantives in the Fourth Declension form the Nominative in **ūs**; Neuter Nouns in **ū**.

## Singular.

## Plural.

|       |                                         |                                                  |
|-------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Grādūs</b> , a step, or O step       | <b>Grādūs</b> , steps, or O steps, m.            |
| Acc.  | <b>Grādum</b> , a step                  | <b>Grādūs</b> , steps                            |
| Gen.  | <b>Grādūs</b> , of a step               | <b>Grādūm</b> , of steps                         |
| Dat.  | <b>Grādūi</b> , to or for a step        | <b>Grādībūs</b> (ūbūs), to or for steps          |
| Abl.  | <b>Grādū</b> , by, with, or from a step | <b>Grādībūs</b> (ūbūs), by, with, or from steps. |

|          |                                        |                                                 |
|----------|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| N. V. A. | <b>Gēnū</b> , a knee, or O knee        | <b>Gēnūā</b> , knees, or O knees, n.            |
| Gen.     | <b>Gēnūs</b> , of a knee               | <b>Gēnūm</b> , of knees                         |
| Dat.     | <b>Gēnū</b> , to or for a knee         | <b>Gēnībūs</b> (ūbūs), to or for knees          |
| Abl.     | <b>Gēnū</b> , by, with, or from a knee | <b>Gēnībūs</b> (ūbūs), by, with, or from knees. |

## THE FIFTH DECLENSION (E-nouns).

§ 24. The Fifth Declension contains Feminine Nouns with Nominative in **ēs**. (Concerning **diēs**, see § 31.)

## Singular.

## Plural.

|       |                                      |                                         |
|-------|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Dīēs</b> , a day, or O day        | <b>Dīēs</b> , days, or O days, c.       |
| Acc.  | <b>Dīem</b> , a day                  | <b>Dīēs</b> , days                      |
| Gen.  | <b>Dīēi</b> , of a day               | <b>Dīērum</b> , of days                 |
| Dat.  | <b>Dīēi</b> , to or for a day        | <b>Dīēbūs</b> , to or for days          |
| Abl.  | <b>Dīē</b> , by, with, or from a day | <b>Dīēbūs</b> , by, with, or from days. |

## §25. ANOMALIES OF THE NOUN.

- (1) Many Nouns are used in the Singular only:

Argentum, aurum, ferrum, plebs, justitiā,  
Vēr, aevum, lētum, sanguis, pūritiā.

*Note.*—Add *āēr*, *air* (Acc. S. *āērā* or *āērem*), *aether*, *sky*  
(Acc. S. *aethērā* or *aethērem*), with many more.

- (2) Many are used in the Plural only:

Mānēs, libērī, Pēnātēs,  
Divitiāe, cūnae, nūgae, grātēs,  
With armā, mūniā, māgālīā,  
And festive seasons, as Flōrālīā.

- (3) Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural:

Castrum, *a fort.*  
Castrā, *a camp.*

- (3) Many Nouns are Defective in Case:

Dāpīs, ōpīs, vīs.

- (5) Some Nouns take forms from two Declensions:

Laurūs, *bay-tree*, and others.\*

- (6) Some vary the Gender:

Jōcūs, *jest*, Pl. jōcī and jōcā;  
Lōcūs, *place*, Pl. lōcī and lōcā;  
Frēnum, *bit*, Pl. frēnī and frēnā;  
Rastrum, *harrow*, Pl. rastri and rastrā.

## a. Decline the Defective Nouns:

Singular.

|       | <i>Feast, f.</i> | <i>Fruit, f.</i> | <i>Help, f.</i> | <i>Prayer, f.</i> | <i>Change, f.</i> |
|-------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| N. V. | —                | —                | —               | —                 | —                 |
| Acc.  | Dāp-             | Frūg-            | Ōp-             | Prēc-             | Vīc- <b>em</b>    |
| Gen.  | Dāp-             | Frūg-            | Ōp-             | —                 | Vīc- <b>is</b>    |
| Dat.  | Dāp-             | Frūg-            | —               | Prēc-             | — <b>i</b>        |
| Abl.  | Dāp-             | Frūg-            | Ōp-             | Prēc-             | Vīc- <b>ō</b>     |

Full Plural, with endings **ēs**, **um**, **ībūs**, as § 21: except vīc-**ūm**.

S.N. Vīs, *strength, f.* Acc. vim. Abl. vī. Pl. vīrēs, vīrium, vīribūs.

b. Dōmūs, *house, f.*, is like Grādūs; but forms Sing. Dat. -ūī or -ō.  
Abl. ō. Plur. Acc. -ūs or -ōs. Gen. ūm or ōrum.

Dōmī, *at home*.

\* Laurūs, also cūpressūs, *cypress-tree*, ficūs, *fig-tree*, pinūs, *pine*, are partly O-nouns, partly U-nouns; having Gen. S., Abl. S., Nom. Pl., Acc. Pl., like dōmīnūs and grādūs.



## GENDER OF NOUNS.

## § 26.

## GENERAL RULES.

- (1) The Gender of a Latin Noun is shown by Meaning or by Form.
- (2) Males, Months, Winds, and People, are always Masculine, and most Names of Mountains and Rivers.
- (3) Females and Islands are Feminine, and most Names of Countries, Cities, and Trees.
- (4) Nouns indeclinable are Neuter: *fās, nēfās*, and the Verb-noun Infinitive;  
*Est summum nēfās fallērē,*  
*Deceit is gross impiety.*
- (5) Common are to either sex:  
*Artifex* and *ōpifex*,  
*Convivā, vātēs, advēnā,*  
*Testis, civis, incōlā,*  
*Pārens, sacerdōs, custōs, vindex,*  
*Adūlescens, infans, index,*  
*Jūdex, hērēs, cōmēs, dux,*  
*Princeps, mūniceps, conjux,*  
*Obsēs, ālēs, interprēs,*  
*Auctōr, exūl; and with these*  
*Bōs, dāmā, talpā, tīgrīs, grūs,*  
*Cānīs and anguis, serpens, sūs.\**

## § 27.

## GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the First Declension in *ā, ē*, are Feminine. Substantives in *as, ēs*, are Masculine.

*Etc.* Nouns denoting males in *ā*  
 Are by meaning Masculine;  
 And added to the Males must be  
*Hādriā, the Hadriatic Sea.*

\* Many of these words (with others, as *hostis, hospēs, milēs, praesēs, augūr, aurigā*) are rarely found Feminine. A few are rarely Masculine: *as, dāmā, talpā, tīgrīs, grūs, sūs*. Some are equally used in each Gender, when Singular: *as, pārens, conjux, sacerdōs, vātēs, cōmēs, dux, cānīs*; in Plural generally Masculine.

## § 28. GENDER IN THE SECOND DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Second Declension in *ūs, ēr*, are Masculine. Substantives in *um* are Neuter.

*Exc.* Fēmīnīnā stand in *ūs*,  
 Alvūs, arctūs, carbāsūs,  
 Cōlūs, hūmūs, pampīnūs,  
 Vannūs; names of Plants, as pīrūs;  
 Names of Jewels, as sapphīrūs.  
 Neuter, pēlāgūs and vīrūs.  
 Vulgūs Neuter commonly,  
 Rarely Masculine, we see.

## § 29. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule. I.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Masculine which end in *o, or, os, er*; also Imparisyllables in *es*.

- Exc.* (1) Substantives in *dō* and *gō*  
 Gēnūs Fēmīnīnum show.  
 But ligō, ordō, praedō, cardō,  
 Are Mascūlā; and Common margō.
- (2) Verbal Nouns in *io* call  
 Fēmīnīnā, one and all:  
 Mascūlā will only be  
 Things that you may touch or see,  
 (As curcūliō, vespertiliō,  
 Pūgiō, scīpiō, and pāpiliō.)  
 With the Nouns that number show,  
 Such as terniō, sēniō.
- (3) Ēchō Fēmīnīnum name:  
 Cārō (carnīa) is the same.
- (4) Fēmīnīnum call arbōr;  
 Neuter aequōr, marmōr, cūr.
- (5) Of the Substantives in *os*,  
 Fēmīnīna cōs and dōs:  
 While, of Latin Nouns, alone  
 Neuter are ōs (ossīs), *bone*,  
 And ōs (ōrīs), *mouth*: a few  
 Greek in *ōs* are Neuter too.\*
- (6) Many Neuters end in *er*,  
 Silēr, ācēr, verbēr, vēr,  
 Tūbēr, ūbēr, and cādāvēr,  
 Pīpēr, itēr, and pāpāvēr.

\* As mēlōs, *melody*; ēpōs, *epic poem*.

- (7) Fēmīnīnā, compēs, tēgēs,  
Mercēs, mergēs, quiēs, sēgēs,  
Though their Genitives increase.—  
With the Neuters reckon aēs.

*Princ. Rule. II.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Feminine which end in *is*, *as*, *aus*, *x*; or in *s* following another Consonant; also Parisyllables in *es*.

- Exc.* (1) Many Nouns in *is* we find  
To the Mascūlā assigned:  
Amnis, axis, caulis, collis,  
Clūnis, crinis, fascis, follis,  
Fustis, ignis, orbis, ensis,  
Pānis, piscis, postis, mensis,  
Torrīs, unguis, and cānālīs,  
Vectis, vermis, and nātālīs,  
Lāpis, sanguis, cūcūmis,  
Pulvis, cassēs, Mānēs, glīs.
- (2) Chiefly Mascūlā we view,  
Sometimes Fēmīnīnā too,  
Callis, sentis, fūnis, finis,  
Torquīs, and, in poets, cīnis.
- (3) Mascūlā are ādāmās,  
Elēphās, mās, gīgās, ās:  
Vās (vādīs) too as Male is known,  
Vās (vāsīs) as a Neuter Noun.
- (4) Most are Mascūlā in *ex*:  
Fēmīnīnā, forfex, lex,  
Nex, supellex: Common, pūmex,  
Imbrex, ōbex, sīlex, rūmex.
- (5) Mascūlā appear in *ix*,  
Fornix, phoenix, and cālix.
- (6) Mascūlā are fons and mons,  
Chālybs, hŷdrops, gryps, and pons,  
Rūdēns, torrens, dens, and cliēns,  
Fractions of the ās, as triēns;  
Add to Mascūlā trīdens,  
Occīdens and ōriēns,  
Bīdens (*hoe*): but bīdens (*sheep*)  
With the Fēmīnīnā keep.
- (7) Mascūlā are found in *ēs*  
Verrēs and ācīnācēs.

*Princ. Rule. III.*—Substantives of the Third Declension are Neuter which end in *ar, ur, us, ō, ē, c, l, n, t.*

- Exc. (1)* Masculă are found in *ur*,  
Furfŭr, turtŭr, vultŭr, fŭr.
- (2) Fēmīnīnă, some in *ŭs*  
Keep *ŭ* long, as, servitŭs,  
With jŭventŭs, virtŭs, sālŭs,  
Sēnectŭs, tellŭs, incŭs, pālŭs.
- (3) Also pēcŭs (pēcŭdīs)  
Of the Female Gender is.
- (4) Masculă are found in *us*  
Lēpŭs (lēpōrīs) and mŭs.
- (5) Masculă in *l* are mŭgŭl,  
Consŭl, sāl and sōl, with pŭgŭl.
- (6) Masculă are rēn and splēn,  
Pectēn, delphīn, attāgēn.
- (7) Fēmīnīnă some in *ōn* ;  
Gorgōn, sindōn, halcyōn.

§ 30. GENDER IN THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Fourth Declension in *ŭs* are Masculine, in *ŭ* Neuter.

*Exc.* Fēmīnīnă, trees in *ŭs*,  
With trībŭs, ācŭs, porticŭs,  
Dōmŭs, nŭrŭs, sōcrŭs, ānŭs,  
Idŭs (idŭum) and mănŭs.\*

§ 31. GENDER IN THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

*Princ. Rule.*—Substantives of the Fifth Declension are Feminine.

*Exc.* Dīēs in the Singular is Common, in the Plural Masculine.

---

\* See English of Nouns at p. 94.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 32. A. Adjectives of THREE ENDINGS, in *ūs, ā, um*, or *ēr, ā, um*, follow the Second and First Declensions.

| like       | Masculine | Feminine   | Neuter      |        |
|------------|-----------|------------|-------------|--------|
|            |           | like mensā | like bellum |        |
| Dōminūs .  | Bōnūs     | bōnā       | bōnum       | good   |
| Pūēr . . . | Tēnēr     | tēnērā     | tēnērūm     | tender |
| Māgistēr . | Nīgēr     | nīgērā     | nīgērūm     | black  |

|      | Singular. |       |       | Plural. |         |         |
|------|-----------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
|      | M.        | F.    | N.    | M.      | F.      | N.      |
| Nom. | Bōnūs     | bōnā  | bōnum | Bōnī    | bōnae   | bōnā    |
| Voc. | Bōnē      | bōnā  | bōnum | Bōnī    | bōnae   | bōnā    |
| Acc. | Bōnum     | bōnam | bōnum | Bōnōs   | bōnās   | bōnā    |
| Gen. | Bōnī      | bōnae | bōnī  | Bōnōrum | bōnārum | bōnōrum |
| Dat. | Bōnō      | bōnae | bōnō  | Bōnīs   | bōnīs   | bōnīs   |
| Abl. | Bōnō      | bōnā  | bōnō  | Bōnīs   | bōnīs   | bōnīs   |

## Singular.

| N. V. | Tēnēr, tēnēr-ā, tēnēr-um |    |    | Nīgēr, nīgēr-ā, nīgēr-um |    |    |
|-------|--------------------------|----|----|--------------------------|----|----|
|       | M.                       | F. | N. | M.                       | F. | N. |
| Acc.  | Tēnēr-um                 | am | um | Nīgēr-um                 | am | um |
| Gen.  | Tēnēr-                   | ī  | ae | Nīgēr-                   | ī  | ae |
| Dat.  | Tēnēr-                   | ō  | ae | Nīgēr-                   | ō  | ae |
| Abl.  | Tēnēr-                   | ō  | ā  | Nīgēr-                   | ō  | ā  |

## Plural.

| N. V.   | Tēnēr- | ī    | ae   | ā    | Nīgēr- | ī    | ae   | ā    |
|---------|--------|------|------|------|--------|------|------|------|
| Acc.    | Tēnēr- | ōs   | ās   | ā    | Nīgēr- | ōs   | ās   | ā    |
| Gen.    | Tēnēr- | ōrum | ārum | ōrum | Nīgēr- | ōrum | ārum | ōrum |
| D. Abl. | Tēnēr- | īs   | īs   | īs   | Nīgēr- | īs   | īs   | īs   |

## Decline:

as bōnūs:  
cārūs, dear  
dūbīūs, doubtful  
dūrūs, hard  
fēcundūs, fruitful  
mālū-, bad  
pallīdūs, pale.

as tēnēr:  
aspēr, rough  
lācēr, torn  
libēr, free  
mīsēr, wretched  
cornīgēr, horned  
frūgīfēr, fruitful.\*

as nīgēr:  
aegēr, sick  
ātēr, jet-black  
crēbēr, frequent  
pulchēr, beautiful  
rūbēr, red  
sacēr, sacred.

\* And many other Adjectives compounded with the Verbs gērō, fērō. Dextēr, at the right hand, propitiūs, is declined either as tēnēr or nīgēr.

§ 33. B. All other Adjectives follow the Third Declension: *mēliōr*, *better*; *tristis*, *sad*; *fēlix*, *happy*; *ingens*, *vast*.

## Singular.

|       | M. F.               | N.            | M. F.          | N.            |
|-------|---------------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| N. V. | <b>Mēliōr</b>       | <b>mēliūs</b> | <b>Tristis</b> | <b>tristē</b> |
| Acc.  | <b>Mēliōrem</b>     | <b>mēliūs</b> | <b>Tristem</b> | <b>tristē</b> |
| Gen.  | <b>Mēliōris</b>     |               | <b>Tristis</b> |               |
| Dat.  | <b>Mēliōri</b>      |               | <b>Tristi</b>  |               |
| Abl.  | <b>Mēliōrē or ī</b> |               | <b>Tristi</b>  |               |

## Plural.

|          |                    |                |                   |                |
|----------|--------------------|----------------|-------------------|----------------|
| N. V. A. | <b>Mēliōrēs</b>    | <b>mēliōrā</b> | <b>Tristēs</b>    | <b>tristīā</b> |
| Gen.     | <b>Mēliōrum</b>    |                | <b>Tristium</b>   |                |
| D. Abl.  | <b>Mēliōribūs.</b> |                | <b>Tristibūs.</b> |                |

## Singular.

|       | M. F.          | N.           | M. F.               | N.            |
|-------|----------------|--------------|---------------------|---------------|
| N. V. | <b>Fēlix</b>   |              | <b>Ingens</b>       |               |
| Acc.  | <b>Fēlicem</b> | <b>fēlix</b> | <b>Ingentem</b>     | <b>ingens</b> |
| Gen.  | <b>Fēlicis</b> |              | <b>Ingentis</b>     |               |
| Dat.  | <b>Fēlici</b>  |              | <b>Ingenti</b>      |               |
| Abl.  | <b>Fēlici*</b> |              | <b>Ingenti or ē</b> |               |

## Plural.

|          |                   |                |                    |                 |
|----------|-------------------|----------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| N. V. A. | <b>Fēlicēs</b>    | <b>fēlicīā</b> | <b>Ingentēs</b>    | <b>ingentīā</b> |
| Gen.     | <b>Fēlicium</b>   |                | <b>Ingentium</b>   |                 |
| D. Abl.  | <b>Fēlicibūs.</b> |                | <b>Ingentibūs.</b> |                 |

C. Adjectives in *er*, of the Third Declension, have Three Endings in Nom. Sing.: N. *cēlēr*, *cēlērīs*, *cēlērē*, *swift*; N. *ācēr*, *ācris*, *ācrē*, *keen*.

## Singular.

|         |                                 | M. F.     | N.        |  | M. F.                      | N.        |
|---------|---------------------------------|-----------|-----------|--|----------------------------|-----------|
| N. V.   | <b>Cēlēr, cēlēr-īs, cēlēr-ē</b> |           |           |  | <b>Ācēr, ācr-īs, ācr-ē</b> |           |
| Acc.    | <b>Cēlēr-</b>                   | <b>em</b> | <b>ē</b>  |  | <b>Ācr-</b>                | <b>em</b> |
| Gen.    | <b>Cēlēr-</b>                   |           | <b>īs</b> |  | <b>Ācr-</b>                | <b>īs</b> |
| D. Abl. | <b>Cēlēr-</b>                   |           | <b>ī</b>  |  | <b>Ācr-</b>                | <b>ī</b>  |

## Plural.

|          |               |           |             |  |             |           |             |
|----------|---------------|-----------|-------------|--|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| N. V. A. | <b>Cēlēr-</b> | <b>ēs</b> | <b>īā</b>   |  | <b>Ācr-</b> | <b>ēs</b> | <b>īā</b>   |
| Gen.     | <b>Cēlēr-</b> |           | <b>īum</b>  |  | <b>Ācr-</b> |           | <b>īum</b>  |
| D. Abl.  | <b>Cēlēr-</b> |           | <b>ībūs</b> |  | <b>Ācr-</b> |           | <b>ībūs</b> |

## Decline :

as *mēliōr*:  
audāciōr, *bolder*  
dūriōr, *harder*.

as *fēlix*:  
audax (āc-), *bold*  
fērox (ōc-), *haughty*.

as *cēlēr*:  
(none).

as *tristis*:  
brēvis, *short*  
fācilis, *easy*.

as *ingens*:  
āmans, *loving*  
sāptens, *wise*.

as *ācēr*:  
ēlācēr, *brisk*  
ēquestēr, *knighly*.

\* Rarely *ī*.

## § 34. NUMERAL AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

Some Numeral and Pronominal Adjectives form Gen. Sing. in *iūs*, and Dat. Sing. in *i*: *ūnūs*, *one*; *āhūs*, *other, another*; *altēr*, *one of two, the other*; *ūtēr*, *which of two*.

|      | Singular.    |              |              | Plural.       |               |               |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
|      | M.           | F.           | N.           | M.            | F.            | N.            |
| Nom. | <b>Ūnūs</b>  | <b>ūnā</b>   | <b>ūnum</b>  | <b>Ūnī</b>    | <b>ūnae</b>   | <b>ūnā</b>    |
| Acc. | <b>Ūnum</b>  | <b>ūnam</b>  | <b>ūnum</b>  | <b>Ūnōs</b>   | <b>ūnās</b>   | <b>ūnā</b>    |
| Gen. | <b>Ūniūs</b> | <b>ūniūs</b> | <b>ūniūs</b> | <b>Ūnōrum</b> | <b>ūnārum</b> | <b>ūnōrum</b> |
| Dat. | <b>Ūnī</b>   | <b>ūnī</b>   | <b>ūnī</b>   | <b>Ūnīs</b>   | <b>ūnīs</b>   | <b>ūnīs</b>   |
| Abl. | <b>Ūnō</b>   | <b>ūnā</b>   | <b>ūnō</b>   | <b>Ūnīs</b>   | <b>ūnīs</b>   | <b>ūnīs</b>   |
|      |              |              |              |               |               |               |
| Nom. | <b>Āiūs</b>  | <b>āiā</b>   | <b>āiūd</b>  | <b>Āiī</b>    | <b>āiae</b>   | <b>āiā</b>    |
| Acc. | <b>Āiūm</b>  | <b>āiām</b>  | <b>āiūd</b>  | <b>Āiōs</b>   | <b>āiās</b>   | <b>āiā</b>    |
| Gen. | <b>Āiūs</b>  | <b>āiūs</b>  | <b>āiūs</b>  | <b>Āiōrum</b> | <b>āiārum</b> | <b>āiōrum</b> |
| Dat. | <b>Āiī</b>   | <b>āiī</b>   | <b>āiī</b>   | <b>Āiīs</b>   | <b>āiīs</b>   | <b>āiīs</b>   |
| Abl. | <b>Āiō</b>   | <b>āiā</b>   | <b>āiō</b>   | <b>Āiīs</b>   | <b>āiīs</b>   | <b>āiīs</b>   |

## Singular.

| Nom. | Altēr, altēr-ā, altēr-um |    |    | Ūtēr, ūtr-ā, ūtr-um |    |    |
|------|--------------------------|----|----|---------------------|----|----|
|      | M.                       | F. | N. | M.                  | F. | N. |
| Acc. | Altēr-um                 | am | um | Ūtr-um              | am | um |
| Gen. | Altēr-ūs                 | ūs | ūs | Ūtr-ūs              | ūs | ūs |
| Dat. | Altēr-ī                  | ī  | ī  | Ūtr-ī               | ī  | ī  |
| Abl. | Altēr-ō                  | ā  | ō  | Ūtr-ō               | ā  | ō  |

## Plural.

| Nom.    | Altēr-ī    | ae   | ā    | Ūtr-ī    | ae   | ā    |
|---------|------------|------|------|----------|------|------|
| Acc.    | Altēr-ōs   | ās   | ā    | Ūtr-ōs   | ās   | ā    |
| Gen.    | Altēr-ōrum | ārum | ōrum | Ūtr-ōrum | ārum | ōrum |
| D. Abl. | Altēr-is   | is   | is   | Ūtr-is   | is   | is   |

Decline like *ūnūs*: *ullūs*, *any at all*; *nullūs*, *none, no*; *sōlūs*, *alone*; *tōtūs*, *whole*.

Like *ūtēr*: *neutēr*, *neither*; *ūterquē*, *each (of two)*; *ūtervīs*, *ūterlibēt*, *which you will*; *ūtercumquē*, *whichever of the two*. The suffixes *-quē*, *-vīs*, *-libēt*, *-cumquē*, are appended to each case-form: *ūtriūsquē*, *ūtrivīs*, *utrōlibēt*, *ūtruncumquē*. *Altērūtēr*, *one or the other*, is usually declined as *ūtēr*. But Gen. *altēriūs-ūtriūs* is found.



| Dŭō, <i>two</i> .<br>Plural. |               |               | Trēs, <i>three</i> .<br>Plural. |               |
|------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------------------------|---------------|
| M.                           | F.            | N.            | M. F.                           | N.            |
| Nom. <b>Dŭō</b>              | <b>dŭae</b>   | <b>dŭō</b>    | <b>Trēs</b>                     | <b>triā</b>   |
| Acc. <b>Dŭōs or dŭō</b>      | <b>dŭās</b>   | <b>dŭō</b>    | <b>Tris</b>                     | <b>triā</b>   |
| Gen. <b>Dŭōrum</b>           | <b>dŭārum</b> | <b>dŭōrum</b> | <b>Trium</b>                    | <b>triūm</b>  |
| D. Abl. <b>Dŭōbŭs</b>        | <b>dŭābŭs</b> | <b>dŭōbŭs</b> | <b>Tribŭs</b>                   | <b>tribŭs</b> |

Decline as dŭō: ambō, *both*.

The other Cardinal Numbers (quattuōr, *four*; quinquē, *five*; sex, *six*; septem, *seven*; octō, *eight*; nōvem, *nine*; dēcem, *ten*, &c.; to centum, *a hundred*) are undeclined. Millē, *a thousand*, is an indeclinable Adjective. The Neuter Plural, miliā, *thousands*, is a Substantive, and declined like Māriā. (See Table of Numerals, p. 129.)

## COMPARISON.

§ 35. The ADJECTIVE has THREE DEGREES of Comparison; the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative:

| Positive.          | Comparative.          | Superlative.                 |
|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------|
| Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i> | dŭrŭōr, <i>harder</i> | dŭrissimŭs, <i>hardest</i> . |

The Comparative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *ŭōr*.

The Superlative may be formed from the Positive by changing *i* or *is* of the Genitive into *issimŭs*:

| Positive.            |                    | Comparative.      | Superlative.            |
|----------------------|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| Dŭrŭs, <i>hard</i>   | Gen. dŭr- <b>i</b> | dŭr- <b>ŭōr</b>   | dŭr- <b>issimŭs</b>     |
| Brēvis, <i>short</i> | „ brēv- <b>is</b>  | brēv- <b>ŭōr</b>  | brēv- <b>issimŭs</b>    |
| Audāx, <i>bold</i>   | „ audāc- <b>is</b> | audāc- <b>ŭōr</b> | audāc- <b>issimŭs</b> . |

(1) Adjectives in *-er* form the Superlative by adding *-rimŭs* to the Nominative:

| Positive.                 | Comparative.       | Superlative.          |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Pulchēr, <i>beautiful</i> | pulchr- <b>ŭōr</b> | pulchr- <b>rimŭs</b>  |
| Cēlēr, <i>swift</i>       | cēlēr- <b>ŭōr</b>  | cēlēr- <b>rimŭs</b> . |

Vētŭs, *ancient*, forms Superl. vēter-**rimŭs**.

(2) The following form the Superlative by changing *is* into *imŭs*:

|                              |                           |                          |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Fācilis, <i>easy</i>         | Sīmilis, <i>like</i>      | Grācilis, <i>slender</i> |
| Diffīcilis, <i>difficult</i> | Dissīmilis, <i>unlike</i> | Hūmilis, <i>lowly</i> .  |

Superl. fācil-**imŭs**, sīmil-**imŭs**, grācil-**imŭs**, hūmil-**imŭs**, &c.

## § 36. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

| Positive.                | Comparative.  | Superlative. |
|--------------------------|---------------|--------------|
| Bönūs, <i>good</i>       | mēliōr        | optīmūs.     |
| Mālūs, <i>bad</i>        | pējōr         | pessīmūs.    |
| Magnūs, <i>great</i>     | mājōr         | maxīmūs.     |
| Parvūs, <i>small</i>     | mīnōr         | mīnīmūs.     |
| Multūs, <i>much</i>      | (plūs, Neut.) | plūrīmūs.    |
| Nēquam, <i>worthless</i> | nēquiōr       | nēquissīmūs. |

*Note 1.* The Comparative of multūs has no Masc. or Fem. Singular; but full Plural: Nom. Acc. plūrēs, plūrā, Gen. plūrium, D. Abl. plūribūs.

*Note 2.* Divēs, *rich*, often contracts divīt- into dit-: Comp. divītīōr or ditīōr, Superl. divītissīmūs or ditissīmūs.

*Note 3.* Sēnex, *old* (generally an old man), has Comp. sēniōr.

Jūvenīs, *young* (a youth, Fem. not used), has Comp. jūniōr, Masc. or Fem. But older is often nātū mājōr, or mājōr only; *eldest*, nātū maxīmūs, or maxīmūs; *younger*, nātū mīnōr, or mīnōr; *youngest*, nātū mīnimūs, mīnimūs.

*Note 4.* Adjectives of Position spring from Prepositions:—

| Preposition.        | Positive Adj.         | Comparative.    | Superlative.         |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| E, ex, out of       | extēriūs, outside     | extēriōr        | extrēmūs (extīmūs)   |
| Intrā, within       | —                     | intēriōr        | intīmūs              |
| Sūpēr, above        | sūpēriūs, high above  | sūpēriōr        | sūprēmūs (summūs)    |
| Infrā, below        | inferiūs, deep below  | inferiōr        | infimūs (īmūs)       |
| Prae, before        | —                     | prīōr           | primūs, first        |
| Post, after         | postēriūs, next after | postēriōr       | postremūs (postūmūs) |
| Cītrā, on near side | —                     | cītēriōr        | cītīmūs              |
| Ultrā, beyond       | —                     | ultēriōr        | ultīmūs, last        |
| Prōpē, near         | —                     | prōpiōr         | proxīmūs             |
| Dē, down from       | —                     | dētēriōr, worse | dētērimūs, worst     |

*Obs.* Adjectives in -ūs after a vowel use in Comparison māgis, maxīmē; dūbiūs, doubtful, māgis dūbiūs, maxīmē dūbiūs.

Adjectives in -dicūs, -ficūs, -vōlūs change ūs into -entīōr, entissīmūs; magnificūs, magnificentiōr, magnificentissīmūs.

Ociōr, swifter, ocissīmūs, has no Positive.

Many Adjectives have Positive only: some Comparative without Superlative, many Superlative without Comparative.

## § 37. ADVERBS derived from Adjectives imitate their Comparison, with endings, Comparative ūs, Superlative ē.

|         | Positive.                  | Comparative.       | Superlative. |
|---------|----------------------------|--------------------|--------------|
| Adj.    | Dignūs, <i>worthy</i>      | dignīor            | dignissimūs. |
| Adv.    | Dignē, <i>worthily</i>     | dignīus            | dignissimē.  |
| Adj.    | Grāvīs, <i>weighty</i>     | grāvīor            | grāvissimūs. |
| Adv.    | Grāvītōr, <i>weightily</i> | grāvīus            | grāvissimē.  |
| a. So : | Saepe, <i>often</i>        | saepīus            | saeptissimē. |
|         | Diū, <i>long</i>           | diūtīus            | diūtissimē.  |
| But :   | Multum, <i>much</i>        | plūs               | plūrtimum.   |
|         | Magnōpērē, <i>greatly</i>  | māgis, <i>more</i> | maximē.      |

## PRONOUNS.

§ 38. Personal and Reflexive Pronouns are purely Substantives; the rest are generally Adjectives, but are often used Substantively.

## (1) PERSONAL.

## 1. FIRST PERSON.

|      | Singular.                         | Plural.                                          |
|------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | <b>Ėgō</b> , <i>I</i>             | <b>Nōs</b> , <i>we</i>                           |
| Acc. | <b>Mē</b> , <i>me</i>             | <b>Nōs</b> , <i>us</i>                           |
| Gen. | <b>Mēi</b> , <i>of me</i>         | <b>Nostrī</b> , or <b>Nostrum</b> , <i>of us</i> |
| Dat. | <b>Mihī</b> , <i>to or for me</i> | <b>Nōbīs</b> , <i>to or for us</i>               |
| Abl. | <b>Mē</b> , <i>(with) me</i>      | <b>Nōbīs</b> , <i>(with) us.</i>                 |

## 2. SECOND PERSON.

|       | Singular.                           | Plural.                                           |
|-------|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| N. V. | <b>Tū</b> , <i>thou</i>             | <b>Vōs</b> , <i>ye</i>                            |
| Acc.  | <b>Tē</b> , <i>thee</i>             | <b>Vōs</b> , <i>you</i>                           |
| Gen.  | <b>Tūi</b> , <i>of thee</i>         | <b>Vestri</b> , or <b>Vestrum</b> , <i>of you</i> |
| Dat.  | <b>Tibi</b> , <i>to or for thee</i> | <b>Vōbīs</b> , <i>to or for you</i>               |
| Abl.  | <b>Tē</b> , <i>(with) thee</i>      | <b>Vōbīs</b> , <i>(with) you.</i>                 |

## (2) REFLEXIVE (THIRD PERSON).

## Singular and Plural.

|      |                                                                         |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Nom. | (wanting.)                                                              |
| Acc. | <b>Sē</b> (sēsē), <i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>        |
| Gen. | <b>Sūi</b> , <i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>          |
| Dat. | <b>Sibi</b> , <i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i>  |
| Abl. | <b>Sē</b> (sēsē), <i>(with) himself, herself, itself, or themselves</i> |

## (3) POSSESSIVE.

As Bōnūs, decline:

Mēūs, mēā, mēum, *my, mine.*  
 Tūūs, tūā, tūum, *thy, thine.*  
 Sūūs, sūā, sūum, *his, her, its, their own.*  
 Cūūs, cūā, cūum, *whose; whose?*

As Nīgēr:

Nostēr, nostrā, nostrum, *our.*  
 Vestēr, vestrā, vestrum, *your.*

*Note.* Mēūs has Vocative Masculine mī. Tūūs, sūūs, have none.

## (4) DEMONSTRATIVE.

## 1. SIMPLE OR UNEMPHATIC.

*Īs, that (or he, she, it).*

|      | Singular.   |             |             | Plural.           |              |              |
|------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Nom. | <b>Īs</b>   | <b>ěā</b>   | <b>Īd</b>   | <b>Īi (Īi)</b>    | <b>ěae</b>   | <b>ěā</b>    |
| Acc. | <b>Ēum</b>  | <b>ěam</b>  | <b>Īd</b>   | <b>Ēōs</b>        | <b>ěās</b>   | <b>ěā</b>    |
| Gen. | <b>Ējūs</b> | <b>ějūs</b> | <b>ějūs</b> | <b>Ēōrum</b>      | <b>ěārum</b> | <b>ěōrum</b> |
| Dat. | <b>Īi</b>   | <b>ěi</b>   | <b>ěi</b>   | <b>Īis or Ēis</b> |              |              |
| Abl. | <b>Ēō</b>   | <b>ěā</b>   | <b>ěō</b>   | <b>Īis or Ēis</b> |              |              |

## 2. EMPHATIC.

*Hīc, this (near me).*

|      | Singular.    |              |              | Plural.      |              |              |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Nom. | <b>Hīc</b>   | <b>haec</b>  | <b>hōc</b>   | <b>Hī</b>    | <b>hae</b>   | <b>haec</b>  |
| Acc. | <b>Hunc</b>  | <b>hanc</b>  | <b>hōc</b>   | <b>Hōs</b>   | <b>hās</b>   | <b>haec</b>  |
| Gen. | <b>Hūjūs</b> | <b>hūjūs</b> | <b>hūjūs</b> | <b>Hōrum</b> | <b>hārum</b> | <b>hōrum</b> |
| Dat. | <b>Huic</b>  | <b>huic</b>  | <b>huic</b>  | <b>Hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   |
| Abl. | <b>Hōc</b>   | <b>hāc</b>   | <b>hōc</b>   | <b>Hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   |

*Illē, that (yonder).*

|      | Singular.    |              |              | Plural.        |                |                |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Nom. | <b>Illē</b>  | <b>illā</b>  | <b>illū</b>  | <b>Illī</b>    | <b>illae</b>   | <b>illā</b>    |
| Acc. | <b>Illum</b> | <b>illam</b> | <b>illū</b>  | <b>Illōs</b>   | <b>illās</b>   | <b>illā</b>    |
| Gen. | <b>Illūs</b> | <b>illūs</b> | <b>illūs</b> | <b>Illōrum</b> | <b>illārum</b> | <b>illōrum</b> |
| Dat. | <b>Illī</b>  | <b>illī</b>  | <b>illī</b>  | <b>Illīs</b>   | <b>illīs</b>   | <b>illīs</b>   |
| Abl. | <b>Illō</b>  | <b>illā</b>  | <b>illō</b>  | <b>Illīs</b>   | <b>illīs</b>   | <b>illīs</b>   |

*Istē, that (near you), is declined like Illē.*(5) DEFINITIVE. (*Īdem, same; ipsē, self.*)

|      | Singular.      |                 |                 | Plural.                  |                 |                 |
|------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| Nom. | <b>Īdem</b>    | <b>ěādem</b>    | <b>Īdem</b>     | <b>Īdem*</b>             | <b>ěaedem</b>   | <b>ěādem</b>    |
| Acc. | <b>Ēndem</b>   | <b>ěandem</b>   | <b>Īdem</b>     | <b>Ēodem</b>             | <b>ěasdem</b>   | <b>ěādem</b>    |
| Gen. | <b>Ējusdem</b> | <b>ějusedem</b> | <b>ějusedem</b> | <b>Ēōrundem</b>          | <b>ěārundem</b> | <b>ěōrundem</b> |
| Dat. | <b>Īdem</b>    | <b>ěidem</b>    | <b>ěidem</b>    | <b>Īsdem or Ēisdem*</b>  |                 |                 |
| Abl. | <b>Ēodem</b>   | <b>ěādem</b>    | <b>ěodem</b>    | <b>Īsdem or Ēisdem.*</b> |                 |                 |

*Ipsē* is declined like *Illē*, but with Neuter Singular N. Acc. *ipsum*.  
It forms a Superlative *ipsissimūs*, *very self*.

\* Poets write Nom. Plur. masc. *Idem*, Dat. Abl. *isdem*.

(6) RELATIVE. (Quī, *who*, or *which*.)

|      | Singular. |       |       | Plural.         |        |        |
|------|-----------|-------|-------|-----------------|--------|--------|
| Nom. | Quī       | quae  | quōd  | Quī             | quae   | quae   |
| Acc. | Quem      | quam  | quōd  | Quōs            | quās   | quae   |
| Gen. | Cūjūs     | cūjūs | cūjūs | Quōrum          | quārum | quōrum |
| Dat. | Cui       | cui   | cui   | Quībūs or quīs  |        |        |
| Abl. | Quō       | quā   | quō   | Quībūs or quīs. |        |        |

## (7) INTERROGATIVE.

|      | Singular. |        |      |                      |
|------|-----------|--------|------|----------------------|
| Nom. | Quīs      | (quīs) | quīd | } *<br>who, or what? |
|      | Quī       | quae   | quōd |                      |
| Acc. | Quem      | quam   | quīd |                      |
|      | Quem      | quam   | quōd |                      |
|      | &c.       | &c.    | &c.  |                      |

In the other forms as Relative.

Indefinite Pl. Nom. Quī, quae, quā or quae.

## (8) INDEFINITE.

|  | Singular. |      |      |                 |
|--|-----------|------|------|-----------------|
|  | Quīs      | quā  | quīd | } *<br>any one. |
|  | Quī       | quae | quōd |                 |
|  | Quem      | quam | quīd |                 |
|  | Quem      | quam | quōd |                 |
|  | &c.       | &c.  | &c.  |                 |

In the other forms as Relative.

## (9) COMPOUNDS OF RELATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, AND INDEFINITE.

1. Quisnam, quidnam; quīnam, quāenam, quodnam, *who, what?*
2. Ecquīs (for en-quīs), ecquā, ecquīd? Ecquī, ecquae, ecquōd, *anyone?* (Interrogative). So Numquīs, siquīs, &c.
3. Āliquīs, āliquā, āliquīd; Āliquī, āliquā, āliquōd, *some one*.
4. Quispiām, quaeipiām, quippiām (quodpiām), *anyone*.
5. Quisquam, quicquam; Genitive, cūjusquam, &c., *anyone at all*.
6. Quidam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), *a certain one*.
7. Quicumquē, quaecumquē, quodcumquē, *whosoever, whatsoever*.
8. Quisquīs, *whosoever, quidquīd, whatsoever*.
9. Quivīs, quaevis, quidvis (quodvis), *any you will*.
10. Quilibēt, quaelibēt, quidlibēt (quodlibēt), *any you please*.
11. Quisquē, quaequē, quicquē; Quisquē, quaequē, quodquē, *each*. So Ūnusquisquē, ūnāquaequē, ūnumquicquē (-quodquē), *each one*.

a. These Compounds are declined as their Primitives, the undeclined suffix or prefix accompanying each case, as Gen. cūjusnam, ālicūjūs, cūjuscumquē, &c., &c. On Correlatives, see p. 126.

## THE PRONOMINAL CORRELATIVES QUALIS, &amp;c.

| Interrog.                    | Demonst.                | Relat.             | Indefinite.                     | Univ.                                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Quālis, <i>of what kind?</i> | tālis, <i>such</i>      | quālis, <i>as</i>  |                                 | quālisumquē, <i>of what kind soever</i> . |
| Quantūs, <i>how great?</i>   | tantūs, <i>so great</i> | quantūs, <i>as</i> | ālyquantūs, <i>of some size</i> | quantuscumquē, <i>how great soever</i> .  |
| Quōt, <i>how many?</i>       | tōt, <i>so many</i>     | quōt, <i>as</i>    | ālyquōt, <i>some few</i>        | quotcumquē, <i>how many soever</i> .      |

\* The forms Quīs, quīd, are Substantival; Quī, quōd, Adjectival.

## VERBS.

§ 39. The Verb has two VOICES. (1) the ACTIVE VOICE; *ămō, I love*: (2) the PASSIVE; *ămōr, I am loved*.

§ 40. A DEPONENT Verb is chiefly Passive in form, but Active in sense; *hortōr, I exhort*.

§ 41. Active and Dependent Verbs are either—

- (1) TRANSITIVE, acting on an object: *ămō ěum, I love him*: or
- (2) INTRANSITIVE, not acting on an object: *stō, I stand*.

*Obs.* Verbs Intransitive have no personal Passive: see § 76.

§ 42. The Verb has two parts:

I. FINITE. II. INFINITE.

I. The VERB FINITE has three MOODS.

- (1) The INDICATIVE; *ămō, I love*.
- (2) The CONJUNCTIVE; *ămem* (variously rendered: see § 66).
- (3) The IMPERATIVE; *ămā, love thou*.

§ 43. Time is expressed by TENSES.

There are six Tense-forms of the Verb Finite: the Present, Simple-Future, Imperfect, Perfect, Future-Perfect, and Pluperfect. Other Tenses are formed by the verb *Sum, esse (to be)*, with Participles.

§ 44. Tenses have each (1) two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural; and (2) three PERSONS in each Number.

The First Person speaks: *ămō, I love*; *ămāmūs, we love*.

The Second Person is spoken to: *ămās, thou lovest*; *ămātīs, ye love*.

The Third Person is spoken of: *ămāt, he loves*; *ămant, they love*.

*Obs.* The Pronouns, *ěgō, nōs, tū, vōs, Is, Il*, are severally implied in the Personal Endings.

§ 45. II. The VERB INFINITE consists of Verb-nouns.

- (1) The INFINITIVE, having several Tense-forms.
- (2) The GERUND, } Verbal Substantives, which supply Cases
- (3) The two SUPINES, } to the Infinitive.
- (4) PARTICIPLES, or Verbal Adjectives, one of which ends in *dūs*, and is called GERUNDIVE.

§ 46. There are Four regular CONJUGATIONS (three of Vowel Verbs, one of Consonant and U-verbs), of which the PRESENT-STEM and CHARACTER are shown in the Imperative or Infinitive.

## ACTIVE VERBS.

|           |                     | Ind. Pres. | Imperative. | Infinitive. |               |
|-----------|---------------------|------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1st CONJ. | <b>A</b> -verbs     | Āmō        | āmā         | āmā-rē      | <i>love</i>   |
| 2nd CONJ. | <b>M</b> -verbs     | Mōnēō      | mōnē        | mōnē-rē     | <i>advise</i> |
| 3rd CONJ. | <b>Cons.</b> -verbs | Rēgō       | rēg-ē       | rēg-ērē     | <i>rule</i>   |
|           | <b>U</b> -verbs     | Indūō      | indū-ē      | indū-ērē    | <i>put on</i> |
| 4th CONJ. | <b>I</b> -verbs     | Audiō      | audi        | audi-rē     | <i>hear.</i>  |

## DEPONENT VERBS.

|           |                     |         |          |          |                |
|-----------|---------------------|---------|----------|----------|----------------|
| 1st CONJ. | <b>A</b> -verbs     | Vēnōr   | vēnā-rē  | vēnā-rī  | <i>hunt</i>    |
| 2nd CONJ. | <b>M</b> -verbs     | Vērēōr  | vērē-rē  | vērē-rī  | <i>fear</i>    |
| 3rd CONJ. | <b>Cons.</b> -verbs | Ūtōr    | ūt-ērē   | ūt-ī     | <i>use</i>     |
| 4th CONJ. | <b>I</b> -verbs     | Partiōr | parti-rē | parti-rī | <i>divide.</i> |

§ 47. The PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE-STEMS must be known in order to conjugate a Verb :

## ACTIVE VERBS.

| Pres. Stem.       | Perf. Stem.           | Sup. Stem.      |
|-------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Ām <b>A</b> -  | āmā <b>V</b> -        | āmā <b>T</b> -  |
| 2. Mōn <b>M</b> - | mōn <b>U</b> -        | mōnī <b>T</b> - |
| 3. Rēg <b>G</b> - | rex- (reg <b>S</b> -) | rec <b>T</b> -  |
| 4. Aud <b>I</b> - | audi <b>V</b> -       | audi <b>T</b> - |

## DEPONENT VERBS.

| Pres. Stem.     | Sup. Stem.       |
|-----------------|------------------|
| Vēn <b>A</b> -  | vēnī <b>T</b> -  |
| Vēr <b>M</b> -  | vērī <b>T</b> -  |
| Ū <b>T</b> -    | ūs-              |
| Part <b>I</b> - | parti <b>T</b> - |

From these the other parts of the Verb may be formed.

## DERIVATION OF THE VERB-FORMS.

| From PRESENT Stem.          | From PERFECT Stem.      | From SUPINE Stem.      |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| Present Act. and Pass.      | Perfect Act.            | Supines                |
| Future Simple A. and P.     | Future Perfect Act.     | Participle Fut. Act.   |
| Imperf. Act. and Pass.      | Pluperfect Act.         | Infinitive Fut. Pass.  |
| Imperat. Act. and Pass.     | Infinitive Perfect Act. | Participle Perf. Pass. |
| Infin. Pres. Act. and Pass. |                         | Perfect Pass.          |
| Gerund and Gerundive        |                         | Future Perf. Pass.     |
| Participle Pres. Act.       |                         | Pluperfect Pass.       |
|                             |                         | Infinitive Perf. Pass. |

a. A Verb, therefore, is sufficiently conjugated thus :

SHORT FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

|                     | 1st CONJ. | 2nd CONJ. | 3rd CONJ. | 4th CONJ. |
|---------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 Pers. Pres.       | Āmō       | Mōnēō     | Rēgō      | Audiō     |
| Infin. Pres.        | āmā-rē    | mōnē-rē   | rēg-ērē   | audi-rē   |
| Perfect             | āmāv-ī    | mōnū-ī    | rex-ī     | audi-v-ī  |
| Supine in <i>um</i> | āmāt-um.  | mōnīt-um. | rect-um.  | audit-um. |

SHORT FORM FOR DEPONENT OR PASSIVE VERBS.

|               | 1st CONJ. | 2nd CONJ. | 3rd CONJ. | 4th CONJ.  |
|---------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|------------|
| 1 Pers. Pres. | Āmōr      | Mōnēōr    | Rēgōr     | Audiōr     |
| Infin. Pres.  | āmā-rī    | mōnē-rī   | rēg-ī     | audi-rī    |
| Partic. Perf. | āmāt-ūs   | mōnīt-ūs  | rect-ūs   | audit-ūs   |
| Gerundive     | āmandūs.  | mōnendūs. | rēgendūs. | audiendūs. |

b. Or, as a useful exercise, the following parts may often be repeated :

LONGER FORM FOR ACTIVE VERBS.

|                    | 1st CONJ. | 2nd CONJ.  | 3rd CONJ. | 4th CONJ.  |
|--------------------|-----------|------------|-----------|------------|
| 1 Pers. Pres.      | Āmō       | Mōnēō      | Rēgō      | Audiō      |
| 2 Pers. Pres.      | āmās      | mōnēs      | rēgis     | audis      |
| Infin. Pres.       | āmārē     | mōnērē     | rēgērē    | audirē     |
| Perfect            | āmāvī     | mōnūī      | rexī      | audi-vī    |
| Ger. in <i>dum</i> | āmandum   | mōnendum   | rēgendum* | audiendum  |
| " <i>di</i>        | āmandī    | mōnendī    | rēgendī   | audiendī   |
| " <i>do</i>        | āmandō    | mōnendō    | rēgendō   | audiendō   |
| Sup. in <i>um</i>  | āmātum    | mōnītum    | rectum    | auditum    |
| " <i>u</i>         | āmātū     | mōnītū     | rectū     | auditū     |
| Part. Pres.        | āmans     | mōnens     | rēgens    | audiens    |
| " Fut.             | āmātūrūs. | mōnītūrūs. | rectūrūs. | auditūrūs. |

LONGER FORM FOR DEPONENT VERBS.

|                    | 1st CONJ.   | 2nd CONJ.   | 3rd CONJ. | 4th CONJ.    |
|--------------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1 Pers. Pres.      | Vēnōr       | Vērēōr      | Ūtōr      | Partiōr      |
| 2 Pers. Pres.      | vēnārīs     | vērērīs     | ūtērīs    | partiārīs    |
| Infin. Pres.       | vēnārī      | vērērī      | ūtī       | partiārī     |
| Perfect            | vēnātūs sum | vērītūs sum | ūsūs sum  | partītūs sum |
| Ger. in <i>dum</i> | vēnandum    | vērendum    | ūtendum   | partiendum   |
| " <i>di</i>        | vēnandī     | vērēndī     | ūtēndī    | partiēndī    |
| " <i>do</i>        | vēnandō     | vērēndō     | ūtēndō    | partiēndō    |
| Gerundive          | vēnandūs    | vērēndūs    | ūtēndūs   | partiēndūs   |
| Sup. in <i>um</i>  | vēnātum     | vērītum     | ūsūm      | partītum     |
| " <i>u</i>         | vēnātū      | vērītū      | ūsū       | partītū      |
| Part. Pres.        | vēnans      | vērēns      | ūtēns     | partiēns     |
| " Perf.            | vēnātūs     | vērītūs     | ūsūs      | partītūs     |
| " Fut.             | vēnātūrūs.  | vērītūrūs.  | ūsūrūs.   | partītūrūs.  |

\* The forms *-undum* *-undūs* are sometimes used in the 3rd and 4th Conjugations. Intransitive Verbs form no Gerundive Adjective, and no Supine in *u*.



§ 48. Action and State occur in Time. Time is either simply Present, Past, or Future; or it is Present, Past, or Future with some further relation. The subjoined Scheme (for the Active Voice and Indicative Mood) compares the expression of the relations of Time in Latin and English.

|          | Time.          | Indic.        | English.                      | Name of Tense.                                                                                                                                               |
|----------|----------------|---------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present. | (Simple        | āmō . . .     | <i>I love</i>                 | Present.                                                                                                                                                     |
|          | Pres. Relation | āmō . . .     | <i>am loving</i>              |                                                                                                                                                              |
|          | Past Relation  | āmāvi . . .   | <i>have loved</i>             |                                                                                                                                                              |
|          | Fut. Relation  | āmātūrus sum  | <i>am about to love</i>       |                                                                                                                                                              |
| Past.    | (Simple        | āmāvi . . .   | <i>loved</i>                  | Fütürum Pērīphras-ticum Praesentis.<br>Perfect.<br>Imperfect.<br>Pluperfect.<br>Fütürum Pērīphras-ticum Praetēriti.<br>Future Simple.<br><br>Future Perfect. |
|          | Pres. Relation | āmābam . .    | <i>was loving</i>             |                                                                                                                                                              |
|          | Past Relation  | āmāveram .    | <i>had loved</i>              |                                                                                                                                                              |
|          | Fut. Relation  | āmātūrus fūi. | <i>was about to love</i>      |                                                                                                                                                              |
| Future.  | (Simple        | āmābō . . .   | <i>shall love</i>             | Fütürum Pērīphras-ticum Fütūri.<br><br>Future Perfect.                                                                                                       |
|          | Pres. Relation | āmābō . . .   | <i>shall be loving</i>        |                                                                                                                                                              |
|          | Past Relation  | āmāverō . .   | <i>shall have loved</i>       |                                                                                                                                                              |
|          | Fut. Relation  | āmātūrus ērō  | <i>shall be about to love</i> |                                                                                                                                                              |

*Note 1.* The Present, the Futures, and the Present Past (āmāvi, *I have loved*) are called **Primary Tenses**: the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and Simple Perfect (āmāvi, *I loved*) **Historic Tenses**.

*Note 2. A.* The Perfect is formed in several ways:—

1. By adding **vi** to the Stem: āmāvi, flevi.
  2. By adding **ti** (for vi) to the Stem or Clipt Stem: \* cōliti, mōnti.
  3. By adding **si** to the Stem or Clipt Stem: carpsi, mansi.
- In this formation Consonants are generally changed (see § 81).
4. By prefixing a Reduplication, and adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem.
- This Reduplication is either the first Consonant and Vowel of the Stem: cōccurri, mōmordi; or the first Consonant with **ē**, in which case the Stem-vowel is usually changed: cōcēni (from cānō); see § 81; § 111 (9).
5. By adding **i** to the Stem or Clipt Stem, with or without change of the Stem-vowel: bibi, verti, ēgi (from āgō), fāvi (from fāvēō).

*B.* The Supine is formed:—

1. By adding to the Stem or Clipt Stem **tum**, sometimes **i-tum**, and a change of letters often takes place: ānātum, cultum, rectum, mōn-i-tum.
2. The change of letters often requires **tum** to become **sum**. See § 81.

*Note 3.* The learner should bear in mind that the English given in the following Tables for the Tenses of Verbs is often only one of several possible meanings; especially in the Conjunctive Mood.

§ 49. Before the regular Verbs, it is necessary to conjugate the irregular but important Verb of Being, sum, esse, which helps to complete the conjugation of other Verbs.

\* A Clipt Stem is a Stem without its Vowel Character: mon- for monk-.

§ 50. FORMATION OF THE AUXILIARY VERB SUM, *I am* (Sum, fui, esse, futurus).

## VERB FINITE.

| Present Tense. | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                              |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Simple. | <p>S. Sum, <i>I am</i><br/> <i>ēs, thou art</i><br/> <i>est, he is</i></p> <p>Pl. sumus, <i>we are</i><br/> <i>estis, ye are</i><br/> <i>sunt, they are.</i></p>                | <p>sim, <i>I may</i><br/> <i>sis, thou mayst</i><br/> <i>sit, he may</i> } <i>be.</i><br/> simus, <i>we may</i><br/> <i>sitis, ye may</i><br/> sint, <i>they may</i></p>                                                                                            | <p>ēs, <i>be thou</i></p> <p>estē, <i>be ye.</i></p>                                                                          |
|                | <p>S. ērō, <i>I shall</i><br/> <i>eris, thou wilt</i><br/> <i>erit, he will</i></p> <p>Pl. erimus, <i>we shall</i><br/> <i>eritis, ye will</i><br/> <i>erunt, they will</i></p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <p>estō, <i>thou must be</i><br/> <i>estō, he must be</i><br/> <i>estōtē, ye must be</i><br/> suntō, <i>they must be.</i></p> |
| Imperfect.     | <p>S. eram, <i>I was</i><br/> <i>erās, thou wast</i><br/> <i>erāt, he was</i></p> <p>Pl. erāmus, <i>we were</i><br/> <i>erātis, ye were</i><br/> <i>erant, they were.</i></p>   | <p>essem <i>vel</i> forem, <i>I might</i><br/> essēs v. forēs, <i>thou mightst</i><br/> essēt v. forēt, <i>he might</i><br/> essēmus v. forēmūs, <i>we might</i><br/> essētis v. forētis, <i>ye might</i><br/> essent v. forent, <i>they might</i> } <i>be.</i></p> |                                                                                                                               |

| Perfect.        | S. <i>fūi, I was</i> *<br><i>fūistī, thou wast</i><br><i>fūit, he was</i><br>Pl. <i>fūimūs, we were</i><br><i>fūistis, ye were</i><br><i>fuerunt vel fūrē, they were</i>               | fūrīm, <i>I may</i><br>fūrīs, <i>thou mayst</i><br>fūrīt, <i>he may</i><br>fūrīmūs, <i>we may</i><br>fūrītis, <i>ye may</i><br>fūrīnt, <i>they may</i> } <i>have been.</i>                           | VERB INFINITIVE.<br>Infinitive Present and Imperfect.<br>essē, <i>to be.</i><br>Infinitive Perfect and Pluperfect.<br>fūissē, <i>to have been.</i><br>Infinitive Future.<br>fōrē v. fūtūrūs essē, <i>to be about to be.</i><br>Gerunds.<br>None.<br>Supines.<br>None.<br>Participle Present.<br>None.<br>Participle Future.<br>fūtūrūs, <i>about to be.</i><br>Fūtūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum : see § 64. |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Perfect. | S. <i>fūrō, I shall</i><br><i>fūrīs, thou wilt</i><br><i>fūrīt, he will</i><br>Pl. <i>fūrīmūs, we shall</i><br><i>fūrītis, ye will</i><br><i>fūrīnt, they will</i> } <i>have been.</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Pluperfect.     | S. <i>fūrām, I had</i><br><i>fūrās, thou hadst</i><br><i>fūrāt, he had</i><br>Pl. <i>fūrāmūs, we had</i><br><i>fūrātis, ye had</i><br><i>fūrānt, they had</i> } <i>been.</i>           | fūissem, <i>I should</i><br>fūissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br>fūissēt, <i>he would</i><br>fūissēmūs, <i>we should</i><br>fūissētis, <i>ye would</i><br>fūissēnt, <i>they would</i> } <i>have been.</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Like Sum decline its compounds absum, adsum, dēsum, insum, intersum, obsum, praesum, prōsum, subsum, supersum. Prōsum takes *d* before *e*, as, Prōsum, prōdēs, prōdēt, prōsumūs, prōdētis, prōsunt. Absum has Pres. Part. absens; praesum, praesens. Possum will be noticed hereafter.

\* Or, fui, &c. *I have been, thou hast been, he has been, we, ye, they (have been).*

§ 51. THE FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

| Present Tense. | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                      | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                        | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                    |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>S.</i>      | <i>Āmō, I love</i><br><i>āmās, thou lovest</i><br><i>āmāt, he loves</i>                                                                                               | <i>āmem, I may</i><br><i>āmēs, thou mayst</i><br><i>āmēt, he may</i><br><i>āmēmūs, we may</i><br><i>āmētīs, ye may</i><br><i>āment, they may</i>                         | <i>āmā, love thou</i><br><br><i>āmātē, love ye.</i> |
| <i>Pl.</i>     | <i>āmāmūs, we love</i><br><i>āmātīs, ye love</i><br><i>āmant, they love.</i>                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                     |
| Imperfect.     | <i>S. āmābam, I was</i><br><i>āmābās, thou wast</i><br><i>āmābāt, he was</i><br><i>Pl. āmābamūs, we were</i><br><i>āmābātīs, ye were</i><br><i>āmābant, they were</i> | <i>āmārem, I might</i><br><i>āmārēs, thou mightst</i><br><i>āmārēt, he might</i><br><i>āmāremūs, we might</i><br><i>āmārētīs, ye might</i><br><i>āmārent, they might</i> | <i>must love.</i>                                   |

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Perfect.        | <p>S. <i>āmāṇī, I loved*</i><br/> <i>āmāṇistī, thou lovedst</i><br/> <i>āmāṇit, he loved</i><br/> <i>Pl. āmāṇimūs, we loved</i><br/> <i>āmāṇistīs, ye loved</i><br/> <i>āmāṇ-ērunt v. āmāṇ-ērē, they loved.</i></p> | <p><i>āmāṇerim, I may</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerīs, thou mayst</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerit, he may</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerimūs, we may</i><br/> <i>āmāṇeritīs, ye may</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerint, they may</i></p> <p><i>have loved.</i></p>                     | <p><b>VERB INFINITE.</b><br/>         Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>āmāṇē, to love.</i><br/>         Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>āmāṇissē, to have loved.</i><br/>         Inf. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrūs essē, to be about to love.</i><br/>         Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>āmāndum, loving.</i><br/>         Ger. Gen. . . <i>āmāndī, of loving.</i><br/>         Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>āmāndō, for or by loving.</i><br/>         Sup. in <i>um.</i> . <i>āmātum, to love.</i><br/>         Sup. in <i>u.</i> . . <i>āmātū, in loving, or to be loved.</i><br/>         Part. Pres. . . <i>āmāns, loving.</i><br/>         Part. Fut. . . <i>āmātūrūs, about to love.</i></p> |
| Future Perfect. | <p>S. <i>āmāṇērō, I shall</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerīs, thou wilt</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerit, he will</i><br/> <i>Pl. āmāṇerimūs, we shall</i><br/> <i>āmāṇeritīs, ye will</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerint, they will</i></p>               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Pluperfect.     | <p>S. <i>āmāṇeram, I had</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerās, thou hadst</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerāt, he had</i><br/> <i>Pl. āmāṇerāmūs, we had</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerātīs, ye had</i><br/> <i>āmāṇerant, they had</i></p>                    | <p><i>āmāṇissem, I should</i><br/> <i>āmāṇissēs, thou wouldst</i><br/> <i>āmāṇissēt, he would</i><br/> <i>āmāṇissēmūs, we should</i><br/> <i>āmāṇissētīs, ye would</i><br/> <i>āmāṇissent, they would</i></p> <p><i>have loved.</i></p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

\* Or, *āmāṇī, &c., I have loved, thou hast loved, he has loved, we, ye, they (have loved).*

| Present Tense.    | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                               | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. Future Simple. | <p>S. mōnēō. <i>I shall advise.</i><br/> mōnēbīs, <i>thou wilt advise.</i><br/> mōnēbīt, <i>he will</i><br/> <i>advise.</i><br/> Pl. mōnēbimūs, <i>we shall</i><br/> mōnēbītis, <i>ye will</i><br/> mōnēbunt, <i>they will</i></p> | <p>mōnēam, <i>I may</i><br/> mōnēās, <i>thou mayst</i><br/> mōnēāt, <i>he may</i><br/> mōnēāmūs, <i>we may</i><br/> mōnēātīs, <i>ye may</i><br/> mōnēant, <i>they may</i></p>                   | <p>mōnē, <i>advise thou</i><br/> mōnēš, <i>advise ye.</i></p>                                                                 |
| Imperfect.        | <p>S. mōnēbam, <i>I was</i><br/> mōnēbās, <i>thou wast</i><br/> mōnēbāt, <i>he was</i><br/> Pl. mōnēbāmūs, <i>we were</i><br/> mōnēbātīs, <i>ye were</i><br/> mōnēbant, <i>they were</i></p>                                       | <p>mōnērem, <i>I might</i><br/> mōnērēs, <i>thou mightst</i><br/> mōnērēt, <i>he might</i><br/> mōnērēmūs, <i>we might</i><br/> mōnērētīs, <i>ye might</i><br/> mōnērent, <i>they might</i></p> | <p>mōnētō, <i>thou</i><br/> mōnētō, <i>he</i><br/> mōnētōtš, <i>ye</i><br/> mōnentō, <i>they</i><br/> <i>must advise.</i></p> |

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Perfect.        | S. mōnū, <i>I advised</i><br>mōnūistī, <i>thou advisedst</i><br>mōnūit, <i>he advised</i><br>Pl. mōnūimūs, <i>we advised</i><br>mōnūistis, <i>ye advised</i><br>mōnū-ērunt v. mōnū-ērē, <i>they advised.</i> | mōnūerim, <i>I may</i><br>mōnūeris, <i>thou mayst</i><br>mōnūerit, <i>he may</i><br>mōnūerimūs, <i>we may</i><br>mōnūeritis, <i>ye may</i><br>mōnūerint, <i>they may</i>                     | VERB INFINITIVE.<br>Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērē, <i>to advise.</i><br>Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnūissē, <i>to have advised.</i><br>Inf. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs essē, <i>to be about to advise.</i><br>Ger. Nom. Ac. mōnendum, <i>advising.</i><br>Ger. Gen. . . mōnendī, <i>of advising.</i><br>Ger. Dat. Abl. mōnendō, <i>for or by advising.</i><br>Sup. in <i>um</i> . mōnītum, <i>to advise.</i><br>Sup. in <i>u</i> . . mōnītū, <i>in advising or to be advised.</i><br>Part. Pres. . . mōnens, <i>advising.</i><br>Part. Fut. . . mōnītūrūs, <i>about to advise.</i> |
| Future Perfect. | S. mōnūrō, <i>I shall</i><br>mōūrēs, <i>thou wilt</i><br>mōūrēt, <i>he will</i><br>Pl. mōnūerimūs, <i>we shall</i><br>mōnūeritis, <i>ye will</i><br>mōnūerint, <i>they will</i>                              |                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Pluperfect.     | S. mōnūrām, <i>I had</i><br>mōnūrās, <i>thou hadst</i><br>mōnūrāt, <i>he had</i><br>Pl. mōnūerāmūs, <i>we had</i><br>mōnūerātis, <i>ye had</i><br>mōnūerant, <i>they had</i>                                 | mōnūissem, <i>I should</i><br>mōnūissēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br>mōnūissēt, <i>he would</i><br>mōnūissemūs, <i>we should</i><br>mōnūissētis, <i>ye would</i><br>mōnūissent, <i>they would</i> | have advised.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

\* Or, mōnūi, &c., *I have advised, thou hast advised, he has advised, we, ye, they (have advised).*

| Present Tense.                                                                                                                                                                   | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                        | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                        | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>S. Rēgō, <i>I rule</i><br/>rēgās, <i>thou rulest</i><br/>rēgāt, <i>he rules</i><br/>Pl. rēgimūs, <i>we rule</i><br/>rēgitis, <i>ye rule</i><br/>rēgunt, <i>they rule.</i></p> | <p>S. rēgam, <i>I shall</i><br/>rēgēs, <i>thou wilt</i><br/>rēgēt, <i>he will</i><br/>Pl. rēgemūs, <i>we shall</i><br/>rēgētis, <i>ye will</i><br/>rēgent, <i>they will</i></p>         | <p>rēgam, <i>I may</i><br/>rēgās, <i>thou mayst</i><br/>rēgāt, <i>he may</i><br/>rēgāmūs, <i>we may</i><br/>rēgātis, <i>ye may</i><br/>rēgant, <i>they may</i></p>                       | <p>rēgē, <i>rule thou *</i><br/><br/>rēgītē, <i>rule ye.</i></p>                                  |
| <p>Future Simple.</p>                                                                                                                                                            | <p>S. rēgam, <i>I shall</i><br/>rēgēs, <i>thou wilt</i><br/>rēgēt, <i>he will</i><br/>Pl. rēgemūs, <i>we shall</i><br/>rēgētis, <i>ye will</i><br/>rēgent, <i>they will</i></p>         | <p>rēgēm, <i>I might</i><br/>rēgērēs, <i>thou mightst</i><br/>rēgērēt, <i>he might</i><br/>rēgērēmūs, <i>we might</i><br/>rēgērētis, <i>ye might</i><br/>rēgērent, <i>they might</i></p> | <p>rēgītō, <i>thou</i><br/>rēgītō, <i>he</i><br/>rēgītōtē, <i>ye</i><br/>rēguntō, <i>they</i></p> |
| <p>Imperfect</p>                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>S. rēgēbam, <i>I was</i><br/>rēgēbās, <i>thou wast</i><br/>rēgēbāt, <i>he was</i><br/>Pl. rēgēbāmūs, <i>we were</i><br/>rēgēbātis, <i>ye were</i><br/>rēgēbant, <i>they were</i></p> | <p>rēgēm, <i>I might</i><br/>rēgērēs, <i>thou mightst</i><br/>rēgērēt, <i>he might</i><br/>rēgērēmūs, <i>we might</i><br/>rēgērētis, <i>ye might</i><br/>rēgērent, <i>they might</i></p> | <p>rēgītō, <i>thou</i><br/>rēgītō, <i>he</i><br/>rēgītōtē, <i>ye</i><br/>rēguntō, <i>they</i></p> |



| Perfect.        | S. <i>rēxī, I ruled</i> †<br><i>rēxistī, thou ruledst</i><br><i>rēxīt, he ruled</i><br>Pl. <i>rēximūs, we ruled</i><br><i>rēxistis, ye ruled</i> [ruled].<br><i>rēx-erunt vēr rex-erē, they</i> | <i>rēxērim, I may</i><br><i>rēxērīs, thou mayst</i><br><i>rēxērīt, he may</i><br><i>rēxērīmūs, we may</i><br><i>rēxērītūs, ye may</i><br><i>rēxērint, they may</i>                    | VERB INFINITE.<br><br>Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>rēgērē, to rule.</i><br>Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>rēxissē, to have ruled.</i><br>Inf. Fut. . . <i>rectūrūs essē, to be</i><br><i>about to rule.</i>                                                                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Perfect. | S. <i>rēxērō, I shall</i><br><i>rēxērīs, thou wilt</i><br><i>rēxērīt, he will</i><br>Pl. <i>rēxērīmūs, we shall</i><br><i>rēxērītūs, ye will</i><br><i>rēxērint, they will</i>                  | <i>rēxissē, I should</i><br><i>rēxissēs, thou wouldst</i><br><i>rēxissēt, he would</i><br><i>rēxissēmūs, we should</i><br><i>rēxissētīs, ye would</i><br><i>rēxissent, they would</i> | Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>rēgendum, ruling.</i><br>Ger. Gen. . . <i>rēgendī, of ruling.</i><br>Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>rēgendō, for or by</i><br><i>ruling.</i><br>Sup. in <i>um</i> . <i>rectum, to rule.</i><br>Sup. in <i>u</i> . . <i>rectū, in ruling, or to</i><br><i>be ruled.</i> |
| Pluperfect.     | S. <i>rēxeram, I had</i><br><i>rēxerās, thou hadst</i><br><i>rēxerāt, he had</i><br>Pl. <i>rēxerāmūs, we had</i><br><i>rēxerātīs, ye had</i><br><i>rēxerant, they had</i>                       | <i>rēxissē, I should</i><br><i>rēxissēs, thou wouldst</i><br><i>rēxissēt, he would</i><br><i>rēxissēmūs, we should</i><br><i>rēxissētīs, ye would</i><br><i>rēxissent, they would</i> | Part. Pres. . <i>rēgens, ruling.</i><br>Part. Fut. . <i>rectūrūs, about to</i><br><i>rule.</i>                                                                                                                                                                             |

\* *Fācō, dicō, dūcō*, make Imperative Present Second Person, *fāc* or *fācē*, *dic*, *dūc*.  
† Or, *rēxī*, &c., *I have ruled, thou hast ruled, he has ruled, we, ye, they (have ruled)*.

## VERB FINITE.

| Present Tense.                                                                                                                                                           | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                           | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                   | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| S. <i>Auditō, I hear</i><br><i>audis, thou hearest</i><br><i>audit, he hears</i><br>Pl. <i>audimūs, we hear</i><br><i>audītis, ye hear</i><br><i>audiunt, they hear.</i> | S. <i>audiam, I shall</i><br><i>audies, thou wilt</i><br><i>audiēt, he will</i><br>Pl. <i>audiemūs, we shall</i><br><i>audietis, ye will</i><br><i>audient, they will</i>                  | audiam, <i>I may</i><br>audias, <i>thou mayst</i><br>audiāt, <i>he may</i><br>audiamūs, <i>we may</i><br>audiatīs, <i>ye may</i><br>audiant, <i>they may</i>                        | audi, <i>hear thou</i><br><br>audite, <i>hear ye.</i>                                            |
| Future Simple.                                                                                                                                                           | S. <i>audiet, I shall hear.</i><br><br>Pl. <i>audient, they will hear.</i>                                                                                                                 | audiam, <i>I may hear.</i><br><br>Pl. <i>audient, they might hear.</i>                                                                                                              | audito, <i>thou must hear.</i><br>audito, <i>he</i><br>audito, <i>ye</i><br>audiant, <i>they</i> |
| Imperfect.                                                                                                                                                               | S. <i>audiebam, I was hearing.</i><br><i>audiebas, thou wast</i><br><i>audiebat, he was</i><br>Pl. <i>audiebāmūs, we were</i><br><i>audiebatīs, ye were</i><br><i>audiebant, they were</i> | audire, <i>I might hear.</i><br>audires, <i>thou mightst</i><br>audirēt, <i>he might</i><br>audiremūs, <i>we might</i><br>audirētīs, <i>ye might</i><br>audirent, <i>they might</i> |                                                                                                  |

| Perfect.        | S. <i>audīvī, I heard</i><br><i>audivistī, thou hearest</i><br><i>audivīt, he heard</i><br>Pl. <i>audivimūs, we heard</i><br><i>audivistis, ye heard</i><br><i>audiv-erunt v. audiv-erē,</i><br><i>they heard.</i> | <i>audivērim, I may</i><br><i>audivēris, thou mayst</i><br><i>audivērīt, he may</i><br><i>audivērimūs, we may</i><br><i>audivērītis, ye may</i><br><i>audivērint, they may</i><br><i>have</i><br><i>heard.</i>           | VERB INFINITIVE.<br><br>Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>audirē, to hear.</i><br>Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>audivissē, to have</i><br><i>heard.</i><br>Inf. Fut. . <i>auditūrus essē, to be</i><br><i>about to hear.</i><br>Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>audiendum, hearing.</i><br>Ger. Gen. . <i>audiendī, of hearing.</i><br>Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>audiendō, for or by</i><br><i>hearing.</i><br>Sup. in <i>um</i> . <i>audītum, to hear.</i><br>Sup. in <i>u</i> . <i>audītū, in hearing, or</i><br><i>to be heard.</i><br>Part. Pres. . <i>audiens, hearing.</i><br>Part. Fut. . <i>auditūrus, about to</i><br><i>hear.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Perfect. | S. <i>audivērō, I shall</i><br><i>audivēris, thou wilt</i><br><i>audivērīt, he will</i><br>Pl. <i>audivērimūs, we shall</i><br><i>audivērītis, ye will</i><br><i>audivērint, they will</i><br><i>have heard.</i>   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Pluperfect.     | S. <i>audivēram, I had</i><br><i>audivēras, thou hadst</i><br><i>audivērāt, he had</i><br>Pl. <i>audivēramūs, we had</i><br><i>audivērātis, ye had</i><br><i>audivērant, they had</i><br><i>heard.</i>             | <i>audivissem, I should</i><br><i>audivissēs, thou wouldst</i><br><i>audivissēt, he would</i><br><i>audivissēmūs, we should</i><br><i>audivissētis, ye would</i><br><i>audivissent, they would</i><br><i>have heard.</i> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

\* Or, *audivī, &c., I have heard, thou hast heard, he has heard, we, ye, they (have heard).*

| Present Tense. | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                               | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                         | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Simple. | <p>S. <i>Āmor, I am</i><br/> <i>āmā-ris vėl -rė, thou art</i><br/> <i>āmātūr, he is</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāmūr, we are</i><br/> <i>āmāminī, ye are</i><br/> <i>āmantūr, they are</i></p>                         | <p><i>āmēr, I may</i><br/> <i>āmē-ris vėl -rė, thou mayst</i><br/> <i>āmētūr, he may</i><br/> <i>āmēmūr, we may</i><br/> <i>āmēmīnī, ye may</i><br/> <i>āmentūr, they may</i></p>                         | <p><i>āmārė, be thou</i><br/> <i>āmāminī, be ye</i> } <i>loved.</i></p>                             |
|                | <p>S. <i>āmābōr, I shall</i><br/> <i>āmābė-ris vėl -rė, thou wilt</i><br/> <i>āmābītūr, he will</i><br/> <i>Pl. āmābīmūr, we shall</i><br/> <i>āmābīmīnī, ye will</i><br/> <i>āmābuntūr, they will</i></p>     | <p><i>be loved.</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                                   | <p><i>āmātōr, thou</i><br/> <i>āmātōr, he</i><br/> <i>āmantōr, they</i> } <i>must be loved.</i></p> |
| Imperfect.     | <p>S. <i>āmābār, I was</i><br/> <i>āmābā-ris vėl -rė, thou wast</i><br/> <i>āmābātūr, he was</i><br/> <p>Pl. <i>āmābāmūr, we were</i><br/> <i>āmābāmīnī, ye were</i><br/> <i>āmābantūr, they were</i></p> </p> | <p><i>āmārėr, I might</i><br/> <i>āmārė-ris vėl -rė, thou mightst</i><br/> <i>āmārētūr, he might</i><br/> <i>āmārēmūr, we might</i><br/> <i>āmārēmīnī, ye might</i><br/> <i>āmārentūr, they might</i></p> | <p><i>be loved.</i></p>                                                                             |

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Perfect.        | <p>S. <i>āmātūs sum, I was</i><br/> <i>āmātūs es, thou wast</i><br/> <i>āmātūs est, he was</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāti sūmūs, we were</i><br/> <i>āmāti estis, ye were</i><br/> <i>āmāti sunt, they were</i></p>           | <p><i>āmātūs sim, I may</i><br/> <i>āmātūs sis, thou mayst</i><br/> <i>āmātūs sit, he may</i><br/> <i>āmāti simūs, we may</i><br/> <i>āmāti sitis, ye may</i><br/> <i>āmāti sint, they may</i></p> <p><i>have been loved.</i></p> | <p><b>VERB INFINITIVE.</b></p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>āmārī, to be loved.*</i><br/>         Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>āmātūs essē, to have been loved.</i><br/>         Inf. Fut. . . <i>āmātum irī.</i><br/>         Part. Perf. . . <i>āmātūs, loved.</i><br/>         Gerundive . . <i>āmandūs, meet to be loved.</i></p> <p>The ancient ending of Infinitive Present Passive was <i>ier</i>: as, <i>āmārīer</i>; and this form is sometimes used by poets.</p> |
| Future Perfect. | <p>S. <i>āmātūs ērō, I shall</i><br/> <i>āmātūs ēris, thou wilt</i><br/> <i>āmātūs ērit, he will</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāti ērimūs, we shall</i><br/> <i>āmāti ēritīs, ye will</i><br/> <i>āmāti ērunt, they will</i></p> | <p><i>have been loved.</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Pluperfect.     | <p>S. <i>āmātūs ēram, I had</i><br/> <i>āmātūs ērās, thou hadst</i><br/> <i>āmātūs ērāt, he had</i></p> <p>Pl. <i>āmāti ērāmūs, we had</i><br/> <i>āmāti ērātīs, ye had</i><br/> <i>āmāti ērant, they had</i></p>      | <p><i>been loved.</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

\* Or, *āmātūs sum, &c., I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been loved).*

§ 56. THE SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

| Present Tense. | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                                      | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                                   | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                             |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Simple. | <p>S. mōnēbōr, <i>I shall</i><br/>mōnēbē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou</i><br/><i>will</i><br/>mōnēbītūr, <i>he will</i><br/>Pl. mōnēbimūr, <i>we shall</i><br/>mōnēbimīnī, <i>ye will</i><br/>mōnēbuntūr, <i>they will</i></p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <p>mōnētōr, <i>thou</i><br/>mōnētōr, <i>he</i><br/>mōnentōr, <i>they</i></p> |
| Imperfect.     | <p>S. mōnēbār, <i>I was</i><br/>mōnēbā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou</i><br/><i>was</i><br/>mōnēbātūr, <i>he was</i><br/>Pl. mōnēbāmūr, <i>we were</i><br/>mōnēbāmīnī, <i>ye were</i><br/>mōnēbantūr, <i>they were</i></p>      | <p>mōnērē, <i>I might</i><br/>mōnērē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou</i><br/><i>mightst</i><br/>mōnērētūr, <i>he might</i><br/>mōnērēmūr, <i>we might</i><br/>mōnērēmīnī, <i>ye might</i><br/>mōnērentūr, <i>they might</i></p> | <p>mōnērē, <i>be thou</i><br/>mōnēmīnī, <i>be ye</i></p>                     |

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Perfect.        | <p>S. mōnītūs sum, <i>I was</i> *<br/> mōnītūs ēs, <i>thou wast</i><br/> mōnītūs est, <i>he was</i><br/> Pl. mōnītū sūmūs, <i>we were</i><br/> mōnītū estīs, <i>ye were</i><br/> mōnītū sunt, <i>they were</i></p> <p>advised.</p>                   | <p>mōnītūs sim, <i>I may</i><br/> mōnītūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i><br/> mōnītūs sit, <i>he may</i><br/> mōnītū simūs, <i>we may</i><br/> mōnītū sitīs, <i>ye may</i><br/> mōnītū sint, <i>they may</i></p> <p>have been advised.</p>                           | <p>VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. mōnērī, <i>to be advised.</i><br/> Inf. Perf. Plup. mōnītūs essē, <i>to have been advised.</i><br/> Inf. Fut. . . mōnītum irī.<br/> Part. Perf. . mōnītūs, <i>advised.</i><br/> Gerundive . mōnendūs, <i>meet to be advised.</i></p> |
| Future Perfect. | <p>S. mōnītūs ērō, <i>I shall</i><br/> mōnītūs ērīs, <i>thou wilt</i><br/> mōnītūs ērit, <i>he will</i><br/> Pl. mōnītū ērimūs, <i>we shall</i><br/> mōnītū ēritīs, <i>ye will</i><br/> mōnītū ērunt, <i>they will</i></p> <p>have been advised.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Pluperfect.     | <p>S. mōnītūs ēram, <i>I had</i><br/> mōnītūs ērās, <i>thou hadst</i><br/> mōnītūs ērāt, <i>he had</i><br/> Pl. mōnītū ērāmūs, <i>we had</i><br/> mōnītū ērātīs, <i>ye had</i><br/> mōnītū ērant, <i>they had</i></p> <p>been advised.</p>           | <p>mōnītūs essem, <i>I should</i><br/> mōnītūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br/> mōnītūs essēt, <i>he would</i><br/> mōnītū essēmūs, <i>we should</i><br/> mōnītū essētīs, <i>ye would</i><br/> mōnītū essent, <i>they would</i></p> <p>have been advised.</p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

\* Or, mōnītūs sum, &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been advised).*

§ 57. THE THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.  
VERB FINITE.

| Present Tense. | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                 | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                      | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                             |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Simple. | <p>S. rēgār, <i>I am</i><br/>rēgē-ris vėl-rē, <i>thou art</i><br/>rēgētūr, <i>he is</i><br/>Pl. rēgīmūr, <i>we are</i><br/>rēgīmīnī, <i>ye are</i><br/>rēguntūr, <i>they are</i></p>             | <p>rēgār, <i>I may</i><br/>rēgā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mayst</i><br/>rēgātūr, <i>he may</i><br/>rēgāmūr, <i>we may</i><br/>rēgāmīnī, <i>ye may</i><br/>rēgantūr, <i>they may</i></p>                      | <p>rēgērē, <i>be thou</i><br/>rēgīmīnī, <i>be ye</i></p>                     |
| Imperfect.     | <p>S. rēgēbār, <i>I shall</i><br/>rēgē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou wilt</i><br/>rēgētūr, <i>he will</i><br/>Pl. rēgēmūr, <i>we shall</i><br/>rēgēmīnī, <i>ye will</i><br/>rēgentūr, <i>they will</i></p> | <p>rēgēr, <i>I might</i><br/>rēgēr-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mightst</i><br/>rēgērētūr, <i>he might</i><br/>rēgērēmūr, <i>we might</i><br/>rēgērēmīnī, <i>ye might</i><br/>rēgērentūr, <i>they might</i></p> | <p>rēgītōr, <i>thou</i><br/>rēgītōr, <i>he</i><br/>rēguntōr, <i>they</i></p> |



| Perfect.        | <p><i>S.</i> rectūs sum, <i>I was</i> *<br/> rectūs es, <i>thou wast</i><br/> rectūs est, <i>he was</i><br/> <i>Pl.</i> rectī sūmūs, <i>we were</i><br/> rectī estīs, <i>ye were</i><br/> rectī sunt, <i>they were</i></p> <p><i>have been ruled.</i></p>         | <p>rectūs sim, <i>I may</i><br/> rectūs sis, <i>thou mayst</i><br/> rectūs sit, <i>he may</i><br/> rectī sīmūs, <i>we may</i><br/> rectī sitīs, <i>ye may</i><br/> rectī sint, <i>they may</i></p> <p><i>have been ruled.</i></p>                           | <p>VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. rēgi, <i>to be ruled.</i><br/> Inf. Perf. Plup. rectūs essē, <i>to have been ruled.</i><br/> Inf. Fut. . . rectum iri.<br/> Part. Perf. . rectūs, <i>ruled.</i><br/> Gerundive . . rēgendūs, <i>meet to be ruled.</i></p> |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Perfect. | <p><i>S.</i> rectūs ērō, <i>I shall</i><br/> rectūs ēris, <i>thou wilt</i><br/> rectūs erit, <i>he will</i><br/> <i>Pl.</i> rectī ērimūs, <i>we shall</i><br/> rectī erītīs, <i>ye will</i><br/> rectī erunt, <i>they will</i></p> <p><i>have been ruled.</i></p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Pluperfect.     | <p><i>S.</i> rectūs ēram, <i>I had</i><br/> rectūs ēras, <i>thou hadst</i><br/> rectūs erāt, <i>he had</i><br/> <i>Pl.</i> rectī ērāmūs, <i>we had</i><br/> rectī erātīs, <i>ye had</i><br/> rectī erant, <i>they had</i></p> <p><i>been ruled.</i></p>           | <p>rectūs essem, <i>I should</i><br/> rectūs essēs, <i>thou wouldst</i><br/> rectūs essēt, <i>he would</i><br/> rectī essēmūs, <i>we should</i><br/> rectī essētīs, <i>ye would</i><br/> rectī essent, <i>they would</i></p> <p><i>have been ruled.</i></p> |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

\* Or, rectūs sum, &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been ruled).*

| Present Tense. | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                                                         | IMPERATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Simple. | <p>S. audiōr, <i>I am</i><br/>audi-ris vel -rē, <i>thou art</i><br/>audītūr, <i>he is</i><br/>Pl. audimūr, <i>we are</i><br/>audimīnī, <i>ye are</i><br/>audiuntūr, <i>they are</i></p> <p>S. audiā, <i>I shall</i><br/>audi-ris v. -rē, <i>thou wilt</i><br/>audītūr, <i>he will</i><br/>Pl. audiēmūr, <i>we shall</i><br/>audiēmīnī, <i>ye will</i><br/>audientūr, <i>they will</i></p> | <p>audiār, <i>I may</i><br/>audiā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mayst</i><br/>audiātūr, <i>he may</i><br/>audiāmūr, <i>we may</i><br/>audiāmīnī, <i>ye may</i><br/>audiantūr, <i>they may</i></p>                   | <p>audirē, <i>be thou</i><br/>audimīnī, <i>be ye</i> } <i>heard.</i></p> <p>audītōr, <i>thou</i><br/>audītōr, <i>he</i> } <i>must be heard.</i><br/>audiuntōr, <i>they</i></p> |
| Imperfect.     | <p>S. audiebār, <i>I was</i><br/>audiebā-ris v. -rē, <i>thou wast</i><br/>audiebātūr, <i>he was</i><br/>Pl. audiebāmūr, <i>we were</i><br/>audiebāmīnī, <i>ye were</i><br/>audiebantūr, <i>they were</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                              | <p>audirēr, <i>I might</i><br/>audirē-ris v. -rē, <i>thou mightst</i><br/>audirētūr, <i>he might</i><br/>audirēmūr, <i>we might</i><br/>audirēmīnī, <i>ye might</i><br/>audirēntūr, <i>they might</i></p> | <p>be heard.</p>                                                                                                                                                               |

|                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Perfect.        | <p>S. auditus sum, <i>I was</i> *<br/>         auditus es, <i>thou wast</i><br/>         auditus est, <i>he was</i></p> <p>Pl. auditi sumus, <i>we were</i><br/>         auditi estis, <i>ye were</i><br/>         auditi sunt, <i>they were</i></p>         | <p>auditus sim, <i>I may</i><br/>         auditus sis, <i>thou mayst</i><br/>         auditus sit, <i>he may</i><br/>         auditi simus, <i>we may</i><br/>         auditi sitis, <i>ye may</i><br/>         auditi sint, <i>they may</i></p> <p><i>have been heard.</i></p> | <p>VERB INFINITIVE.</p> <p>Inf. Pres. Imp. audiri, <i>to be heard.</i><br/>         Inf. Perf. Plup. auditus esse, <i>to have been heard.</i><br/>         Inf. Fut. . . auditum iri.<br/>         Part. Perf. . . auditus, <i>heard.</i><br/>         Gerundive . . audiendus, <i>meet to be heard.</i></p> |
| Future Perfect. | <p>S. auditus erō, <i>I shall</i><br/>         auditus eris, <i>thou wilt</i><br/>         auditus erit, <i>he will</i></p> <p>Pl. auditi erimus, <i>we shall</i><br/>         auditi eritis, <i>ye will</i><br/>         auditi erunt, <i>they will</i></p> | <p><i>have been heard.</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Pluperfect.     | <p>S. auditus eram, <i>I had</i><br/>         auditus eras, <i>thou hadst</i><br/>         auditus erat, <i>he had</i></p> <p>Pl. auditi eramus, <i>we had</i><br/>         auditi eratis, <i>ye had</i><br/>         auditi erant, <i>they had</i></p>      | <p><i>been heard.</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

\* Or, auditus sum. &c., *I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (been heard).*

| INDICATIVE MOOD. |                                    |                    |                      |                              |                              |                           |  |
|------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
|                  | Singular.                          |                    |                      | Plural.                      |                              |                           |  |
|                  | 1.                                 | 2.                 | 3.                   | 1.                           | 2.                           | 3.                        |  |
| Present.         | Ām-<br>Mōn-<br>Rēg-<br>Aud-        | ō<br>ēō<br>ō<br>iō | ās<br>ēs<br>īs<br>it | āmūs<br>ēmūs<br>īmūs<br>ipūs | ātīs<br>ētīs<br>ītīs<br>itīs | ant<br>ent<br>unt<br>iunt |  |
| Fut. Simple.     | Āmā-<br>Mōnē-<br>Rēg-<br>Audī-     | } bō<br>am         | bīs<br>ēs<br>ēt      | bīmūs<br>ēmūs                | bītīs<br>ētīs                | bunt<br>ent               |  |
| Imperfect.       | Āmā-<br>Mōnē-<br>Rēg-ē-<br>Audī-ē- | } bam              | bās<br>bāt           | bāmūs                        | bātīs                        | bant                      |  |
| Perfect.         | Āmāv-<br>Mōnū-<br>Rex-<br>Audīv-   | } ī                | istī<br>it           | īmūs                         | istīs                        | ērunt v.<br>ērē           |  |
| Fut. Perf.       | Āmāv-<br>Mōnū-<br>Rex-<br>Audīv-   | } ērō              | ērīs<br>ērīt         | ērīmūs                       | ērītīs                       | ērint                     |  |
| Pluperfect.      | Āmāv-<br>Mōnū-<br>Rex-<br>Audīv-   | } ēram             | ērās<br>ērāt         | ērāmūs                       | ērātīs                       | ērant                     |  |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|      | Present. |        |       | Future. |       |        |        |
|------|----------|--------|-------|---------|-------|--------|--------|
|      | S. 2.    | Pl. 2. |       | S. 2.   | S. 3. | Pl. 2. | Pl. 3. |
| Ām-  | ā        | ātē    | ~~~~~ | ātō     | ātō   | ātōtē  | antō   |
| Mōn- | ē        | ētē    | ~~~~~ | ētō     | ētō   | ētōtē  | entō   |
| Rĕg- | ē        | itē    | ~~~~~ | ītō     | ītō   | ītōtē  | untō   |
| Aud- | ī        | itē    | ~~~~~ | itō     | itō   | itōtē  | iuntō  |

*Note.*—When the Perfect-stem ends in *av*, *ev*, *ov*, *v* is often eliminated before *is* or *er* (but not before *ērē*), and contraction always follows:

āmāvistī × āmāstī implēvissem × implemsem nōvistī × nostī

āmāvērunt × āmāvunt implēvēram × implēram nōvēram × nōram

When the Perfect-stem ends in *iv*, *v* is often eliminated, and contraction may follow before *is* only: audīvī × audīī; audīvistī × audīstī × audistī.

Writers sometimes cast out *is* from other Perfect forms: dixī for dixistī, accessī for accessistīs, surrexē for surrexissē; ērepsēmūs for ērepsissēmūs.

The sign × means 'changed to.'

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VOICE.

| CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. |     |     |         |       |       |      |
|-------------------|-----|-----|---------|-------|-------|------|
| Singular.         |     |     | Plural. |       |       |      |
|                   | 1.  | 2.  | 3.      | 1.    | 2.    | 3.   |
| Ām-               | em  | ēs  | ēt      | ēmūs  | ētīs  | ent  |
| Mōn-              | eam | ēas | ēāt     | ēāmūs | ēātīs | ēant |
| Rēg-              | am  | ās  | āt      | āmūs  | ātīs  | ant  |
| Aud-              | īam | īās | īāt     | īāmūs | īātīs | īant |

|       |   |     |     |     |       |       |      |
|-------|---|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|------|
| Āmā-  | } | rem | rēs | rēt | rēmūs | rētīs | rent |
| Mōnē- |   |     |     |     |       |       |      |
| Rēgē- |   |     |     |     |       |       |      |
| Audī- |   |     |     |     |       |       |      |

|        |   |      |      |      |        |        |       |
|--------|---|------|------|------|--------|--------|-------|
| Āmāy-  | } | ērim | ērīs | ērīt | ērīmūs | ērītīs | ērint |
| Mōnū-  |   |      |      |      |        |        |       |
| Rex-   |   |      |      |      |        |        |       |
| Audīv- |   |      |      |      |        |        |       |

|        |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|--------|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| Āmāy-  | } | issem | issēs | issēt | issēmūs | issētīs | issent |
| Mōnū-  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
| Rex-   |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
| Audīv- |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |

| VERB INFINITIVE. |    |                |         |           |            |          |
|------------------|----|----------------|---------|-----------|------------|----------|
| INFINITIVE.      |    |                | GERUND. |           |            |          |
| Pres. Imperf.    |    | Perf. Pluperf. |         | N. Ac.    | G. D. Abl. |          |
| ĀmĀ-             | }  | Āmāy-          | }       | Ām-and-   | }          | um, ī, ō |
| MōnĒ-            |    | Mōnū-          |         | Mōn-end-  |            |          |
| Rēgē-            |    | Rex-           |         | Rēg-end-  |            |          |
| Audī-            |    | Audīv-         |         | Audī-end- |            |          |
|                  | rē |                | issē    |           |            |          |

| PARTICIPLE Pres. Impf. |     | SUPINES. |       | PARTICIPLE Future. |
|------------------------|-----|----------|-------|--------------------|
| Ām-                    | }   | Āmāt-    | }     | ūrūs.              |
| Mōn-                   |     | Mōnīt-   |       |                    |
| Rēg-                   |     | Rect-    |       |                    |
| Audī-                  |     | Audīt-   |       |                    |
|                        | ans |          | 1. 2. |                    |
|                        | ens |          | um, ū |                    |

| INDICATIVE MOOD. |                                    |                        |                                    |                              |                              |                                  |                                   |
|------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|                  | Singular.                          |                        |                                    | Plural.                      |                              |                                  |                                   |
|                  | 1.                                 | 2.                     | 3.                                 | 1.                           | 2.                           | 3.                               |                                   |
| Present.         | Ăm-<br>Môn-<br>Rég-<br>Aud-        | ör<br>ëör<br>ör<br>iör | āris*<br>ēris<br>ēris<br>īris      | ātūr<br>ētūr<br>ītūr<br>itūr | āmūr<br>ēmūr<br>īmūr<br>imūr | āmīnī<br>ēmīnī<br>īmīnī<br>imīnī | antūr<br>entūr<br>untūr<br>iuntūr |
| Fut. Simple.     | Ămā-<br>Mönē-<br>Rég-<br>Audī-     | bör<br>är              | bēris<br>v. bēřē<br>ēris<br>v. ēřē | bitūr<br>ētūr                | bīmūr<br>ēmūr                | bīmīnī<br>ēmīnī                  | buntūr<br>entūr                   |
| Imperfect.       | Ămā-<br>Mönē-<br>Régē-<br>Audī-ē-  | bār                    | bāris<br>v. bārē                   | bātūr                        | bāmūr                        | bāmīnī                           | bantūr                            |
| Perfect.         | Ămāt-<br>Mönīt-<br>Rect-<br>Audīt- | ūs<br>sum†             | ūs<br>ēs<br>est                    | ī<br>sūmūs                   | ī<br>estīs                   | ī<br>sunt                        |                                   |
| Fut. Perf.       | Ămāt-<br>Mönīt-<br>Rect-<br>Audīt- | ūs<br>ērō              | ūs<br>ēris<br>ērīt                 | ī<br>ērīmūs                  | ī<br>ērītīs                  | ī<br>ērunt                       |                                   |
| Pluperfect.      | Ămāt-<br>Mönīt-<br>Rect-<br>Audīt- | ūs<br>ēram             | ūs<br>ērās<br>ērāt                 | ī<br>ērāmūs                  | ī<br>ērātīs                  | ī<br>ērant                       |                                   |

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

| Present.                       |                 |                       | Future.           |                   |                       |
|--------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
|                                | S. 2.           | Pl. 2.                | S. 2.             | S. 3.             | Pl. 3.                |
| Ămā-<br>Mönē-<br>Rég-<br>Audī- | re<br>ērē<br>re | mīnī<br>īmīnī<br>mīnī | tör<br>tör<br>tör | tör<br>tör<br>tör | ntör<br>ntör<br>untör |

\* In the Second Pers. Pres. Indic. Passive it is not so usual to write *rē* for *rīs*, on account of the confusion with Infin. Act. and Imperat. Pass.

† In the periphrases *fui* is occasionally used for *sum*, *fuerō* for *ērō*, *fueram* for *ēram*, *fuerim* for *sim*, *fuissem* for *essem*, and *fuisse* for *essē*: *āmātūs fui*, *fuerō*, *fueram*, *fuerim*, *fuissem*, *fuisse*, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.

VOICE.

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|       |   | Singular. |             |      | Plural. |       |       |
|-------|---|-----------|-------------|------|---------|-------|-------|
|       |   | 1.        | 2.          | 3.   | 1.      | 2.    | 3.    |
| Ām-   | } | ēr        | ērīs v. ērē | ētūr | ēmūr    | ēminī | entūr |
| Mōnē- |   |           |             |      |         |       |       |
| Rēg-  |   | ār        | ārīs v. ārē | ātūr | āmūr    | āminī | antūr |
| Audī- |   |           |             |      |         |       |       |

|       |   |     |          |       |       |        |        |
|-------|---|-----|----------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| Āmā-  | } | rēr | rērīs v. | rētūr | rēmūr | rēminī | rentūr |
| Mōnē- |   |     | rērē     |       |       |        |        |
| Rēg-  |   |     |          |       |       |        |        |
| Audī- |   |     |          |       |       |        |        |

|        |   |     |     |     |       |       |      |
|--------|---|-----|-----|-----|-------|-------|------|
| Āmāt-  | } | ūs  | ūs  | ūs  | ī     | ī     | ī    |
| Mōnīt- |   | sim | sīs | sīt | sīmūs | sītīs | sint |
| Rect-  |   |     |     |     |       |       |      |
| Audit- |   |     |     |     |       |       |      |

|        |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
|--------|---|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| Āmāt-  | } | ūs    | ūs    | ūs    | ī       | ī       | ī      |
| Mōnīt- |   | ossem | essēs | essēt | essēmūs | essētīs | essent |
| Rect-  |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |
| Audit- |   |       |       |       |         |         |        |

VERB INFINITIVE.

| Pres. Imperf. |   | INFINITIVE. |          | Future. |        |
|---------------|---|-------------|----------|---------|--------|
|               |   | Perf.       | Pluperf. |         |        |
| Āmā-          | } | rī          | Amāt-    | Amāt-   | }      |
| Mōnē-         |   |             | Mōnīt-   | Mōnīt-  |        |
| Rēg-          |   | ī           | Rect-    | Rect-   |        |
| Audī-         |   | rī          | Audit-   | Audit-  | um īrī |

PARTICIPLE Perfect.

|        |   |    |
|--------|---|----|
| Āmat-  | } | ūs |
| Mōnīt- |   |    |
| Rect-  |   |    |
| Audit- |   |    |

GERUNDIVE.

|          |   |     |
|----------|---|-----|
| Āmand-   | } | ūs. |
| Mōnend-  |   |     |
| Rēgend-  |   |     |
| Audiend- |   |     |

| Present Tense.                                                                                                                                                       | INDICATIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                          | CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.                                                                                                                                         | IMPERATIVE MOOD. |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| <p><i>S.</i> Ūtōr, I use<br/>ūtē-rīs vĕl -rē, thou usest<br/>ūtītūr, he uses<br/><i>Pl.</i> ūtīmūr, we use<br/>ūtīmīnī, ye use<br/>ūtuntūr, they use.</p>            | <p>ūtār, I may<br/>ūtā-rīs vĕl -rē, thou mayst<br/>ūtātūr, he may<br/>ūtāmūr, we may<br/>ūtāmīnī, ye may<br/>ūtantūr, they may</p>                        | <p>ūtērē, use thou<br/>ūtīmīnī, use ye</p>                                                                                                                |                  |
| <p><i>S.</i> ūtār, I shall<br/>ūtē-rīs v. -rē, thou wilt<br/>ūtētūr, he will<br/><i>Pl.</i> ūtēmūr, we shall<br/>ūtēmīnī, ye will<br/>ūtentūr, they will</p>         | <p>ūtītōr, thou<br/>ūtītōr, he<br/>ūtuntōr, they</p>                                                                                                      | <p>ūtītōr, thou<br/>ūtītōr, he<br/>ūtuntōr, they</p>                                                                                                      | <p>must use.</p> |
| <p><i>S.</i> ūtēbār, I was<br/>ūtēbā-rīs v. -rē, thou wast<br/>ūtēbātūr, he was<br/><i>Pl.</i> ūtēbāmūr, we were<br/>ūtēbāmīnī, ye were<br/>ūtēbantūr, they were</p> | <p>ūtērēr, I might<br/>ūtērē-rīs v. -rē, thou mightst<br/>ūtērētūr, he might<br/>ūtērēmūr, we might<br/>ūtērēmīnī, ye might<br/>ūtērentūr, they might</p> | <p>ūtērēr, I might<br/>ūtērē-rīs v. -rē, thou mightst<br/>ūtērētūr, he might<br/>ūtērēmūr, we might<br/>ūtērēmīnī, ye might<br/>ūtērentūr, they might</p> |                  |
| <p>Imperfect.</p>                                                                                                                                                    | <p>using.</p>                                                                                                                                             | <p>use.</p>                                                                                                                                               |                  |



| Perfect.        |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | VERB INFINITIVE.<br>Inf. Pres. Imp. <i>ūtī, to use.</i><br>Inf. Perf. Plup. <i>ūsūs essē, to have used.</i><br>Inf. Fut. . . <i>ūsūrūs essē, to be about to use.</i><br>Ger. Nom. Ac. <i>ūtendum, using.</i><br>Ger. Gen. . . <i>ūtendī, of using.</i><br>Ger. Dat. Abl. <i>ūtendō, for or by using.</i><br>Sup. in <i>um</i> . <i>ūsum, to use.</i><br>Sup. in <i>u</i> . . <i>ūsū, in using, or to be used.</i><br>Part. Pres. . <i>ūtens, using.</i><br>Part. Fut. . . <i>ūsūrūs, about to use.</i><br>Part. Perf. . <i>ūsūs, having used.</i><br>Gerundive . . <i>ūtendūs, to be used.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Future Perfect. | <p><i>S. ūsūs sum, I used *</i><br/><i>ūsūs es, thou usedst</i><br/><i>ūsūs est, he used</i></p> <p><i>Pl. ūsī sūmūs, we used</i><br/><i>ūsī estīs, ye used</i><br/><i>ūsī sunt, they used.</i></p>    | <p><i>ūsūs sim, I may</i><br/><i>ūsūs sis, thou mayst</i><br/><i>ūsūs sit, he may</i><br/><i>ūsī simūs, we may</i><br/><i>ūsī sitīs, ye may</i><br/><i>ūsī sint, they may</i></p> <p><i>have used.</i></p>         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Pluperfect.     | <p><i>S. ūsūs őrō, I shall</i><br/><i>ūsūs őris, thou wilt</i><br/><i>ūsūs őrit, he will</i></p> <p><i>Pl. ūsī őrīmūs, we shall</i><br/><i>ūsī őrītīs, ye will</i><br/><i>ūsī őrunt, they will</i></p> | <p><i>ūsūs eram, I had</i><br/><i>ūsūs őrās, thou hadst</i><br/><i>ūsūs őrāt, he had</i></p> <p><i>Pl. ūsī őrāmūs, we had</i><br/><i>ūsī őrātīs, ye had</i><br/><i>ūsī őrant, they had</i></p> <p><i>used.</i></p> | <p><i>ūsūs essem, I should</i><br/><i>ūsūs essēs, thou wouldst</i><br/><i>ūsūs essēt, he would</i><br/><i>ūsī essēmūs, we should</i><br/><i>ūsī essētīs, ye would</i><br/><i>ūsī essent, they would</i></p> <p><i>have used.</i></p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

\* Or, ūsūs sum, &amp;c., I have, thou hast, he has, we have, ye have, they have (used).

| INDICATIVE MOOD. |           |            |             |         |       |        |        |
|------------------|-----------|------------|-------------|---------|-------|--------|--------|
| Present.         | Singular. |            |             | Plural. |       |        |        |
|                  | 1.        | 2.         | 3.          | 1.      | 2.    | 3.     |        |
| Vēn-             | ōr        | ā-ris (rē) | ātūr        | āmūr    | āmīnī | antūr  |        |
| Vēr-             | ēōr       | ē-ris (rē) | ētūr        | ēmūr    | ēmīnī | entūr  |        |
| Ūt-              | ōr        | ē-ris (rē) | itūr        | īmūr    | īmīnī | untūr  |        |
| Part-            | iōr       | i-ris (rē) | itūr        | īmūr    | īmīnī | iuntūr |        |
| Fut. Simple.     | Vēnā-     | } bōr      | bē-ris (rē) | bītūr   | bīmūr | bīmīnī | buntūr |
|                  | Vērē-     |            | ētūr        | ēmūr    | ēmīnī | entūr  |        |
| Imperfect.       | Vēnā-     | } bār      | bāris v.    | bātūr   | bāmūr | bāmīnī | bantūr |
|                  | Vērē-     |            | bārē        |         |       |        |        |
| Perfect.         | Vēnāt-    | } ūs       | ūs          | ūs      | ī     | ī      | ī      |
|                  | Vērīt-    |            | sum         | ēs      | est   | sūmūs  | estīs  |
| Fut. Perf.       | Vēnāt-    | } ūs       | ūs          | ūs      | ī     | ī      | ī      |
|                  | Vērīt-    |            | ērō         | ērīs    | ērīt  | ērīmūs | ērītīs |
| Pluperfect.      | Vēnāt-    | } ūs       | ūs          | ūs      | ī     | ī      | ī      |
|                  | Vērīt-    |            | eram        | erās    | erāt  | erāmūs | erātīs |

| IMPERATIVE MOOD. |        |        |         |       |        |  |
|------------------|--------|--------|---------|-------|--------|--|
| Present.         |        |        | Future. |       |        |  |
| S. 2.            | Pl. 2. |        | S. 2.   | S. 3. | Pl. 3. |  |
| Vēnā-            | } rē   | mīnī   | tōr     | tōr   | ntōr   |  |
| Vērē-            |        | ī-mīnī | ītōr    | ītōr  | untōr  |  |
| Ūt-              | ērē    | ī-mīnī | ītōr    | ītōr  | untōr  |  |
| Parti-           | rē     | mīnī   | tōr     | tōr   | untōr  |  |

*Note.* Some Deponents have an Active form also; as, pūnōr and pūnō, *punitā*. Many Participles Perfect of Deponent Verbs are used Passively as well as Actively; such are, auspiciātūs, ābōminātūs, ādeptūs, cōmītiātūs, commentūs, confessūs, dētestātūs, dignātūs, exēscrātūs, expertūs, ēmensūs, fūrātūs, fābricātūs, frustrātūs, imitātūs, mēditātūs, mentitūs, mēdicātūs, mēritūs, mōdērātūs, oblitūs, ōpinātūs, pactūs, partitūs, pollicitūs, pōpuliātūs, praedātūs, prēcātūs, prōfessūs, sōlitūs, testātūs, testificātūs, vērēratūs, etc.

FOUR CONJUGATIONS.  
VERBS.

| CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. |           |             |       |         |        |        |
|-------------------|-----------|-------------|-------|---------|--------|--------|
|                   | Singular. |             |       | Plural. |        |        |
|                   | 1.        | 2.          | 3.    | 1.      | 2.     | 3.     |
| Vēn-              | ēr        | ē-ris (rē)  | ētūr  | ēmūr    | ēmīnī  | entūr  |
| Vēr-              | ēār       | ēā-ris (rē) | ēātūr | ēāmūr   | ēāmīnī | ēantūr |
| Ūt-               | ār        | ā-ris (rē)  | ātūr  | āmūr    | āmīnī  | antūr  |
| Part-             | iār       | iā-ris (rē) | iātūr | iāmūr   | iāmīnī | iantūr |

---

|        |   |     |                  |       |       |        |        |
|--------|---|-----|------------------|-------|-------|--------|--------|
| Vēnā-  | } | rēr | rēris v.<br>rērē | rētūr | rēmūr | rēmīnī | rentūr |
| Vērē-  |   |     |                  |       |       |        |        |
| Ūt-ē-  |   |     |                  |       |       |        |        |
| Partī- |   |     |                  |       |       |        |        |

---

|         |      |    |    |    |   |   |   |
|---------|------|----|----|----|---|---|---|
| Vēnāt-  | }    | ūs | ūs | ūs | ī | ī | ī |
| Vērīt-  |      |    |    |    |   |   |   |
| Ūs-     |      |    |    |    |   |   |   |
| Partīt- | sint |    |    |    |   |   |   |

---

|         |        |    |    |    |   |   |   |
|---------|--------|----|----|----|---|---|---|
| Vēnāt-  | }      | ūs | ūs | ūs | ī | ī | ī |
| Vērīt-  |        |    |    |    |   |   |   |
| Ūs-     |        |    |    |    |   |   |   |
| Partīt- | essent |    |    |    |   |   |   |

---

| VERB INFINITIVE.     |                                         |            |             |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------|-------------|
| INFIN. Pres. Imperf. | INFIN. Perf. Plup.                      | PART. Fut. | INFIN. Fut. |
| Vēnā-                | Vēnāt-<br>Vērīt-<br>Ūs-<br>Partīt-<br>} | ūrūs       | ūrūs essē   |
| Vērē-                |                                         |            |             |
| Ūt-                  |                                         |            |             |
| Partī-               | rī                                      |            |             |

---

| PART. Pres. | GERUND.                                        | GERUNDIVE.    | PART. Perf.                             | SUPINES. |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------------------|----------|
| Vēnans      | Vēnand-<br>Vērend-<br>Ūtend-<br>Partiend-<br>} | um, ī, ō   ūs | Vēnāt-<br>Vērīt-<br>Ūs-<br>Partīt-<br>} | um, ū.   |
| Vērens      |                                                |               |                                         |          |
| Ūtens       |                                                |               |                                         |          |
| Partiens    |                                                |               |                                         |          |

§ 63. *A.* Verbs in *ī-ō* of the Third Conjugation, in their Present-stem forms, retain this *ī* generally; but not before *i*, final *e*, and short *ēr*. These Verbs are (English at pp. 68 &c.) :—

Căpīō, cūpīō, and făcīō,  
Fōdīō, fūgīō, and jācīō,  
Pārīō, răpīō, săpīō, quătīō,  
Compounds of spēcīō and lăcīō.  
Deponent : grădīōr, pătīōr, mōrīōr ;  
And, in some tenses, pōtīōr, ōrīōr.

## EXAMPLES.

## ACTIVE.

Indic. Pres. căpī-ō, căp-īs, -īt, -īmūs, -ītīs, căpī-unt.  
Fut. căpī-am, -ēs, -ēt, -ēmūs, -ētīs, -ent.  
Imperf. căpī-ēbam, -ēbās, -ēbāt, -ēbāmūs, -ēbātīs, -ēbant.  
Conj. Pres. căpī-am, -ās, -ăt, -āmus, -ătīs, -ant.  
Imperf. căp-ērem, -ērēs, -ērēt, -ērēmūs, -ērētūs, -ērent.  
Imper. Pres. căp-ě, -ītě.  
Fut. căp-ītō, -ītōtě, căpī-untō.  
Infin. Pres. căp-ērě. Gerund, căpī-endum, -endī, -endō.

## DEPONENT.

Indic. Pres. pătī-ōr, păt-ērīs, -ītūr, -īmūr, -īmīnī, pătī-untūr.  
Fut. pătī-ār, -ārīs, -ētūr, -ēmūr, -ēmīnī, -entūr.  
Imperf. pătī-ēbār, -ēbārīs, -ēbātūr, -ēbāmūr, -ēbāmīnī, -ēbantūr.  
Conj. Pres. pătī-ār, -ārīs, -ătūr, -āmūr, -āmīnī, -antūr.  
Imperf. păt-ērēr, -ērērīs, -ērētūr, -ērēmūr, -ērēmīnī, -ērentūr.  
Imper. Pres. păt-ērě, -īmīnī.  
Fut. păt-ītōr, pătī-untōr.  
Infin. Pres. păt-ī. Gerund, pătī-endūm, -endī, -endō. Gerundive, pătī-endūs.

Note 1. Ōrīōr is conjugated like pătīōr, except a few forms which follow the Fourth Conjugation : ōrīrī, ōrīrēr, etc. Pōtīōr follows the Fourth Conjugation, but in some forms wavers between the Third and Fourth : pōtītūr or pōtītār ; pōtīmūr or pōtīmūr ; pōtērēr or pōtīrēr.

Note 2. Mōrīōr, ōrīōr, have Future Participles mōrītūrūs, ōrītūrūs.

*B.* Verbs in *ūō* retain *u* in all forms ; indūō, indūīs, indūī, indūērě.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

§ 64. The Participles in *ūrūs*, *dūs*, may be conjugated with all the Tenses of the Verb *sum*.

| SINGULAR.       |         |       | PLURAL.         |         |        |
|-----------------|---------|-------|-----------------|---------|--------|
| C. P. F.        |         |       | C. P. F.        |         |        |
| C. P. G.        |         |       | C. P. G.        |         |        |
| Āmandūs, ā, um  |         |       | Āmandī, ae, ā   |         |        |
| Mōnītūrūs       |         |       | Mōnēdī          |         |        |
| Rēctūrūs        |         |       | Rēgēdī          |         |        |
| Audītūrūs       |         |       | Audēdī          |         |        |
| Vēnātūrūs       |         |       | Vēnandī         |         |        |
| Vērtūrūs        |         |       | Vērendī         |         |        |
| Ūsūrūs          |         |       | Ūtēdī           |         |        |
| Partītūrūs      |         |       | Partiēdī        |         |        |
| Pres.           | sum     | ēs    | sim             | estis   | sintis |
| S. Fut.         | erō     | eris  | erimūs          | eritis  | erunt  |
| Imp.            | eram    | erās  | erāmūs          | erātis  | erant  |
| Perf.           | fū-ī    | -istī | fū-īmus         | -istis  | -erunt |
| Fut. P.         | fū-erō  | -eris | fū-erimūs       | -eritis | -erint |
| Plupf.          | fū-eram | -erās | fū-erāmūs       | -erātis | -erant |
| Indic. M.       |         |       | Indic. M.       |         |        |
| Conj. M.        |         |       | Conj. M.        |         |        |
| Inf. Pres. essē |         |       | Inf. Pres. essē |         |        |
| " Perf. fuissē. |         |       | " Perf. fuissē. |         |        |
| essēmūs         |         |       | essētis         |         |        |
| fū-erimūs       |         |       | fū-eritis       |         |        |
| fū-issēmūs      |         |       | fū-issētis      |         |        |

In translating, it is only required to construe each part of the Verb sum, as given in the Table, § 50, with each Participle: āmātūrūs sum, *I am about to love*; āmandūs sum, *I am meet to be loved* (or, *I am to be loved*). So also fūtūrūs sum, *I am about to be*; fūtūrūs sim, *eram*, *essem*, &c.

## SIGNS OF THE TENSES AND MOODS.

§ 65. The Latin Tenses may be variously rendered :

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres. *āmō, love, am loving.*

Imp. *āmābam, loved, was loving, used to love.*

Perf. *āmāvī, loved (Simple Past), have loved (Present Past).*

§ 66. The Conjunctive Mood has two general uses :

(1) Pure, or not subordinate to another Verb :

(2) Subjunctive, or subordinate to another Verb.

1. The Pure Conjunctive is rendered in English with auxiliary Verbs for Signs ; generally *would* or *should* ; sometimes *can*, *could* ; *may*, *might* ; *shall*, or *will* :

*āmem tē (sī bōnūs sīs),*

*I can love you (if you are good).*

*āmārem tē (sī bōnūs essēs),*

*I should—would—love you (if you were good), or*

*I should have been loving you (if you were good).*

*āmāvissem tē (sī bōnūs fūissēs or essēs),*

*I should—would—have loved you (had you been good).*

2. When the Mood is Subjunctive, it sometimes has a sign in English : *ēdē ūt vivās, eat that you may live* ; but oftener it must be rendered as if it were Indicative : *sīs, essēs, fūissēs*, in the last Examples. So :

*Laudātūr quōd pāruērīt, he is praised in that he obeyed.*

*Laudāvī eūm quī pāruissēt, I praised him (as one) who had obeyed.*

§ 67. The Present Conjunctive is also used Imperatively :

## Active.

*Āmem, may I, or let me*

*Āmēs, mayst thou, or see*

*thou*

*Āmēt, may he, or let him*

*Āmēmūs, may we, or let us*

*Āmētīs, may ye, or see ye*

*Ament, may they, or let them*

*love.*

## Passive.

*Āmēr, may I, or let me*

*Āmēris, mayst thou, or see*

*thou*

*Āmētūr, may he, or let him*

*Āmēmūr, may we, or let us*

*Āmēmīni, may ye, or see ye*

*Amentūr, may they, or let them*

*be loved.*

## THE INFINITIVES.

§ 68. The Infinitives in *rě, rī*, are Present or Imperfect ; Infinitives in *issě, tūs-essě*, Perfect or Pluperfect :

- |                                                                                                   |                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) <i>Dicītūr āmārě,</i><br><i>He is said to be loving.</i>                                      | (1) <i>Dicītūr āmārī,</i><br><i>He is said to be loved.</i>                                     |
| <i>Dicēbatūr āmārě,</i><br><i>He was said to have been loving.</i>                                | <i>Dicēbatūr āmārī,</i><br><i>He was said to have been (at the time) loved.</i>                 |
| <i>Sciō ěum āmārě,</i><br><i>I know (that) he is loving.</i>                                      | <i>Sciō ěum āmārī,</i><br><i>I know (that) he is loved.</i>                                     |
| <i>Sciēbam ěum āmārě,</i><br><i>I knew (that) he was loving.</i>                                  | <i>Sciēbam ěum āmārī,</i><br><i>I knew (that) he was loved.</i>                                 |
| (2) <i>Dicītūr āmāvissě,</i><br><i>He is said to have loved.</i>                                  | (2) <i>Dicītūr āmātūs essě,</i><br><i>He is said to have been loved.</i>                        |
| <i>Dicēbatūr āmāvissě,</i><br><i>He was said to have loved.</i>                                   | <i>Dicēbatūr āmātūs essě,</i><br><i>He was said to have been (at a former time) loved.</i>      |
| <i>Sciō ěum āmāvissě,</i><br><i>I know (that) he loved.</i><br><i>I know (that) he has loved.</i> | <i>Sciō ěum āmātum essě,</i><br><i>I know he was loved.</i><br><i>I know he has been loved.</i> |
| <i>Sciēbam ěum āmāvissě,</i><br><i>I knew (that) he had loved.</i>                                | <i>Sciēbam ěum āmātum essě,</i><br><i>I knew he had been loved.</i>                             |

§ 69. A. The Future Infinitive Active has two forms, *-ūrūs essě, -ūrūs fūissě*, the uses of which a few instances will show :—

- (a) *Crēdērīs ĩtūrūs essě, you are believed to be about to go.*  
*Crēdō tē ĩtūrum essě, I believe (that) you will go.*
- (b) *Crēdēbārīs ĩtūrūs essě, you were believed to be about to go.*  
*Crēdēbam tē ĩtūrum essě, I believed that you would go.*
- (c) *Crēdērīs ĩtūrūs fūissě, you are believed to have been about to go.*  
*Crēdō tē ĩtūrum fūissě, I believe that you would have gone.*

*B.* The Future Infinitive Passive is formed by the union of the Supine in *um* with the Impersonal Infinitive *iri*:

*Crēdō āmātūm iri Jūliam*, (lit.) *I believe there-is-a-tending to love Julia*; i.e., *I believe Julia will be loved*.

*Aiunt ultum iri injuriās*, *they say that the wrongs will be avenged*.

*a.* The same may be expressed by *fūtūrum esse ūt, fōrē ūt*, with *āmētūr, āmārētūr*;

*Crēdō fūtūrum-esse (or fōrē) ūt Jūliā āmētūr*, *I believe (that) Julia will be loved*.

*Crēdēbam fōrē ūt Jūliā āmārētūr*, *I believed (that) Julia would be loved*.

### GERUND.—SUPINES.—PARTICIPLES.

§ 70. *A.* The Gerund is perhaps the Neuter Gerundive Participle declined as a Verb-Noun (*um, i, o*).

*B.* The Supines are Cases (Accusative and Ablative) of a Verb-Noun of the Fourth Declension.

*C.* The Gerundive (*ūs, ā, um*, like *bōnūs*) is used to express meetness or necessity, either impersonally, *ēundum est, one must go*; or personally, *vitā tūendā est, life should be protected*. If a Case of the Person is added, that Case is usually the Dative: *ēundum est mihi, I must go*; *vitā nobis tūendā est, life should be protected by us*.

*D.* The other Participles are—

Active. Pres. *āmans, loving*, like *ingens*.

Fut. *āmātūrūs, about to love*,

Passive. Perf. *āmātūs, loved*,

} like *bōnūs*.

The three Participles wanting may be thus supplied:

Act. Part. Perf. '*having loved*,' *quum āmāvissēt* (or by § 125.)

Pass. Part. Pres. '*being loved*,' *quī āmātūr, or dum āmātūr*.

„ Part. Fut. '*about to be loved*,' *quī āmābitūr*.

*E.* Some Verbs form Participials in

–*bundūs, –cundūs*, expressing '*fulness*,' *vāgābundūs, wandering*,  
*irācundūs, wrathful*;

–*bīlis*, expressing '*possibility*,' *pārābīlis, procurable*;

–*īlis*, „ '*capacity*,' *dōcīlis, teachable*;

–*ax*, „ '*inclination*,' *lōquax, talkative*;

–*idūs*, „ '*active force*,' *rāpīdūs, hurrying*, *cūpīdūs, desirous*.



## DERIVED VERBS.

§ 71. I. Frequentative Verbs express repeated or intenser action, are of the First Conjugation, and formed either in *-tō*, *-sō*, from Supine-stems: *cantō*, *I sing* (*cānō*, *cantum*), *cursō*, *I run* (*currō*, *cursum*); or by adding *-ī-tō*, *-ī-tōr* to the Clipt Stem, *rōgītō*, *I ask often* (*rōgō*).

II. Inceptive Verbs express beginning of action, are of the Third Conjugation, and formed by adding *-scō* to the Present-stem:

|                   |                            |                      |
|-------------------|----------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Lābascō</i> ,  | <i>I begin to totter</i> , | from <i>lābārē</i> . |
| <i>Pallescō</i> , | <i>I turn pale</i> ,       | „ <i>pallērē</i> .   |

Or from Nouns, with suffix *-a-scō* or *-e-scō*;

|                  |                         |                    |
|------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>Pūēascō</i> , | <i>I become a boy</i> , | from <i>pūēr</i> . |
| <i>Mītescō</i> , | <i>I become mild</i> ,  | „ <i>mītis</i> .   |

III. Desiderative Verbs express desire of action, are of the Fourth Conjugation, and formed by adding *-ūrīō* to the Supine-stem:

|                   |                         |                                   |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Ēsūrīō</i> ,   | <i>I am hungry</i> ,    | from <i>ēdō</i> , <i>ēs-um</i> .  |
| <i>Partūrīō</i> , | <i>I am in labour</i> , | „ <i>pārīō</i> , <i>part-um</i> . |

## QUASI-PASSIVE AND SEMI-DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 72. The Verbs which unite an Active form with a Passive meaning are:

|                                                     |                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Exūlō</i> , <i>I am banished</i> ( <i>ārē</i> ). | <i>Vāpūlō</i> , <i>I am beaten</i> ( <i>ārē</i> ). |
| <i>Fīō</i> , <i>I am made</i> .                     | <i>Vēnēō</i> , <i>I am on sale</i> ( <i>irē</i> ). |
| <i>Lācēō</i> , <i>I am put to auction</i> .         |                                                    |

§ 73. The Verbs which have an Active Present with a Perfect of Passive form, are:

|                                    |                                            |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Audēō</i> , <i>I dare</i> ,     | Perf. <i>ausūs sum</i> , <i>I dared</i> .  |
| <i>Fīdō</i> , <i>I trust</i> ,     | „ <i>fīsūs sum</i> , <i>I trusted</i> .    |
| <i>Gaudēō</i> , <i>I am glad</i> , | „ <i>gāvisūs sum</i> , <i>I was glad</i> . |
| <i>Sōlēō</i> , <i>I am wont</i> ,  | „ <i>sōlitūs sum</i> , <i>I was wont</i> . |

Some have Active Perfect with Dependent Perfect Participles:

| Present.                       | Perfect.                        | Part. Perf.                             |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>Jūrō</i> , <i>I swear</i>   | <i>jūrāvī</i> , <i>I swore</i>  | <i>jūrātūs</i> , <i>having sworn</i> .  |
| <i>Cēnō</i> , <i>I sup</i>     | <i>cēnāvī</i> , <i>I supped</i> | <i>cēnātūs</i> , <i>having supped</i> . |
| <i>Prandēō</i> , <i>I dine</i> | <i>prandī</i> , <i>I dined</i>  | <i>pransūs</i> , <i>having dined</i> .  |

So *nuptā*, *wedded*, *pōtūs*, *having drunk*, and some others.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs want some of the usual parts of a Verb.

§ 74. I. The Verbs *coepī*, *I have begun*, *ōdī*, *I hate*, *mēmīnī*, *I remember*, have no Present-stem Tenses.

## SCHEME.

|        | Indic. | Conj. | Infīn. |            |
|--------|--------|-------|--------|------------|
| Coep-  | } ī    | ērim  | issē   | Perf.      |
| Ōd-    |        |       |        | Fut. Perf. |
| Mēmīn- |        |       |        | Plup.      |
|        | ēram   | issem | issē   |            |

*Mēmīnī* has Imperative Fut. Sing. *mēmentō*; Plur. *mēmentōtē*.

*Coepī* has Part. Perf. *coeptūs*; Fut. *coeptūrūs*.

*Ōdī* " " *ōsūs* " *ōsūrūs*.

a. *Nōvī*, *I know* (from *noscō*), is similarly used.

II. Many Verbs have Perfect without Supine (see Table), and many Inceptive and other Verbs have neither Perfect nor Supine: *as*, *mītescō*, *pollēō*, *fūrō*, *fērō*.

III. Verbs Defective in other forms:

(1) *Aiō*, *I say 'ay,' affirm*.

|              |         |       |      |           |   |        |
|--------------|---------|-------|------|-----------|---|--------|
| Indic. Pres. | aiō,    | āis,  | āit  | —         | — | aiunt. |
| " Imperf.    | aiēbam, | -bās, | &c., | complete. |   |        |
| Conj. Pres.  | —       | aiās, | aiāt | —         | — | aiant. |

(2) *Inquam*, *I say*.

|              |         |           |           |          |          |             |
|--------------|---------|-----------|-----------|----------|----------|-------------|
| Indic. Pres. | inquam, | inquīs,   | inquīt,   | inquīmūs | —        | inquīunt.   |
| " Imperf.    | —       | —         | inquīēbāt | —        | —        | inquīēbant. |
| " S. Fut.    | —       | inquīēs,  | inquīēt.  |          |          |             |
| " Perf.      | —       | inquistī, | inquīt.   |          |          |             |
| Imper. Pres. | inquē   | —         | —         | —        | inquītē. |             |

(3) *Quaesō*, *I entreat*; 1st Pers. Pl. *quaesūmūs*.

(4) *Fārī*, *to speak*; used by the Poets in this and a few other forms: *as*, *fātūr*, *he speaks*; *fābōr*, *I shall speak*; *fārē*, *speak thou*. Participles: *fātūs*; *fandūs*. Gerund: *fandī*, *fandō*.

(5) The Imperatives:

a. *Apāgē*, *begone*.

*Cēdō*, *cēditē* (or *cettē*), *give here*.

*Hāvē* (or *āvē*), *hāvētē*, *hail*. Infīn. *hāvērē*.

*Salvē*, *salvētē*, *hail*. Infīn. *salvērē*. Fut. *salvēbīs*.

b. *Āgē*, *āgītē*, *come*; *Vālē*, *vālētē*, *farewell*; Infīn. *vālērē*; are used with special meaning, but their Verbs *āgō*, *vālēō*, are fully conjugated.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 75. Impersonal Verbs are conjugated (as such) only in the Third Persons Singular of the Finite Verb, and in the Infinitive.

A. Active Impersonals have no Passive Voice.

(1) The principal of these are of the Second Conjugation :

|                           |                                          |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Ōportēt, dēcēt, dēdēcēt,  | <i>it behoves, beseems, misbecseems,</i> |
| Pīgēt, pūdēt, paenītēt,   | <i>it irks, shames, repents,</i>         |
| Taēdēt add and mīsērēt,   | <i>it disgusts, moves pity,</i>          |
| Lībēt, licēt, and liquēt, | <i>it pleases, is lawful, is clear,</i>  |
| Attīnēt and pertīnēt.     | <i>it relates, belongs.</i>              |

Conjugation of Impersonal Verbs (Second).

|                               |             | Indic. | Conjunc. | Infinitive |            |
|-------------------------------|-------------|--------|----------|------------|------------|
| mē, tē, ēum,<br>nōs, vōs, ēōs | 1. Ōport-   |        |          |            |            |
|                               | 2. Dēc-     |        |          |            |            |
|                               | 3. Dēdēc-   |        |          |            |            |
|                               | 4. Pīg-     | ēt     | ēāt      | ērē.       | Pres.      |
|                               | 5. Pūd-     | ēbīt.  |          |            | S. Fut.    |
|                               | 6. Paenīt-  | ēbāt   | ērēt.    |            | Imperf.    |
|                               | 7. Taed-    | ūīt    | ūērīt    | ūissē.     | Perf.      |
|                               | 8. Mīsēr-   | ūērīt. |          |            | Fut. Perf. |
| mīhi, etc.                    | 9. Līb-     | ūērāt  | ūissēt.  |            | Pluperf.   |
|                               | 10. Lic-    |        |          |            |            |
| ād mē, etc.                   | 11. Attīn-  |        |          |            |            |
|                               | 12. Pertīn- |        |          |            |            |

The Persons are expressed by the Case: as,

|       |                  |                      |          |      |                |
|-------|------------------|----------------------|----------|------|----------------|
| Sing. | Ōportēt mē irē,  | <i>it behoves me</i> | } to go, | or I | } ought to go. |
|       | ōportēt tē irē,  | " " you              |          | you  |                |
|       | ōportēt ēum irē, | " " him              |          | he   |                |
| Plur. | ōportēt nōs irē, | " " us               | } to go, | we   | } may go.      |
|       | ōportēt vōs irē, | " " you              |          | ye   |                |
|       | ōportēt ēōs irē, | " " them             |          | they |                |

|       |                  |                         |          |      |           |
|-------|------------------|-------------------------|----------|------|-----------|
| Sing. | Licēt mīhi irē,  | <i>it is allowed me</i> | } to go, | or I | } may go. |
|       | licēt tibi irē,  | " " you                 |          | you  |           |
|       | licēt ei irē,    | " " him                 |          | he   |           |
| Plur. | licēt nōbis irē, | " " us                  | } to go, | we   | } may go. |
|       | licēt vōbis irē, | " " you                 |          | ye   |           |
|       | licēt iis irē,   | " " them                |          | they |           |

So in the other Tenses and Moods.

(2) Among Impersonal Verbs of other Conjugations are :

|                                 |                              |                                    |                                                   |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| Accidit, <i>it happens</i>      | } mihī,<br>tibi,<br>ēi, etc. | Dēlectāt, <i>it charms</i>         | } mē, tē,<br>eum, etc.<br>mēā, tūā,<br>ejūs, etc. |
| Contingit, <i>it befalls</i>    |                              | Jūvāt, <i>it delights</i>          |                                                   |
| Ēvenit, <i>it turns out</i>     |                              | Intērest, <i>it concerns</i>       |                                                   |
| Convēnit, <i>it suits</i>       |                              | Rēfert, <i>it imports</i>          |                                                   |
| Expēdit, <i>it is expedient</i> |                              | Constāt, <i>it is acknowledged</i> |                                                   |

(3) Some Impersonals express changes of season and weather :

|                               |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Fulgūrāt, <i>it lightens.</i> | Tōnāt, <i>it thunders.</i>        |
| Ningit, <i>it snows.</i>      | Lūscit, <i>it dauns.</i>          |
| Plūit, <i>it rains.</i>       | Vespērascit, <i>it gets late.</i> |

§ 76. B. (1) Intransitive Verbs are used impersonally in the Passive Voice: lūdītūr, *there is playing*, from lūdō, *I play*.

|             | Indicative. | Conjunctive. | Infinitive.   |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| Present     | Lūdītūr     | lūdātūr      | lūdi.         |
| Simple Fut. | lūdētūr     |              | lūsum iri.    |
| Imperf.     | lūdēbātūr   | lūdērētūr.   |               |
| Perfect     | lūsum est   | lūsum sīt    | lūsum essē.   |
| Fut. Perf.  | lūsum ērit  |              |               |
| Pluperf.    | lūsum ērāt  | lūsum essēt  | lūsum fūissē. |

The Persons may be expressed by an Ablative of the Agent :

Present Indicative.

|       |                                              |                              |
|-------|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Sing. | Lūdītūr ā mē, <i>there is playing by me,</i> | or <i>I play,</i>            |
|       | lūdītūr ā tē,       "       "                | <i>thee,   thou playest,</i> |
|       | lūdītūr āb ēō,     "       "                 | <i>him,   he plays,</i>      |
| Plur. | lūdītūr ā nobīs,   "       "                 | <i>us,     we play,</i>      |
|       | lūdītūr ā vōbīs   "       "                  | <i>you,   ye play,</i>       |
|       | lūdītūr āb iis,    "       "                 | <i>them,   they play.</i>    |

But the Ablative is often omitted, being understood from the context.

§ 77. (2) The Neuter Gerundive is used impersonally with essē to express meetness or necessity: sometimes with Dative of Person.

Present Indicative.

|       |                                                        |                     |              |
|-------|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------|
| Sing. | Lūdendum est mihī, <i>there must be playing by me,</i> | or <i>I</i>         | } must play. |
|       | lūdendum est tibi,       "       "                     | <i>thee,   thou</i> |              |
|       | lūdendum est ei,       "       "                       | <i>him,   he</i>    |              |
| Plur. | lūdendum est nobīs,   "       "                        | <i>us,     we</i>   |              |
|       | lūdendum est vōbīs   "       "                         | <i>you,   ye</i>    |              |
|       | lūdendum est eis,     "       "                        | <i>them,   they</i> |              |

Here too the Case is often omitted: nunc est bibendum, *now we (or men) must drink.*

## ANOMALOUS VERBS.

§ 78. Anomalous Verbs do not form all their parts according to rule. Sometimes their Tenses are *borrowed* from several stems, as in sum, possum, fērō; sometimes their irregularities arise from mutation of letters, as in vōlō, nōlō, mālō, ēō, quēō, ēdō.

## § 79. CONJUGATION-FORM OF ANOMALOUS VERBS.

|                    | 1. <i>Be able.</i> | 2. <i>Wish.</i> | 3. <i>Not-wish.</i> | 4. <i>Wish-rather.</i> |
|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1 Pers. Pres.      | Possum             | Vōlō            | Nōlō                | Mālō                   |
| 2 Pers. „          | pōtēs              | vīs             | nonvīs              | māvis                  |
| Infin. „           | possē              | vellē           | nollē               | mallē                  |
| Perfect            | pōtū-i             | vōlū-i          | nōlū-i              | mālū-i                 |
| Ger. in <i>dum</i> | —                  | (vōlend-um)     | (nōlend-um)         | (mālend-um)            |
| „ <i>dī</i>        | —                  | vōlend-i        | nōlend-i            | mālend-i               |
| „ <i>dō</i>        | —                  | vōlend-ō        | nōlend-ō            | mālend-ō               |
| Part. Pres.        | —                  | vōlens          | nōlens              | mālens                 |

Pōtens, *able, powerful*, is used as an Adjective.

|                     | 5. <i>Bear.</i> | 6. <i>Be made.</i> | 7. <i>Go.</i>  | 8. <i>Can.</i> |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1 Pers. Pres.       | Fērō            | Fīō                | Ēō             | Quēō           |
| 2 Pers. „           | fers            | fīs                | īs             | quīs           |
| Infin. „            | ferrē           | fīērī              | irē            | quirē          |
| Perfect             | tūli            | factūs sum         | īvi            | quīvi          |
| Ger. in <i>dum</i>  | fērend-um       | —                  | ēund-um        | —              |
| „ <i>dī</i>         | fērend-i        | —                  | ēund-i         | —              |
| „ <i>dō</i>         | fērend-ō        | —                  | ēund-ō         | —              |
| Supine in <i>um</i> | lāt-um          | —                  | īt-um          | —              |
| „ <i>ū</i>          | lāt-ū           | —                  | īt-ū           | —              |
| Part. Pres.         | fēr-ens         | —                  | iens (ēunt-is) | —              |
| „ Fut.              | lāt-ūrūs        | —                  | īt-ūrūs        | —              |

5. Fērō (Passive) has Pres. Ind. 2. ferris (for fēr-ērīs); 3. fertūr; Imperf. Conj. fēr-r-ēr (for fēr-ērēr), ferrērīs, etc., and Inf. ferri. Other Present-stem forms are regular. Supine-stem forms, lātūs sum, etc.

6. Fīō in the Present-stem forms is the Passive of fācīō, which is regular in the Active, and in the Supine-stem forms of the Passive.

8. Qūeo and its compound nēquēō (*cannot*) form their tenses like ēō.

9. Ēdō, *I eat*, often changes some of its forms as follows:

| Pres. 2nd Pers. | 3rd Pers.   | Infin.        | Imperf. Conj.    |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|------------------|
| ēdis or es      | ēdit or est | ēdērē or essē | ēdērem or essem. |

Pres. Conj. ēdim, ēdis, ēdīt, is used. Other forms are regular.

## § 80.

## TENSE-FORMATION OF

|                 | Present Tense. | INDICATIVE MOOD. |        |         |          |           |                 |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------|--------|---------|----------|-----------|-----------------|
|                 |                | Singular.        |        |         | Plural.  |           |                 |
|                 |                | 1.               | 2.     | 3.      | 1.       | 2.        | 3.              |
|                 |                | Possum           | pōtēs  | pōtest  | possumūs | pōtestis  | pōssunt         |
|                 |                | Vōlō             | vis    | vult    | vōlūmus  | vultis    | vōlunt          |
|                 |                | Nōlō             | nonvis | nonvult | nōlūmus  | nonvultis | nōlunt          |
|                 |                | Mālo             | māvis  | māvult  | mālūmus  | māvultis  | mālunt          |
|                 |                | Fērō             | fers   | fert    | fērīmus  | fertis    | fērunt          |
|                 |                | Fiō              | fis    | fit     | —        | —         | fīunt           |
|                 |                | Ēō               | is     | it      | īmūs     | ītis      | ēunt            |
| Future Simple.  | Pōt-           | ērō              | ērīs   | ērīt    | ērīmus   | ērītis    | ērunt           |
|                 | Vōl-           | } am             | ēs     | ēt      | ēmūs     | ētīs      | ent             |
|                 | Nōl-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Māl-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Fēr-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Fi-            |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Ī-             | bō               | bīs    | bīt     | bīmus    | bītis     | bunt            |
| Imperfect.      | Pōt-           | eram             | ērās   | ērāt    | ērāmūs   | ērātīs    | erant           |
|                 | Vōl-           | } bam            | bās    | bāt     | bāmūs    | bātīs     | bant            |
|                 | Nōl-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Māl-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Fēr-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Fi-            |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Ī-             |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
| Perfect.        | Pōtū-          | } i              | istī   | it      | īmūs     | istīs     | ērunt or<br>ērē |
|                 | Vōlū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Nōlū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Mālū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Tūl-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | —              |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Īv-            |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
| Future Perfect. | Pōtū-          | } erō            | ērīs   | ērīt    | ērīmus   | ērītīs    | erint           |
|                 | Vōlū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Nōlū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Mālū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Tūl-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | —              |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Īv-            |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
| Pluperfect.     | Pōtū-          | } eram           | ērās   | ērāt    | ērāmūs   | ērātīs    | erant           |
|                 | Vōlū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Nōlū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Mālū-          |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Tūl-           |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | —              |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |
|                 | Īv-            |                  |        |         |          |           |                 |

## ANOMALOUS VERRS.

| CONJUNCTIVE MOOD. |                                                             |           |       |       |         |         |        |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| Present Tense.    | Poss-<br>Vël-<br>Nöl-<br>Mäl-<br>Fër-<br>Fi-<br>Ė- }        | Singular. |       |       | Plural. |         |        |
|                   |                                                             | 1.        | 2.    | 3.    | 1.      | 2.      | 3.     |
|                   |                                                             | im        | īs    | īt    | īmūs    | ītīs    | int    |
|                   |                                                             | am        | ās    | āt    | āmūs    | ātīs    | ant    |
| Imperf. Tense.    | Poss-<br>Vell-<br>Noll-<br>Mall-<br>Ferr-<br>Fiër-<br>Īr- } |           |       |       |         |         |        |
|                   |                                                             | em        | ēs    | ēt    | ēmūs    | ētīs    | ent    |
| Perf. Tense.      | Pötü-<br>Völü-<br>Nölü-<br>Mälü-<br>Tül-<br>—<br>Īv- }      |           |       |       |         |         |        |
|                   |                                                             | ërim      | ëris  | ërit  | ërimūs  | ëritīs  | ërint  |
| Pluperf. Tense.   | Pötü-<br>Völü-<br>Nölü-<br>Mälü-<br>Tül-<br>—<br>Īv- }      |           |       |       |         |         |        |
|                   |                                                             | issem     | issēs | issēt | issēmūs | issētīs | issent |

| IMPERATIVE MOOD. |        |          |         |  | (For the Parts<br>of VERB INFI-<br>NITE, see Form<br>of Conjugation,<br>§ 79.) |
|------------------|--------|----------|---------|--|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Present.         |        |          |         |  |                                                                                |
| Singular.        |        | Plural.  |         |  |                                                                                |
| 2.               |        | 2.       |         |  |                                                                                |
| (3) Nöli         |        | nölitē   |         |  |                                                                                |
| (5) Fër          |        | fertē    |         |  |                                                                                |
| (6) Fi           |        | fitē     |         |  |                                                                                |
| (7) Ī            |        | itē      |         |  |                                                                                |
| Future.          |        |          |         |  |                                                                                |
| 2.               | 3.     | 2.       | 3.      |  |                                                                                |
| (3) Nölitō       | nölitō | nölitōtē | nöluntō |  |                                                                                |
| (5) Fertō        | fertō  | fertōtē  | fēruntō |  |                                                                                |
| (7) Itō          | itō    | itētē    | ēuntō   |  |                                                                                |

## § 81. TABLE OF VERBS, SHOWING PRESENT, INFINITIVE, PERFECT, AND SUPINE. (See § 48, Note 2.)

I. FIRST CONJUGATION (Character **A** : ĀmĀ-rē).

| Usual Form : | Present.<br>(ā-o) -ō | Infinitive.<br>-ārē | Perfect.<br>ā-vi | Supine.<br>ā-tum |
|--------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|------------------|
|              | Ām-ō                 | -ārē                | āmā-vi           | āmā-tum.         |

## Exceptions.

-ūi, -itum.

|        | Present. | Infinitive. | Perfect. | Supine.   |                  |
|--------|----------|-------------|----------|-----------|------------------|
| (1) 1. | Crēpō    | -ārē        | crēpūi   | crēpitum  | <i>creak.</i>    |
| 2.     | Cūbō     | -ārē        | cūbūi    | cūbitum   | <i>lie down.</i> |
| 3.     | Dōmō     | -ārē        | dōmūi    | dōmitum   | <i>tame.</i>     |
| 4.     | Mīcō     | -ārē        | mīcūi    | —         | <i>glitter.</i>  |
| 5.     | Plicō    | -ārē        | -plicūi  | -plicitum | <i>fold.</i>     |
| 6.     | Sōnō     | -ārē        | sōnūi    | sōnitum   | <i>sound.</i>    |
| 7.     | Tōnō     | -ārē        | tōnūi    | tōnitum   | <i>thunder.</i>  |
| 8.     | Vētō     | -ārē        | vētūi    | vētitum   | <i>forbid.</i>   |

-ūi, -tum.

|       |      |      |       |        |             |
|-------|------|------|-------|--------|-------------|
| (2) — | Sēcō | -ārē | sēcūi | sectum | <i>cut.</i> |
|-------|------|------|-------|--------|-------------|

## Redupl., -tum.

|        |     |      |       |        |               |
|--------|-----|------|-------|--------|---------------|
| (3) 1. | Dō  | -ārē | dēdi  | dātum  | <i>give.</i>  |
| 2.     | Stō | -ārē | stēti | statum | <i>stand.</i> |

-vī, -tum.

|        |      |      |      |       |              |
|--------|------|------|------|-------|--------------|
| (4) 1. | Jūvō | -ārē | jūvī | jūtum | <i>help.</i> |
| 2.     | Lāvō | -ārē | lāvī | lōtum | <i>wash.</i> |

(1) 5. Also plicāvi, plicātum.

(3) 1. Dō, dārē, has short ā throughout ; with the compounds circumdō, surround ; pessumdō, ruin ; vēnumdō, put on sale, which form -dēdi, -dātum. The other compounds pass to the Third Conj. and form -dīdi, -dītum. III. 18.

2. Comp. ad- con- ob- per- prae-stō, etc., form stīti, statum (-stītum rare).

(4) 2. Also Sup. lāvatum.

II. SECOND CONJUGATION (Character **B** : Monē-rē).

|              |        |             |           |
|--------------|--------|-------------|-----------|
| Usual Form : | -ēō    | -ūī         | -ītum     |
|              | Mōn-ēō | -ērē mōn-ūī | mōn-ītum. |

## Exceptions.

-vī, -tum.

|        |       |      |        |         |                  |
|--------|-------|------|--------|---------|------------------|
| (1) 1. | Dēlēō | -ērē | dēlēvī | dēlētum | <i>blot out.</i> |
| 2.     | Flēō  | -ērē | flēvī  | flētum  | <i>weep.</i>     |
| 3.     | -plēō | -ērē | -plēvī | -plētum | <i>fill.</i>     |

-ūi, -tum.

|        |        |      |        |         |               |
|--------|--------|------|--------|---------|---------------|
| (2) 1. | Dōcēō  | -ērē | dōcūi  | doctum  | <i>teach.</i> |
| 2.     | Miscēō | -ērē | miscūi | mistum  | <i>mix.</i>   |
| 3.     | Tēnēō  | -ērē | tēnūi  | -tentum | <i>hold.</i>  |

(1) 5. -plicūi -plicitum. Forms thus noted are only used in the compounds.



**-sī, -tum.**

|        | Present. | Infin. | Perfect. | Supine. |                  |
|--------|----------|--------|----------|---------|------------------|
| (3) 1. | Augēō    | -ērē   | auxī     | auctum  | <i>increase.</i> |
| 2.     | Torquēō  | -ērē   | torsī    | tortum  | <i>twist.</i>    |
| 3.     | Lūgēō    | -ērē   | luxī     | —       | <i>mourn.</i>    |

**-sī, -sum.**

|        |        |      |       |        |                   |
|--------|--------|------|-------|--------|-------------------|
| (4) 1. | Mulcēō | -ērē | mulsi | mulsum | <i>soothe.</i>    |
| 2.     | Ardēō  | -ērē | arsī  | arsum  | <i>take fire.</i> |
| 3.     | Ridēō  | -ērē | risī  | risum  | <i>laugh.</i>     |
| 4.     | Suādēō | -ērē | suāsī | suāsum | <i>advise.</i>    |
| 5.     | Mānēō  | -ērē | mansī | mansum | <i>remain.</i>    |
| 6.     | Jūbēō  | -ērē | jussī | jussum | <i>command.</i>   |
| 7.     | Haerēō | -ērē | haesi | haesum | <i>stick.</i>     |
| 8.     | Fulgēō | -ērē | fulsi | —      | <i>glitter.</i>   |
| 9.     | Lūcēō  | -ērē | luxī  | —      | <i>shine.</i>     |

**Redupl., -sum.**

|        |         |      |          |         |                         |
|--------|---------|------|----------|---------|-------------------------|
| (5) 1. | Mordēō  | -ērē | mōmordi  | morsum  | <i>bite.</i>            |
| 2.     | Pendēō  | -ērē | pēpendi  | pensum  | <i>hang.</i>            |
| 3.     | Spondēō | -ērē | spōpondi | sponsum | <i>pledge, promise.</i> |
| 4.     | Tondēō  | -ērē | tōtondi  | tonsum  | <i>shear.</i>           |

**-ī, -sum.**

|        |         |      |        |         |                     |
|--------|---------|------|--------|---------|---------------------|
| (6) 1. | Prandēō | -ērē | prandi | pransum | <i>lunch, dine.</i> |
| 2.     | Sēdēō   | -ērē | sedī   | sessum  | <i>sit.</i>         |
| 3.     | Vidēō   | -ērē | vidī   | vīsum   | <i>see.</i>         |

**-ī, -tum.**

|        |       |      |      |        |                 |
|--------|-------|------|------|--------|-----------------|
| (7) 1. | Cāvēō | -ērē | cāvī | cautum | <i>beware.</i>  |
| 2.     | Fāvēō | -ērē | fāvī | fautum | <i>favour.</i>  |
| 3.     | Fōvēō | -ērē | fōvī | fōtum  | <i>cherish.</i> |
| 4.     | Mōvēō | -ērē | mōvī | mōtum  | <i>move.</i>    |
| 5.     | Vōvēō | -ērē | vōvī | vōtum  | <i>vow.</i>     |

**Semi-deponent.**

|        |        |      |             |   |                 |
|--------|--------|------|-------------|---|-----------------|
| (8) 1. | Audēō  | -ērē | ausūs sum   | — | <i>dare.</i>    |
| 2.     | Gaudēō | -ērē | gāvīsūs sum | — | <i>rejoice.</i> |
| 3.     | Sōlēō  | -ērē | sōlītūs sum | — | <i>be wont.</i> |

**III. THIRD CONJUGATION (Character a **Consonant** or **V**).**

Form various. Rĕg-ērē; Indŭ-ērē.

**A. Consonant-Verbs.****Guttural Stems, -sī, -tum (five -sum).**

|        |       |      |       |         |                  |
|--------|-------|------|-------|---------|------------------|
| (1) 1. | Dicō  | -ērē | dixī  | dictum  | <i>say.</i>      |
| 2.     | Dūcō  | -ērē | duxī  | ductum  | <i>lead.</i>     |
| 3.     | Cingō | -ērē | cinxī | cinctum | <i>surround.</i> |
| 4.     | Cōquō | -ērē | coxi  | coctum  | <i>cook.</i>     |
| 5.     | Figō  | -ērē | fixī  | fixum   | <i>fix.</i>      |
| 6.     | Fingō | -ērē | finxi | fictum  | <i>fashion.</i>  |
| 7.     | Jungō | -ērē | junxi | junctum | <i>join.</i>     |

|     | Present.     | Infm. | Perfect. | Supine.   |                  |
|-----|--------------|-------|----------|-----------|------------------|
|     | 8. Pingō     | -ērē  | pinxī    | pictum    | <i>paint.</i>    |
|     | 9. Rēgō      | -ērē  | rexī     | rectum    | <i>rule.</i>     |
|     | 10. Tēgō     | -ērē  | texī     | tectum    | <i>cover.</i>    |
|     | 11. -stinguō | -ērē  | -stinxī  | -stinctum | <i>quench.</i>   |
|     | 12. Tinguō   | -ērē  | tinxī    | tinctum   | <i>dye.</i>      |
|     | 13. Unguō    | -ērē  | unxī     | unctum    | <i>anoint.</i>   |
| (2) | 1. Trāhō     | -ērē  | traxī    | tractum   | <i>draw.</i>     |
|     | 2. Vēhō      | -ērē  | vexī     | vectum    | <i>carry.</i>    |
|     | 3. Vivō      | (-ērē | vixī     | victum    | <i>live.</i>     |
|     | 4. Flūō      | -ērē  | fluxī    | fluxum    | <i>flow.</i>     |
|     | 5. Strūō     | -ērē  | struxī   | structum  | <i>pile.</i>     |
|     | 6. -lāciō    | -ērē  | -lexī    | -lectum   | <i>entice.</i>   |
|     | 7. -spēcīō   | -ērē  | -spexī   | -spectum  | <i>espy.</i>     |
| (3) | 1. Mergō     | -ērē  | mersī    | mersum    | <i>drown.</i>    |
|     | 2. Spargō    | -ērē  | sparsī   | sparsum   | <i>sprinkle.</i> |
|     | 3. Tergō     | -ērē  | tersī    | tersum    | <i>wipe.</i>     |

## Dental Stems, -sī, -sum.

|     |             |      |          |         |                        |
|-----|-------------|------|----------|---------|------------------------|
| (4) | 1. Claudō   | -ērē | clausī   | clausum | <i>shut.</i>           |
|     | 2. Divīdō   | -ērē | divisī   | divisum | <i>divide.</i>         |
|     | 3. Laedō    | -ērē | laesī    | laesum  | <i>hurt.</i>           |
|     | 4. Lūdō     | -ērē | lūsī     | lūsum   | <i>play.</i>           |
|     | 5. Plaudō   | -ērē | plausī   | plausum | <i>clap the hands.</i> |
|     | 6. Rādō     | -ērē | rāsī     | rāsum   | <i>scrape.</i>         |
|     | 7. Rōdō     | -ērē | rōsī     | rōsum   | <i>gnaw.</i>           |
|     | 8. Trūdō    | -ērē | trūsī    | trūsum  | <i>thrust.</i>         |
|     | 9. Vādō     | -ērē | -vāsī    | -vāsum  | <i>go.</i>             |
|     | 10. Cēdō    | -ērē | cessī    | cessum  | <i>yield.</i>          |
|     | 11. Mittō   | -ērē | mīsī     | missum  | <i>send.</i>           |
|     | 12. Quāt-īō | -ērē | (quassī) | quassum | <i>shake.</i>          |
|     | 13. Flectō  | -ērē | flexī    | flexum  | <i>bend.</i>           |
|     | 14. Nectō   | -ērē | nexī     | nexum   | <i>bind.</i>           |

## Labial Stems, -sī, -tum.

|     |           |      |          |           |                    |
|-----|-----------|------|----------|-----------|--------------------|
| (5) | 1. Carpō  | -ērē | carpsī   | carptum   | <i>pluck.</i>      |
|     | 2. Repō   | -ērē | repsī    | reptum    | <i>creep.</i>      |
|     | 3. Scalpō | -ērē | scalpsī  | scalptum  | <i>scratch.</i>    |
|     | 4. Serpō  | -ērē | (serpsī) | (serptum) | <i>crawl.</i>      |
|     | 5. Nūbō   | -ērē | nupsī    | nuptum    | <i>be married.</i> |
|     | 6. Scribō | -ērē | scripsī  | scriptum  | <i>write.</i>      |

## Liquid Stems, -sī, -tum (one -sum).

|     |          |      |         |          |                    |
|-----|----------|------|---------|----------|--------------------|
| (6) | 1. Cōmō  | -ērē | compsī  | comptum  | <i>adorn.</i>      |
|     | 2. Dēmō  | -ērē | dempsi  | demptum  | <i>take away.</i>  |
|     | 3. Prōmō | -ērē | prompsī | promptum | <i>take forth.</i> |
|     | 4. Sūmō  | -ērē | sumpsī  | sumptum  | <i>take.</i>       |
|     | 5. Temnō | -ērē | tempsī  | temptum  | <i>despise.</i>    |
|     | 6. Prēmō | -ērē | pressī  | pressum  | <i>press.</i>      |
|     | 7. Gērō  | -ērē | gessi   | gestum   | <i>carry on.</i>   |
|     | 8. Ūrō   | -ērē | ussi    | ustum    | <i>burn.</i>       |

## Stem various, -ŭi, -tum (one -sum).

|        | Present. | Infín. | Perfect. | Supine.   |                      |
|--------|----------|--------|----------|-----------|----------------------|
| (7) 1. | Elícĭō   | -ĕrĕ   | ĕlĭcŭi   | ĕlĭcĭtum  | <i>entice forth.</i> |
| 2.     | Cumbō    | -ĕrĕ   | cŭbŭi    | cŭbĭtum   | <i>lie down.</i>     |
| 3.     | Rāpĭō    | -ĕrĕ   | rāpŭi    | raptum    | <i>seize.</i>        |
|        | Strēpō   | -ĕrĕ   | strēpŭi  | strēpĭtum | <i>roar.</i>         |
| 5.     | Mētō     | -ĕrĕ   | messŭi   | messum    | <i>mow.</i>          |
| 6.     | Alō      | -ĕrĕ   | ālŭi     | altum     | <i>nourish.</i>      |
| 7.     | Cōlō     | -ĕrĕ   | cōlŭi    | cultum    | <i>till.</i>         |
| 8.     | Consŭlō  | -ĕrĕ   | consŭlŭi | consultum | <i>consult.</i>      |
| 9.     | Occŭlō   | -ĕrĕ   | occŭlŭi  | occultum  | <i>hide.</i>         |
| 10.    | Vōlō     | velle  | vōlŭi    | —         | <i>wish.</i>         |
| 11.    | Frēmō    | -ĕrĕ   | frēmŭi   | frēmĭtum  | <i>murmur.</i>       |
| 12.    | Gēmō     | -ĕrĕ   | gēmŭi    | gēmĭtum   | <i>groan.</i>        |
| 13.    | Trēmō    | -ĕrĕ   | trēmŭi   | —         | <i>tremble.</i>      |
| 14.    | Vōmō     | -ĕrĕ   | vōmŭi    | vōmĭtum   | <i>vomit.</i>        |
| 15.    | Pōnō     | -ĕrĕ   | pōsŭi    | pōsĭtum   | <i>place.</i>        |
| 16.    | Gignō    | -ĕrĕ   | gēnŭi    | gēnĭtum   | <i>produce.</i>      |
| 17.    | Sērō     | -ĕrĕ   | sērŭi    | sertum    | <i>join.</i>         |
| 18.    | Texō     | -ĕrĕ   | texŭi    | textum    | <i>weave.</i>        |

## Present Stem Anomalous, -vī, -tum.

|        |         |      |           |            |                          |
|--------|---------|------|-----------|------------|--------------------------|
| (8) 1. | Līnō    | -ĕrĕ | lēvī      | lĭtum      | <i>smear.</i>            |
| 2.     | Sīnō    | -ĕrĕ | sīvī      | sĭtum      | <i>allow.</i>            |
| 3.     | Cernō   | -ĕrĕ | crēvī     | crētum     | <i>sift, discern.</i>    |
| 4.     | Spernō  | -ĕrĕ | sprēvī    | sprētum    | <i>despise.</i>          |
| 5.     | Sternō  | -ĕrĕ | strāvī    | strātum    | <i>strew.</i>            |
| 6.     | Sērō    | -ĕrĕ | sēvī      | sātum      | <i>sow.</i>              |
| 7.     | Crescō  | -ĕrĕ | crēvī     | crētum     | <i>grow.</i> [with.      |
| 8.     | Noscō   | -ĕrĕ | nōvī      | nōtum      | <i>become acquainted</i> |
| 9.     | Pascō   | -ĕrĕ | pāvī      | pastum     | <i>feed.</i>             |
| 10.    | Quiescō | -ĕrĕ | quīēvī    | —          | <i>rest.</i>             |
| 11.    | Suescō  | -ĕrĕ | suēvī     | suētum     | <i>be wont.</i>          |
| 12.    | Cupĭō   | -ĕrĕ | cŭpīvī    | cŭpĭtum    | <i>desire.</i>           |
| 13.    | Pētō    | -ĕrĕ | pētīvī    | pētĭtum    | <i>seek.</i>             |
| 14.    | Quaerō  | -ĕrĕ | quaesivī  | quaesitum  | <i>seek.</i>             |
| 15.    | Tērō    | -ĕrĕ | trīvī     | tritum     | <i>rub.</i>              |
| 16.    | Arcessō | -ĕrĕ | arcessivī | arcessitum | <i>send for.</i>         |
| 17.    | Lācessō | -ĕrĕ | lācessivī | lācessitum | <i>provoke.</i>          |

## Redupl., -tum or -sum.

|        |       |      |         |              |                     |
|--------|-------|------|---------|--------------|---------------------|
| (9) 1. | Pendō | -ĕrĕ | pēpendi | pensum       | <i>weigh.</i>       |
| 2.     | Tendō | -ĕrĕ | tētendi | tensum(-tum) | <i>stretch.</i>     |
| 3.     | Discō | -ĕrĕ | didici  | —            | <i>learn.</i>       |
| 4.     | Poscō | -ĕrĕ | pōposci | —            | <i>demand.</i>      |
| 5.     | Currō | -ĕrĕ | cŭcurri | cursum       | <i>run.</i>         |
| 6.     | Pungō | -ĕrĕ | pŭpŭgi  | punctum      | <i>prick.</i>       |
| 7.     | Tundō | -ĕrĕ | tŭtŭdi  | tunsum       | <i>thump.</i>       |
| 8.     | Fallō | -ĕrĕ | fēfelli | falsum       | <i>deceive.</i>     |
| 9.     | Parcō | -ĕrĕ | pēperci | parsum       | <i>spare.</i>       |
| 10.    | Pārĭō | -ĕrĕ | pēpēri  | partum       | <i>bring forth.</i> |

(9) 9. Also Perf. parsL

| Present.                    | Inf. | Perfect. | Supine.  |                           |
|-----------------------------|------|----------|----------|---------------------------|
| 11. Cādō                    | -ērē | cēcīdī   | cāsum    | <i>fall.</i>              |
| 12. Cānō                    | -ērē | cēcīnī   | cantum   | <i>sing.</i>              |
| 13. Pangō                   | -ērē | pēpīgī   | pactum   | <i>fasten.</i>            |
| 14. Tangō                   | -ērē | tētīgī   | tactum   | <i>touch.</i>             |
| 15. Caedō                   | -ērē | cēcīdī   | caesum   | <i>cut, beat, kill.</i>   |
| 16. Pellō                   | -ērē | pēpūlī   | pulsum   | <i>drive.</i>             |
| 17. Tollō                   | -ērē | sustūlī  | sublātum | <i>take up.</i>           |
| 18. Compounds of dō :       |      |          |          |                           |
| Abdō                        | -ērē | abdīdī   | abdītum  | <i>hide.</i>              |
| Addō                        | -ērē | addīdī   | addītum  | <i>add.</i>               |
| Condō                       | -ērē | condīdī  | condītum | <i>found, hide.</i>       |
| Crēdō                       | -ērē | crēdīdī  | crēdītum | <i>believe.</i>           |
| Dēdō                        | -ērē | dēdīdī   | dēdītum  | <i>give up.</i>           |
| Ēdō                         | -ērē | ēdīdī    | ēdītum   | <i>give forth, utter.</i> |
| Perdō                       | -ērē | perdīdī  | perdītum | <i>lose.</i>              |
| Prōdō                       | -ērē | prōdīdī  | prōdītum | <i>betray.</i>            |
| Reddō                       | -ērē | reddīdī  | reddītum | <i>restore.</i>           |
| Subdō                       | -ērē | subdīdī  | subdītum | <i>substitute.</i>        |
| Trādō                       | -ērē | trādīdī  | trādītum | <i>deliver.</i>           |
| Vendō                       | -ērē | vendīdī  | vendītum | <i>sell.</i>              |
| 19. Reduplicated from stō : |      |          |          |                           |
| Sistō                       | -ērē | -stītī   | -stātum  | <i>make to stand.</i>     |

-ī with lengthened Stem-vowel, -tum (three -sum).

|      |           |      |       |         |                      |
|------|-----------|------|-------|---------|----------------------|
| (10) | 1. Fācīō  | -ērē | fēcī  | factum  | <i>make.</i>         |
|      | 2. Jācīō  | -ērē | jēcī  | jactum  | <i>throw.</i>        |
|      | 3. Līnquō | -ērē | līquī | -lictum | <i>leave.</i>        |
|      | 4. Vīncō  | -ērē | vīcī  | vīctum  | <i>conquer.</i>      |
|      | 5. Agō    | -ērē | ēgī   | actum   | <i>do.</i>           |
|      | 6. Frangō | -ērē | frēgī | fractum | <i>break.</i>        |
|      | 7. Lēgō   | -ērē | lēgī  | lectum  | <i>choose, read.</i> |
|      | 8. Fūgīō  | -ērē | fūgī  | fūgītum | <i>fly.</i>          |
|      | 9. Ēdō    | -ērē | ēdī   | ēsum    | <i>eat.</i>          |
|      | 10. Fōdīō | -ērē | fōdī  | fossum  | <i>dig.</i>          |
|      | 11. Fundō | -ērē | fūdī  | fūsum   | <i>pour.</i>         |
|      | 12. Cāpīō | -ērē | cēpī  | captum  | <i>take.</i>         |
|      | 13. Rumpō | -ērē | rūpī  | ruptum  | <i>break.</i>        |
|      | 14. Emō   | -ērē | ēmī   | emptum  | <i>buy, take.</i>    |

-ī, -sum.

|      |           |      |       |         |                |
|------|-----------|------|-------|---------|----------------|
| (11) | 1. Findō  | -ērē | fīdī  | fissum  | <i>cleave.</i> |
|      | 2. Scindō | -ērē | scīdī | scissum | <i>tear.</i>   |

-ī, -sum (one -tum).

|      |             |      |              |           |                     |
|------|-------------|------|--------------|-----------|---------------------|
| (12) | 1. -candō   | -ērē | -cendī       | -censum   | <i>set on fire.</i> |
|      | 2. -fendō   | -ērē | -fendī       | -fensum   | <i>strike.</i>      |
|      | 3. Pandō    | -ērē | pandī        | pansum    | <i>spread.</i>      |
|      | 4. Prēhendō | -ērē | prēhendī     | prēhensum | <i>grasp.</i>       |
|      | 5. Scandō   | -ērē | scandī       | scansum   | <i>climb.</i>       |
|      | 6. Vertō    | -ērē | vertī        | versum    | <i>turn.</i>        |
|      | 7. Bibō     | -ērē | bībī         | bībitum   | <i>drink.</i>       |
|      | 8. Vellō    | -ērē | vellī, vulsi | vulsum    | <i>rend.</i>        |

## B. U-verbs: -ī, -tum.

|         | Present. | Infān. | Perfect. | Supine.  |                     |
|---------|----------|--------|----------|----------|---------------------|
| (13) 1. | Acūō     | -ērē   | ācūī     | ācūtum   | <i>sharpen.</i>     |
| 2.      | Argūō    | -ērē   | argūī    | argūtum  | <i>prove.</i>       |
| 3.      | Exūō     | -ērē   | exūī     | exūtum   | <i>put off.</i>     |
| 4.      | Imbūō    | -ērē   | imbūī    | imbūtum  | <i>tinge.</i>       |
| 5.      | Indūō    | -ērē   | indūī    | indūtum  | <i>put on.</i>      |
| 6.      | Lūō      | -ērē   | lūī      | lūtum    | <i>wash, atone.</i> |
| 7.      | Mētūō    | -ērē   | mētūī    | —        | <i>fear.</i>        |
| 8.      | Mīnūō    | -ērē   | mīnūī    | mīnūtum  | <i>lessen.</i>      |
| 9.      | Nūō      | -ērē   | nūī      | —        | <i>nod.</i>         |
| 10.     | Rūō      | -ērē   | rūī      | rūtum    | <i>rush, fall.</i>  |
| 11.     | Stātūō   | -ērē   | stātūī   | stātūtum | <i>set up.</i>      |
| 12.     | Trībūō   | -ērē   | trībūī   | trībūtum | <i>assign.</i>      |
| 13.     | Solvō    | -ērē   | solvī    | sōlūtum  | <i>loosen.</i>      |
| 14.     | Volvō    | -ērē   | volvī    | vōlūtum  | <i>roll.</i>        |

## IV. FOURTH CONJUGATION (Character I: Audī- rē).

|              |       |      |        |          |
|--------------|-------|------|--------|----------|
| Usual Form : | -īō   | -īrē | -īvī   | -ītum    |
|              | Audīō | -īrē | audīvī | audītum. |

## Exceptions.

-ūī or īvī, -tum.

|        |         |      |          |           |               |
|--------|---------|------|----------|-----------|---------------|
| (1) 1. | Āpērīō  | -īrē | āpērūī   | āpertum   | <i>open.</i>  |
| 2.     | Ōpērīō  | -īrē | ōpērūī   | ōpertum   | <i>cover.</i> |
| 3.     | Sālīō   | -īrē | sālūī    | (-sultum) | <i>leap.</i>  |
| 4.     | Sēpēlīō | -īrē | sēpēlīvī | sēpultum  | <i>bury.</i>  |

-sī, -tum (one -sum).

|        |         |      |       |         |                    |
|--------|---------|------|-------|---------|--------------------|
| (2) 1. | Fulcīō  | -īrē | fulsī | fultum  | <i>prop.</i>       |
| 2.     | Sanctīō | -īrē | sanxī | sanctum | <i>consecrate.</i> |
| 3.     | Vincīō  | -īrē | vinxī | vinctum | <i>bind.</i>       |
| 4.     | Haurīō  | -īrē | hausī | haustum | <i>drain.</i>      |
| 5.     | Sentīō  | -īrē | sensī | sensum  | <i>feel.</i>       |

-ī, -tum.

|        |          |      |         |           |                  |
|--------|----------|------|---------|-----------|------------------|
| (3) 1. | Compērīō | -īrē | compērī | compertum | <i>find.</i>     |
| 2.     | Rēpērīō  | -īrē | reppērī | rēpertum  | <i>discover.</i> |
| 3.     | Vēnīō    | -īrē | vēnī    | ventum    | <i>come.</i>     |

## V. DEPONENT VERBS.

(1) FIRST CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ātūs).

(2) SECOND CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

## Exceptions.

| Present.    | Infín. | Part. Perf.            |                      |
|-------------|--------|------------------------|----------------------|
| 1. Fātēōr   | -ēri   | fassūs                 | <i>confess.</i>      |
| 2. Misēreōr | -ēri   | miseritūs or misēritūs | <i>have pity on.</i> |
| 3. Rēōr     | -ēri   | rātūs                  | <i>think.</i>        |

(3) THIRD CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -tūs or -sūs).

|     | Present.        | Infín. | Part. Perf.    |                    |
|-----|-----------------|--------|----------------|--------------------|
| (a) | 1. Fungōr       | -ī     | functūs        | <i>perform.</i>    |
|     | 2. Amplectōr    | -ī     | amplexūs       | <i>embrace.</i>    |
|     | 3. Nītōr        | -ī     | nīsūs or nixūs | <i>strive.</i>     |
|     | 4. Pātior       | -i     | passūs         | <i>suffer.</i>     |
|     | 5. Ūtōr         | -i     | ūsūs           | <i>use.</i>        |
|     | 6. Grādīōr      | -ī     | gressūs        | <i>step.</i>       |
|     | 7. Labōr        | -i     | lapsūs         | <i>glide.</i>      |
|     | 8. Mōriōr       | -i     | mortūūs        | <i>die.</i>        |
|     | 9. Quērōr       | -i     | questūs        | <i>complain.</i>   |
|     | 10. Frūōr       | -ī     | frūitūs        | <i>enjoy.</i>      |
|     | 11. Lōquōr      | -i     | locūtūs        | <i>speak.</i>      |
|     | 12. Sēquōr      | -i     | sēcūtūs        | <i>follow.</i>     |
| (b) | 1. Āpiscōr      | -ī     | aptūs          | <i>obtain.</i>     |
|     | 2. Commīniscōr  | -ī     | commentūs      | <i>devise.</i>     |
|     | 3. Expergiscōr  | -ī     | experrectūs    | <i>wake up.</i>    |
|     | 4. Fātiscōr     | -ī     | fessūs         | <i>grow weary.</i> |
|     | 5. Irascōr      | -ī     | irātūs         | <i>be angry.</i>   |
|     | 6. Nanciscōr    | -ī     | nactūs         | <i>obtain.</i>     |
|     | 7. Nascōr       | -i     | nātūs          | <i>be born.</i>    |
|     | 8. Obliviscōr   | -ī     | oblītūs        | <i>forget.</i>     |
|     | 9. Pāciscōr     | -ī     | pactūs         | <i>bargain.</i>    |
|     | 10. Prōficiscōr | -ī     | prōfectūs      | <i>set out.</i>    |
|     | 11. Ulciscōr    | -i     | ultūs          | <i>avenge.</i>     |

(4) FOURTH CONJUGATION (Part. Perf. -ītūs).

## Exceptions.

|              |      |          |                  |
|--------------|------|----------|------------------|
| 1. Assentiōr | -īri | assensūs | <i>agree to.</i> |
| 2. Expēriōr  | -īri | expertūs | <i>try.</i>      |
| 3. Mētiōr    | -īri | mensūs   | <i>measure.</i>  |
| 4. Oppēriōr  | -īri | oppertūs | <i>wait for.</i> |
| 5. Ordīōr    | -īri | orsūs    | <i>begin.</i>    |
| 6. Ōriōr     | -īri | ortūs    | <i>rise.</i>     |

*Note.* Inceptive Verbs form the Perfect and Supine as their Primitives : ingēmiscō (from gēmō), ingēmūi, ingēmītum. Many Verbs are without Perfect ; more still without Supine.

## PARTICLES.

## A. ADVERBS. (See p. 127.)

§ 82. I. ADVERBS OF PLACE: The Interrogatives are:

- |                                  |                                         |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| (1) Ūbī, <i>where?</i>           | (4) Undě, <i>whence?</i>                |
| (2) Quō, <i>whither?</i>         | (5) Quā, <i>which way?</i>              |
| (3) Quorsum, <i>whitherward?</i> | (6) Quātēnūs, quōusquē, <i>how far?</i> |

II. ADVERBS OF TIME: The Interrogatives are:

- |                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (1) Quandō, ūbī, <i>when?</i> | (2) Quamdū, <i>how long?</i> |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|

III. ADVERBS OF NUMBER: Interrogative Quōtīēns, *how often?*IV. ADVERBS OF MANNER: quomodo, *how*, &c.; CAUSE, cur, quare, *why*, &c.Many are derived from Adjectives, and end in ē, tēr; pulchrē *finely*; misērē, *wretchedly*; fortītēr, *bravely*; sūpīentēr, *wisely*.Note. Adverbs of Negation are nōn, haud, *not*. See p. 141.

## B. PREPOSITIONS. (See p. 142.)

§ 83. The following Prepositions take the Accusative Case.

|                                         |                                             |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Ad, <i>to, at, &amp;c.</i>              | Juxtā, <i>adjoining to, beside.</i>         |
| Adversūs } <i>toward, against.</i>      | Ob, <i>over against, by reason of.</i>      |
| Adversum }                              | Pēnēs, <i>in the power of.</i>              |
| Antē, <i>before.</i>                    | Pēr, <i>through.</i>                        |
| Apūd, <i>at, in, among.</i>             | Pōnē, <i>behind.</i>                        |
| Circum, <i>around.</i>                  | Post, <i>after, behind.</i>                 |
| Circā, circūtēr, <i>about.</i>          | Praetēr, <i>beside.</i>                     |
| Cis, citrā, <i>on the near side of.</i> | Prōpē, <i>near, prōpiūs, proximā.</i>       |
| Contrā, <i>against, over against.</i>   | Proptēr, <i>nigh, on account of.</i>        |
| Ergā, <i>towards.</i>                   | Sēcundum, <i>next, along, according to.</i> |
| Extrā, <i>outside of, out of.</i>       | Sūprā, <i>above.</i>                        |
| Infrā, <i>below.</i>                    | Trans, <i>across.</i>                       |
| Intēr, <i>between, among, amidst.</i>   | Ultrā, <i>beyond.</i>                       |
| Intrā, <i>within.</i>                   | Versūs, Versum, <i>towards.</i>             |

The following take the Ablative Case.

|                                         |                                               |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Ā, āb, abs, <i>by, from.</i>            | Ex, ē, <i>out of, from.</i>                   |
| Absquē (rare), <i>without.</i>          | Pālam, <i>in sight of.</i>                    |
| Clam, <i>without the knowledge of.*</i> | Prae, <i>before, owing to, compared with.</i> |
| Cōram, <i>in the presence of.</i>       | Prō, <i>before, for, instead of.</i>          |
| Cum, <i>with.</i>                       | Sīnē, <i>without.</i>                         |
| Dē, <i>down from, from, concerning.</i> | Tēnūs, <i>reaching to, as far as.</i>         |

Note. Cum is attached to the Personal, Reflexive, and Relative Pronouns; mēcum, nōbiscum, tēcum, vōbiscum, sēcum, quōcum, or quicum, quibuscum.

\* Clam also takes Accusative.

The following take the Accusative or the Ablative.

*Īn, into, against* (Acc.), *in, upon, among* (Abl.).      *Sŭpěr, over, upon.*  
*Sŭb, up to, under* (Acc.), *under* (Abl.).      *Subtěr, under.*

*Īn* and *sŭb* with Accusative imply motion; with Ablative, rest.

II. The Prepositions and Particles compounded with Verbs are :—

A. Prepositions:—*ā* (āb, abs), *ād*, *antě*, *circum*, *con* (for *cum*), *dě*, *ex* (*ē*), *in*, *intěr*, *ōb*, *pěr*, *post*, *prae*, *praetěr*, *prō*, *sŭb*, *subtěr*, *sŭper*, *trans*.

B. Inseparable Particles:—*ambī-* (amb-), *around, about*; *dis-*, *in different parts or ways*; *rě-*, *back, again*; *sē-*, *apart*.

*Note 1.* Prepositions in composition suffer various changes; such as, *combībō* for *conbibō*, *offendō* for *offendō*, *trādūcō* for *transdūcō*.

*Note 2.* Many Verbs in Composition suffer vowel-change:

(1) *a* into *e*, *spargō*, *dispergō*; (2) *a* into *u*, *quātlō*, *conclūtō*; (3) *u* into *i*, *āgō*, *exigō*; (4) *e* into *i*, *rēgō*, *dirīgō*; (5) *ae* into *i*, *quærō*, *acquirō*.

Add to these, *claudō*, *exclūdō*, &c.; *plaudō*, *supplūdō*, &c.; and *audīō*, *ōboedīō*.  
 See p. 124, II.

## C. CONJUNCTIONS. (See p. 128.)

### § 84. CONJUNCTIONS are—

1. Coordinative, or those which join words and sentences but do not affect Mood: *ēt*, *quě*, *ac*, *atquě* (*and*), *aut*, *věl*, *vě* (*either, or*), *sěd*, *autem* (*but*), *nam*, *ēnim* (*for*), &c.
2. Subordinative, or those which join sentences, influencing Mood: *ūt* (*that*), *ně* (*lest*), *quōd*, *quīā* (*because*), *quum* (*when, since*), *sī* (*if*), *nisi*, *nī* (*unless*), &c., &c.

### § 85. The Interrogative Particles cannot be rendered in English without the Verbs, to which they impart an Interrogative force:—

They are, the enclitic *-ně*, *ān*, *num*, *ŭtrum* (*whether*): the compounds of the last three with *-ně*; namely, *anně*, *numně*, *ŭtrumně*: and the compounds of *ān*, *-ně*, with the negative; namely, *annōn*, *nonně*.

## D. INTERJECTIONS.

§ 86. An Interjection is an exclamatory word, used either to draw attention, or to express feeling of some kind. The most usual Interjections are—

*O, O! oh!*

*A, alas!*

*Ēheu,*

*Heu, ei, } alas!*

*Prō, forbid it!*

*Vae, woe!*

*Ēn,*

*Eccě, } lo! behold!*

*Note.* Of these, *ō*, *ā*, *ēheu*, *heu*, *prō*, may be used with a Vocative Case: the same, as well as *ēn*, *eccě*, with a Nominative or Accusative: *ei*, *vae*, with a Dative.



## SYNTAX.

### PREFATORY EXCURSION.

§ 87. *A. A Simple Sentence is the expression of a single thought :*

Psittacus loquitur,  
*The parrot speaks.*

Psittacus non loquitur,  
*The parrot does not speak.*

*B. That of which something is said, is called the Subject :*

Psittacus, *the parrot.*

*a. The Subject must be a Substantive, or a Noun-term which can take its place, as an Adjective, Pronoun, Infinitive, or Clause.*

*C. The Finite Verb, which declares what is said of the Subject, and makes a complete sense, is called the Predicate: Loquitur, speaks.*

*a. Since Pronoun Subjects are implied in the Endings (§ 44 Obs.), a single Verb may be a sentence :*

Veni,  
*I came,*

Vidi,  
*I saw,*

Vici,  
*I conquered.*

*D. Any Finite part of the Verb sum (essē), to be, is usually a Cōpulā, or Link; and a word linked by it to the Subject, and completing the sense, is called a Complement; both together forming the Predicate:*

| Subject.   | Predicate. |                 |
|------------|------------|-----------------|
|            | Copula.    | Complement.     |
| Hōmō       | est        | mortalis,       |
| <i>Man</i> | <i>is</i>  | <i>mortal.</i>  |
| Hōmīnēs    | sunt       | ānimālī,        |
| <i>Men</i> | <i>are</i> | <i>animals.</i> |

*Note.* The Copula is often omitted: Rārī bōnī, (*good men are few*).

*a. Other Verbs besides sum link a Subject and Complement, and are called Copulative (Link) Verbs: fiō, become; nascōr, am born; vidēōr, seem; dicōr, am said; vocōr, am called; putōr, am thought, &c.*

*E. An Adjective agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Attribution, and may be (1) Epithet; (2) Attributive Complement.*

(1) Doctī vīrī,  
*Learned men.*

(2) Hī vīrī sunt doctī,  
*These men are learned.*

*F. A Substantive agreeing with any Noun-term is said to be in Apposition, and may be (1) Epithetic; (2) Appositive Complement.*

(1) Rex Croesūs,  
*King Croesus.*

(2) Croesūs fuit rex,  
*Croesus was king.*

## SYNTAXIS MEMORIALIS PRIMA.

## DE CONGRUENTIA.

## REGULAE QUATTUOR GENERALES.

§ 88. I. Verbum Finitum cum Nominativō Subjecti congruit  
nūmērō et persōnā:

Māgister dōcēt.  
Lībri lēguntūr.

Tū dōcēs: nōs discimūs.  
Discere est utilē.

§ 89. II. Adjectivum gēnērē, nūmērō, et cāsū congruit cum  
eō cui attribuitur:

Vīr bōnūs illē bōnam hanc uxōrem hābēt.  
Hīrundō pullis suis orbātā quēritūr.  
Cārī sunt pārentēs; cārā est patrīā.  
Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.

§ 90. III. Substantivum cāsū congruit cum eō cui appō-  
nitur:

Nōs pūērī patrē Lollīum imitābimūr.  
Effodiuntūr opēs, irritāmentā mālōrum.  
Spēs est expectātiō bōnī.  
Syllābā longā brevī subjectā vōcātūr Iambus.

§ 91. IV. Relativum cum Antecedentē congruit gēnērē,  
nūmērō, et persōnā; sed cāsū spectat suam clausulam:

Dēum vērērāmūr quī nōs creāvit.  
Amicūs est, quem amāmus, ā quō amāmūr.  
Amō tē, mātēr, quae mē amās.

## DE SUBJECTO COMPOSITO.

§ 92. Cum Subjectō Compōsitō plūrālī congruunt:  
Vēnēnō absumptī sunt Hannibāl et Philōpoemēn.

1. In diversitatē persōnārum Verbā congruunt cum Priōrē  
Persōnā:

Sī tū et Tullīā vālētis, ego et Cicerō vālemūs.

2. În diversitate genărum Adjectivă congruunt cum Masculō  
pōtiūs quam cum Fēmininō :

Pătēr mīhī ēt mătēr *mortūi* sunt.

a. Rēbūs inānimīs attribūitūr saepē genūs Neutrum :  
Divitiae, dēcūs, glōriā în ocūlis *sitā* sunt.

## DE CASIBUS.

DE CASIBUS SUBJECTI ET COMPLEMENTI. § 87.

§ 93. (1) Finitī Verbī Subjectum Nōminativūs est :

*Annī* fūgiunt.

(2) Infinitivī Subjectum în Accūsativō pōnitūr :

Constāt *annōs* fūgērē. | Scīmūs *annōs* fūgērē.

§ 94. Verbă Cōpūlativă, sive Finită sive Infinitivă, Complē-  
mentum plērumquē cum Subjectō congruens hābent :

*Vitā* est *somnium*.

*Vitā* dicītūr essē *somnium*.

*Nēmō* nascitūr *sāpiens*.

*Nēmō* pōtest nascī *sāpiens*.

Aiunt *vitam* essē *somnium*.

Constāt *nēmīnem* nascī *sāpiētem*.

a. Accūsativī cum Infinitivō constructiō vōcātūr Eñun-  
tiatiō Obliquă.

## DE ACCUSATIVO.

§ 95. Accūsativūs est Cāsūs Prōpiōris Objectī. Necnōn  
līmītandi vim hābēt.

## I. ACCUSATIVUS OBJECTI.

§ 96. Verbă Transītivă rēgunt Accūsativum Objectī :

Mătēr ālit *pullōs*.

| In prīmīs vērērārē *Dēum*.

§ 97. Intransītivă cāpiunt Accūsativum vī cognātă :

Dūram servīt *servitūtem*.

Claudīūs *ā'eam* lūsīt,

§ 98. Verbă quaedam, *rōgandī* praesertim ēt *dōcendī*, bīnōs admittunt Accūsātīvōs, altērum Rēi, altērum Persōnae :

Nunquam *dīvītīās dēōs rōgāvī*.  
Quīd nunc *tē littērās dōcēam*?

§ 99. Verbă quaedam *fāciendī*, *vōcandī*, *pūtandī*, sīmīliā, bīnōs hābent Accūsātīvōs, altērum Objectī, altērum obliqui Complēmentī :

*Tē fācīmus*, Fortūnā, *dēam*.  
*Rōmūlūs urbem sūam Rōmam vōcāvīt*.

## II. ACCUSATIVUS LIMITATIONIS.

§ 100. Accūsātīvūs Respectūs adjungītūr Verbīs ēt Adjectivīs, praesertim āpūd pōētās :

Trēmīt *artūs*. | Nūdae sunt *lācertōs*.

§ 101. Lōcūs, *Quō* itūr, īn Accūsātīvō pōnītūr, idquē sīnē Praepōsītīōnē, sī vėl oppīdī nōmēn est, vėl *dōmūs, rūs* :

Rēgūlūs *Carthāgīnem* rēdīt.  
Vōs itē *dōmum* : ēgō *rūs* ībō.

§ 102. (1) Dūrātīō Tempōris īn Accūsātīvō pōnītūr :

Pēriclēs *quādrāgīntā annōs* praefūīt *Athēnīs*.

(2) Mensūrā Spātīī īn Accūsātīvō pōnītūr :

Ērant mūrī Bābylōnīs *dūcēnōs pēdēs* altī.

§ 103. Accūsātīvum rēgunt multae Praepōsītīōnēs : § 83.

*Antē*, āpūd, *ād*, *adversūs*,  
*Circum*, *circā*, *cītrā*, *cīs*,  
*Contrā*, *intēr*, *ergā*, *extrā*,  
*Infrā*, *intrā*, *juxtā*, *ob*,  
*Pēnēs*, *pōnē*, *post*, ēt *praetēr*,

*Prōpē*, *proptēr*, *pēr*, *sēcundum*,  
*Sūprā*, *versūs*, *ultrā*, *trans* ;  
*Hīs sūpēr*, *subtēr*, *addītō*,  
*Et tñ*, *sūb*, sī fīt *mōtīō*.

## DE DATIVO.

§ 104. Dātīvūs est Cāsūs Rēcīpīentīs seu Rēmōtīōris Objectī.

§ 105. I. Trājectīvā, quae sensum trājīcīunt ād Rēmōtīūs Objectum, sunt multā Adjectīvā, Adverbīā, ēt Verbā, rārīūs Substantīvā, quībūs indicātūr

*Prōpīnquītās* ēt *Dēmōstrātīō*,  
*Grātīficātīō*, *Dōmīnātīō*,  
Et hīs contrāriā quaequē *nōtīō*.

## § 106. Trajectivă căpiunt Dativum, quum significantur

## (1) Pröpinquitās ē contrariā :

Est finitimus orator pöetä.  
 Nil fuit unquam sic impar sibi.  
 Congruenter naturae vivendum est.  
 Praesentia confert praeteritis.  
 Nec tamen ignorat quid distet aerä lupinis.

## (2) Démonstratiō ē contrariā :

Dic mihi, Dämoetä, cūjum pécus?  
 Anguis Sullae apparuit immolanti.  
 Haud cuiquam in dubio erat bellum imminere.

## (3) Grätificatiō ē contrariā :

Patriae sit idoneus, utilis agris.  
 Turba gravis paci placidaeque inimica quieti.  
 Quod alii donat sibi detrahit.  
 Lucem reddere tuae, dux bone, patriae.  
 Nobis spondet fortunä salutem.  
 Ne libeat tibi quod nemini licet.  
 Parce pio generi.  
 Succensere nefas patriae.  
 Resistendum est appetitibus.

## (4) Döminatiō ē contrariā :

Sapiens, sibi qui imperiosus.  
 Omnibus supplex est.  
 Imperat aut servit collecta pecunia cuique.  
 Mundus Deo parat, et huic oboediunt maria terraeque.

a. Inter Trajectivă sunt multă Verbă compösită cum Particulis, quales sunt

Bene, male, satis, re,  
 Ad, ante, contra, in, inter, de,  
 Ob, sub, super, post, et prae:

Ceteris satisfactio semper, mihi numquam.  
 Sicilia quondam Italiae adhaesit.  
 Gigantes bellum deis intulerunt.  
 Anatum ovis gallinis suppönimus.

§ 107. II. Dativus ubivis adjungi potest cum notione quadam Commödi vel Incommödi :

Esto, ut nunc multi, dives tibi, pauper amicis.  
 Numä virginēs Vestae legit.  
 Venus nupsit Vulcanö.  
 Philosophiae semper vado.

a. Huc refert Dativum Pronominis, qui vocatur ethicus:

Quid mihi Celsus agit?

b. *Sum cum compōsītis, praetēr possum, cāpīt Dātīvum :*

*Sum tibi Mercūrius.*  
*Vir mihi semper ābest.*

c. *Est, sunt, cum Dātīvō, habēre saepe significant :*

*Est homīni cum Dēo similitūdō.*  
*Sunt nobis mitiā pōma.*

d. *Adjungitūr idem Dātīvus Participiis ēt Participiālibus Passivae Vocis, praesertim Gērundivis :*

*Magnus civis obit et formidātus Ōthōni.*  
*Multis illē bonis flēbilis occidit.*  
*Lēgendae sunt pueris Aesōpi fabulae.*

§ 108. III. *Dātīvus Prōpōsiti prō Complēmentō pōnitūr, adjunctō saepe Dātīvō Rēcipientis :*

*Nimīa fiduciā cālānitātē solēt essē.*  
*Exitio est avidum mārē nautis.*

§ 109. IV. *Dātīvus Complēmenti pēr Attractiōnem pōnitūr, praesertim in nōminandi formulis :*

*Licūt Thēmistōcli essē otiosō.*  
*Huic egō diēi nōmē Trīnummō faciām.*

## DE ABLATIVO.

§ 110. *Ablātīvus est Cāsus rerum quae circumstant ēt adverbiali mōrē limitant actiōnem. Dēfinit etiā Tempūs ēt Lōcum.*§ 111. I. *Ablātīvus Causae :*

*Ōderunt peccārē boni virtūtis amore.*  
*Coepit immānibūs effērā Didō.*

§ 112. II. *Ablātīvus Instrūmenti :*

*Hi jactis, illi certant dēfendērē saris.*

§ 113. III. *Ablātīvus Mōdi :*

*Injuriā fit duobūs mōdis, aut vī aut fraudē.*

§ 114. IV. *Ablātīvus Conditiōnis :*

*Pacē tuā cum Thaidē collōquār.*  
*Homō meū sententiā prūdētissimū est.*

## § 115. V. Ablativūs Quālītātīs, cum Epithētō :

*Quā faciē fūit, cui dēdistī symbōlum ?*  
*Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.*

## § 116. VI. Ablativūs Rēspectūs :

*Angōr ānimō.*  
*Ennīūs ingēniō maximūs, artē rūdis.*

## § 117. VII. Ablativūs Prētīi :

*Ēgō spēm prētīō nōn ēmō.*  
*Quōd nōn ōpūs est, assē cārum est.*

## § 118. VIII. Ablativūs Mensūrae :

*Longum sesquipedē, lātum pedē est.*  
*Sōl multis partibūs mājor est quam lūnā.*  
*Tantō pessimūs omnium pōētā,*  
*Quantō tu optimūs omnium patrōnūs.*

## § 119. IX. Ablativūs Mātēriae :

*Cībūs ēōrum lactē, cāsēō, carnē constāt.*

a. Ablativum rēgunt : (1) Verbā *fungōr, frūōr, ūtōr, vescōr, pōtītōr, dignōr*; (2) Adjectivā *dignūs, indignūs, contentūs, frētūs, praeditūs*; (3) Substantivā *ōpūs, ūsūs* :

- (1) *Fungar vicē cōtis.*  
*Hannibāl, cum victōriā possēt ūtī, frūī mālūt.*  
*Rex impiūs aurō vī pōtītur.* § 133.
- (2) *Dignum laudē vīrum Mūsā vētat mōrī.*
- (3) *Ūbī rēs adsunt, quid ōpūs est verbīs?*  
*Ūsūs est filiō vīgintī mīnīs.*

b. Ex Adjectivīs ēt Verbīs *ābundandī* vėl *ēgendī, dītandī* vėl *privandī*, plērāquē Ablativum cāpiunt, multā ētiam Gēnī-tivum :

*Amōr ēt mellē ēt fellē est fēcundissimūs.*  
*Nunquam ānimūs mōtū vācūūs est.*  
*Vis consili expers mōlē rūit sūā.*  
*Mancipūs locūplēs ēgēt aeris Cappadōcum rex.*  
*Vācārē culpā maximum est sōlācium.*

§ 120. X. Ablativūs Tempōris respondēt, sī rōgātūr *Quandō ?*  
*Intrā quantum tempūs ? Quantō tempōrē antē vėl post ?*

*Hīēmē omniā bellā conquiescunt.*  
*Quidquid est biduō sciēmūs.*  
*Hōmērūs annis multis fūit antē Rōmūlum.*

§ 121. XI. A. Ablativūs Lōcī pōnītūr sinē Praepōsitiōne, cum rōgātūr, *Quā vīā ?*

*Ibam fortē Vīā Sācrā.*

**B. Ablativus saepe caret Praepositione, cum rogatur *Ūbi?* maxime, si oppidi nomen est, vel si stat cum Epitheto:**

Philippus *Nēapoli* est, Lentulus *Pulchris*.  
Tabernae *tota urbe* clauduntur.

**a. Oppidorum nomina singularia ex Declinatione prima et secunda locum stationis definiunt per casus in *ae, i*:**

Quid *Romae* faciam? | Is habitat *Mileti*.

**b. Similia sunt *humī, domi, belli, militiae, ruri*:**

Caesaris virtus *domi militiaeque* cognita est.

**C. Ablativus oppidi Praepositione caret, cum rogatur *Unde?***

Demaratus fugit *Corintho*.

**a. Ita *domo, rure*. (De Accusativo Locī *Quo* itur, v. § 101.)**

§ 122. XII. Ablativum regunt variae Praepositiones:

|                                    |                                        |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>A, ab, absque, coram, de,</i>   | His <i>super, subter, sub</i> addemus, |
| <i>Palam, clam, cum, ex, et e,</i> |                                        |
| <i>Sine, tenus, pro, et prae:</i>  |                                        |
|                                    | Et <i>in</i> , de statu si dicemus.    |

**a. Praepositiones etiam compositae regunt Ablativum, praesertim *ab, de, ex*:**

Quintius *dictatura* se abdicavit.  
Detrudunt naves *scopulo*.

**b. Ablativus Agentis expetit Praepositionem *a, ab*:**

Laudatur *ab his*, culpatur *ab illis*.

§ 123. XIII. Ablativus Separationis et Originis etiam sine Praepositione Verbis et Participiis adjungitur:

Cedes coemptis *salutibus* et *domo*.  
Pelops natus, *Tantalus* prognatus est.

§ 124. XIV. Ablativus Rei Comparatae:

(1) *Pro quam* cum Nominativo:

Nihil est amabilius *virtute*.  
Vilius argentum est *aurum*, *virtutibus* aurum.

(2) *Pro quam* cum Accusativo:

Puto mortem *dedecore* levio rem.  
Neminem *Lycurgo* utilio rem Spartae genuit.

§ 125. XV. Substantivum cum Participio coalescit in Ablativo, qui vocatur Absolutus:

*Regibus exactis* consules creati sunt.



a. Prō Participiō saepē supplētūr altērum Substantivum  
vél Adjectivum :

Nīl despērandum Teucrō *dūce* et *auspicē* Teucrō.  
Nātus est Augustus *consulibūs* Cicerōnē et Antōniō.  
Jamquē cinis, *vivis* frātrībūs, Hector erat.  
Quid dicam, *hāc* jūventūtē?

## DE GENITIVO.

§ 126. Gēnitīvūs, Cāsūs Possidentis, nōmīnā plērumquē  
dēfīnit subjectivē vél objectivē.

## A. GENITIVUS SUBJECTIVUS.

§ 127. I. Gēnitīvūs Auctōris et Possessōris.

*Polyclētī* signā plānē perfectā sunt.  
*Singulōrum* opēs sunt divitiāe civitatīs.  
Omniā, quae *mūlieris* fūerunt, *viri* fiunt.  
Eā stātūā dicebātūr *Myrōnis*.

a. Interdum Gēnitīvūs pendēt ā suppressā vōcē :

*Hectoris* Andrōmachē (supplē *uxor*).  
Ventum ērat ad *Vestae* (supplē *templum*).

b. Gēnitīvūs itā stāt, ūt supplērī possit

*indolēs*, *indiciūm*,  
*mūnūs* aut *officiūm* :

Cūjusvis *hōminis* est errārē.  
Est *adōlescentis* mājores nātū vērērī.  
Tempōri cedērē hābēt ūr *sāpientis*.

§ 128. II. Gēnitīvūs Quālitātis, cum Ēpithētō :

*Ingēnūi* voltūs pūer *ingēnūi*quē *pūdoris*.  
Claudiūs ērat *somni brevissimū*.

a. Nōtentūr ellipticī Gēnitivī, *parvī*, *mīnoris*, *mīnimī*, *magnī*,  
*plūris*, *plūrimī*, *tantī*, *quantī*, *maximī*, quībūs supplē *prētū* :

Vōluptātem virtūs *mīnimī* faciūt.  
Ēmīt hortōs *tantī quantī* Pŷthiūs vōlūt.

§ 129. III. *Intērest*, *rēfert*, Gēnitivum admittunt :

*Intērest* omnium rectē faciērē.  
*Rēfert* *compositiōnis* quae quībūs antēpōnās.

a. Ēādēm prō Gēnitivis Prōnōmīnum ūsurpant hōs cāsūs,  
*mēā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, cum *rē* congrūentēs :

Ēt *tūā* et *mēā* intērest tē vālērē,  
Quid *nostrā* id rēfert?

§ 130. IV. A. Gēnītīvūs Rēi Distribūtae Partitīvīs adjungitūr, quae, quantum licet, Gēnītīvi sūmunt gēnūs :

Ēlēphantō *beluārum* est nullā prūdentiōr.  
 Hōmīni ūnī *ānimantium* luctūs est dātūs.  
 Sullā centum viginti *sūōrum* āmisīt.  
 Mājor *Nērōnum* mox grāvē proelium commisit.  
*Gallōrum* fortissimī sunt Belgae.  
 Nēmō *mortālium* omnibūs hōris sāpit.  
*Piscium* fēmīnae mājorēs sunt quam mārēs.  
 Sēquimur tē, sanctē *dēōrum*.  
 Hōc ād tē mīnimē *omnium* pertīnēt.

a. *Nostrūm, vestrūm*, Partitīvā sēquuntūr :

Tē vēnirē ūterquē *nostrūm* cūpīt.

§ 131. B. Gēnītīvūs Rēi Dēmensae Vōcābulā Quantitātis ēt Neutrā Adjectīvā cōmītātūr :

Sātīs *ēloquentiae, sapientiae* pārū est.  
 Aliquid pristīnī *rōbōris* conservāt.  
 Quantum *nummōrum*, tantum *fīdēi* est.

### B. GENITIVUS OBJECTIVUS.

§ 132. I. Gēnītīvūs objectivē jungitūr Substantīvis, Adjectīvis, aut Particīpiis, quībūs transitīvā quaedam vis est, praesertīm sī significant

*Pēritāam, cūram, dēsīdērium,*  
 Vēl quidquid ērīt his contrārium :

Insītūs est mentī *cognitōnis* āmor.  
 Difficilis est cūrā *rērum āliēnārum*.  
 Tempūs edax *rērum* est.  
 Corpūs patiēns *inēdīae* fūit.  
 Consciā mens *rectī* est.  
 Impēritūs *mōrum* fūit.  
 Avidā est *pēriculī* virtūs.  
 Animūs fūit *āliēnī* appētens, *sūi* prōfūsūs.

a. *Mēi, tūi, sūi, nostrī, vestrī*, objectivē pōnuntūr; subjectivē, *mēus, tūus, sūus, nostrēr, vestēr* :

Niciās *tūā sūi* mēmōriā dēlectātūr.

(a) Gēnītīvūs Subjectīvūs in Possessivō lātens Gēnītivum sibi congruentem rēcīpīt :

Respublicā *mēā unius* ōpērā salvā ērāt.  
 Avēs fētūs ādultōs *sūae ipsōrum* fidūciae permittunt.

§ 133. II. Gēnītvūs adjungītūr Verbīs ēt Adjectīvīs, quībūs significātūr

*Pōtentīā ēt impōtentīā,      Damnātīō, absōlūtō,*  
*Crimīnātīō, innōcentīā,      Mēmōriā ēt obliuīō:*

- (1) *Rōmānī signōrum pōtītī sūt. § 119 a.*  
*Irā est impōtens sūi.*
- (2) *Frāternī est sanguīnis insons.*  
*Rēūs est injūriārum.*
- (3) *Pētiliūs furtī absōlūtūs est.*  
*Condemnāmus hāruspicēs stultītiāe.*
- (4) *Rēs adversae admōnent nōs rēligiōnum.*  
*Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficiū odērunt.*

*a. Mēmīnī, rēmīniscōr, rēcōrdōr, obliuiscōr, Gēnītvum vėl Accūsātivum admittunt:*

*Jūbet mortis tē mēmīnissē Dēus.*  
*Dulcēs mōriens rēmīniscitūr Argos.*

§ 134. III. *Pīgēt, pūdēt, paenītēt, taedēt atquē mīsērēt, Impersōnālīā, Gēnītvum cāpiunt cum Accūsātīvō:*

*Mīsērēt tē āliōrum: tūi nēc mīsērēt nēc pūdēt.*  
*Ēōs partim scēlērū, partim īneptiārū paenītēt.*

§ 135. IV. *Mīsērēōr, mīsērescō Gēnītvum cāpiunt; mīsērōr, commīsērōr, Accūsātivum:*

*Arcādī, quaeō, mīsērescītē rēgis.*  
*Sortem mīsērātūr īnīquam.*

§ 136. V. Gēnītvūs ā pōētīs libērē ūsurpātūr. Sēd *aegēr ānīmī, ānīmī pendēō, sīmīliū, ētīam īn sōlūtā ōrātiōnē compārent.*

#### DE CASIBUS EXTRA SENTENTIAM.

§ 137. Vōcātīvūs extrā sententiā stāt vėl sīnē Interjectiōnē vėl cum Interjectiōnē: § 86.

*Ōrō tā, fili (vėl O fili).*

§ 138. Nōmīnātīvūs ēt Accūsātīvūs īn exclāmāndō ūsurpātūr vėl sīnē Interjectiōnē vėl cum Interjectiōnē:

- |                       |  |                          |
|-----------------------|--|--------------------------|
| (1) <i>Infandum!</i>  |  | <i>Eccē nōvā turbā!</i>  |
| (2) <i>Mē māsērū!</i> |  | <i>Ēn quattuōr ārās!</i> |

§ 139. Itā Dātīvūs pōnītūr cum *ei! vae!:*

*Ei mīsērō mīhī!      |      Vae victīs!*

## DE VERBO INFINITO.

§ 140. I. Infinitivum stăt—

1. Substantivē, prō Nōminativō vėl Accūsativō :

(1) *Invidēre* nōn cādīt in sāpientem.

Dulce et dēcōrum est prō patriā mōrī.

(2) *Mōrī* nēmō sāpiens misērum dixērīt.

2. Praedicativē, in narrandō, prō Verbō Finitō :

Multi *sequi*, *fugere*, *occidi*, *capi*.

3. Obliquē, cum Accūsativō Subjecti. § 94.

4. Prōlātā constructiōnē Verbi vėl Adjectivi :

Sōlent diū *cogitare* qui magnā vōlunt *gerere*.Patriae dīcēris *esse* pāter.Lūdum insōlentem *ludere* pertīnax.

§ 141. II. Infinitivi Cāsūs sunt Gērundiā ēt Sūpinā.

1. Accūsativūs Gērundiī Praepōsitiōnībūs adjungitūr :

Ad bēnē *vivendum* brēvē tempūs sātīs est.

2. Gēnitivūs Gērundiī Substantivīs ēt Adjectivīs additūr :

Ars *scribendi* discitūr. | Cūpīdūs *audiendi* est.

3. Dativūs Gērundiī Nōminībūs et Verbīs additūr :

Pār est *dissere*ndō. | Dāt ōpēram *legend*ō.

4. Ablativūs Gērundiī causae vėl mōdī est aut Praepōsitiōnī jungitūr :

*Fugie*ndō vincimūs. | *De* *pugnand*ō dēlibērant.5. Sūpinum in *um* Accūsativūs est post Verbā mōtūs :*Lūsum* it Maecēnās, *dormitum* ēgō.a. *Irī* cum Sūpinō efficit Infinitivum Fūtūrī Passivī :Audiērāt nōn *dātum irī* filiō uxōrem sūō.6. Sūpinum in *ū* prō Ablativō Respectūs est :Foedum *dictū* est. | Nēfās *vīsū* est.§ 142. III. Infinitivum, cum Gērundiō, Participiūs, ēt Sūpinō in *um*, ēōsdem cāsūs rēgīt ac Verbum Finitum :Cūpiō sātisfācērē *rēipublicae*.Cūpīdūs sum sātisfāciēndī *rēipublicae*.Ausi omnēs immānē *nēfās* ausōquē pōtītī.Ast ēgō nōn Grāis servitum *mātribūs* ibō.

§ 143. În Gërundiis Transítivis úsítatíor est Attractiō Gërundivā; cūjūs constructiōnis rēgūlā est haecce :

Trāhítur Objectum în Gërundivī cāsum, Gërundivum în nūmērum ēt gēnūs Objectī :

Brútus în *libērandā pátriā* est interfectus.

Hī septemvíri fuērunt *āgris dīvidēdis*.

§ 144. IV. 1. Nēcessitātem signīficāt Gërundivā constructiō impersōnālīs, în Verbīs pōtissimum intransítivīs :

*Bībendum est.*

| *Ēundum ērit.*

a. Huic addī pōtest Dátivūs, rāriūs Ablátivūs cum *ā, āb* :

*Bībendum est nobīs.*

| *Vōbīs ēundum ērit.*

b. Ēt siquīs āliūs cāsūs ā Verbō rēgítur :

*Cívibūs est ā vōbīs consūlendum.*

*Sūo cuiquē iudiciō est ūtendum.*

*Eudoxūs opīnatūr Chaldaeīs mīnimē essē crēdendum.*

2. Nēcessitātem signīficāt attribútivā constructiō Gërundivī, în Verbīs transítivīs :

*Dēūs ēt dīligendūs est nobīs ēt tīmendūs.*

*Nōn tangēndā rātēs transiliunt vādā.*

## DE PRONOMINIBUS.

§ 145. *Sē, sūūs*, Rēflexivā Prōnōmīnā, rēfēruntūr ād sentētiāe principālīs Subjectum, mōdō tertiāe persōnae sīt :

*Sentit ānīmūs sē vī sūā mōvēri.*

a. Rēflexivā ād Objectum rēfērri possunt, sī ēā rēlatiō nīhil hābēt ambīgūi :

*Scīpiōnem impellit ostentātio sūi.*

*Apībūs fructum restitūo sūum.*

*Mors sūā quemquē mānet.*

## DE PARTICULIS NONNULLIS.

§ 146. Multae Coniunctiōnēs sīmīliā sīmīlibūs annectunt

*Mīrātur portās strēpītumque et strātā vīarum.*

*Virtūs nec ērīpi nec surrīpi pōtest.*

*Nēmīnem sapiētiōrem pūto quam Sōcrātem.*

*Omnē solum fortī patriā est, ut piscībūs aequor.*

§ 147. *Nē* prōhibītivā cum Impērātīvō Mōdō vėl cum Coniunctīvō ūsurpātūr: *nēdum, ūtīnam, o sī, ūt* prō ūtīnam. cum Coniunctīvō:

*Nē* quā mēis estō dictīs mōrā.

*Nē* culpam in mē contūlērīs.

*Neu* dēsint ēpūlis rōsae.

Mortālīā factā pērībunt,

*Nēdum* sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax.

*Ūtīnam* minūs vitae cūpīdī fūissēm ūs.

*Ō si* urnam argenti fors quae mīhī monstrēt.

*Ūt* illum dī dēaequē perdant.

## COMPENDIUM REGULARUM DE SUBJUNCTIVO.

§ 148. Mōdūs Coniunctīvūs vārīs sensībūs *pūrē* ūsurpātūr: quum *subjungitūr* altērī Verbō, Subiunctīvūs appellātūr.

§ 149. Prōnōmīnā ēt Particūlae, quae obliquē interrōgant, Subiunctivum postūlant:

Ipsē quis *sīt*, ūtrum *sīt*, an nōn *sīt*, id quōquē nescit.

Tālīa sunt:

*Quantūs, ūter, quālis, quis, quot, quōtūs, unde, ūbī, quandō,*

*Cūr, quōtīens, quārē, quam, quōmōdō, num, nē, ūt, an, ūtrum.*

§ 150. Rēlatīvum *quī*, cum Particūlis sūis, *undē, ūbī*, cētēris, simplici sensū cāpit Indicātivum: sī continētūr in ēō *quum, quamvis, ūt*, vėl *tālīs ūt*, Subiunctivum:

Miserēt tui mē, quī hunc *fācias* inimicum tibi.

Littērās mīsi quibūs ēt *plācārem* eūm ēt *mōnērem*.

Quis est quī nōn *ōdērīt* prōtervam pūritiām?

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs *intendās*.

§ 151. Rēlatīvum vėl Coniunctiō, sī sūbordinātūr ōrātiōnī obliquae vėl rē vėl pōtestatē, Subiunctivum postūlat:

Ennīūs nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam immortālītās *consequātūr*.

Sōcrātēs accūsātūs est quōd *corrumpērēt* iūventūtem.

a. Coniunctīvō saepē sūbordinātūr Subiunctīvūs:

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd *rēcēpissēt*.

§ 152. Conjunctionum Modos regentium Classēs sunt trēs.

I. Primā Classis est earum, quarum proprius est Subjunctivus:

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(1) CONSECUTIVAE:<br/>         Ut (<i>so that</i>)<br/>         Quin (<i>but that</i>)</p> <p>(2) FINALES:<br/>         Ut (<i>in order that</i>)<br/>         Nē (<i>lest, that . . . not</i>)<br/>         Quō (<i>in order that</i>)<br/>         Quōminūs (<i>but that</i>)</p> <p>(3) CAUSALIS:<br/>         Quum (<i>since</i>)</p> | <p>(4) CONDITIONALES:<br/>         Dum<br/>         Mōdō<br/>         Dummodō } (<i>provided that</i>)</p> <p>(5) CONCESSIVAE:<br/>         Licet<br/>         Quamvis } (<i>although</i>)<br/>         Ut</p> <p>(6) COMPARATIVAE:<br/>         Tamquam<br/>         Vēlūt, ceu } (<i>as if</i>)<br/>         Quāsī, &amp;c.</p> |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

II. Alterā Classis est earum quarum proprius est Indicativus, nisi subordinentur orationi obliquae vel re vel potestate:

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(1) CAUSALES:<br/>         Quōd, quā (<i>because</i>)<br/>         Quōniam (<i>since</i>)<br/>         Quandōquidem (<i>since</i>)<br/>         Siquidem (<i>inasmuch as</i>)</p> <p>(2) TEMPORALES:<br/>         Quandō, quum, ubi (<i>when</i>)<br/>         Ut (<i>when, since</i>)<br/>         Quōtiens (<i>as often as</i>)</p> | <p>Simul (<i>as soon as</i>)<br/>         Post-quam (<i>after that</i>)<br/>         Dum<br/>         Dōnēc } (<i>whilst, as long as</i>)<br/>         Quōdā</p> <p>(3) CONCESSIVAE:<br/>         Quamquam (<i>although, however</i>)<br/>         Utū (<i>however</i>)</p> |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

III. Tertiā Classis est earum, quas aut Indicativus sequitur aut Subjunctivus, prout res aut verā aut cōgitatā prōponitur.

- |                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p>(1) TEMPORALES:<br/>         Dum, dōnēc, quōdā (<i>until</i>)<br/>         Antē-quam<br/>         Prius-quam } (<i>before that</i>)</p> | <p>(2) CONDITIONALES ET CONCESSIVAE:<br/>         Si (<i>if</i>)<br/>         Nisi (<i>unless</i>)<br/>         Etsi, etiāmsi, (<i>although, even if</i>)</p> |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

§ 153. Idiōtismi sunt Latīni sērmōnis:

(1) Quum (*when*) sequentē Subjunctivō Imperfecti vel Pluperfecti:

Zēnōnem, quum Āthēnis essem, audiēbam frēquentēr.  
 Dēcessit Agēsilaūs quum in portum vēnissēt.

(2) Dum (*whilst*) sęquentę Indicativō Praesentis, ętiam in obliquā sūbordinātiōnē ęt dę rę praetērītā :

Quem ardōrem stūdiū censētis fūissę in Archimēdę, qui,  
*dum* in pulvērę quaedam *dęscribit* attentius, nę pātriam  
quidem captam essę sensērīt?

§ 154. Conjunctiō excidit āliquantō :

Philōsōphię serviās oportēt (supplę *ūt*).

Quaeram justum sit necnę pōema (supplę *utrum*).

Partem opęre in tantō, sinęret dōlōr, Icäre, hābērēs (supplę *si*).

§ 155. Dę Consęcūtiōnē Tempōrum ęā est ręgūlā, ęt Primāriā Primāriis sūbordinentūr, Histōricā Histōricis.

Exemplā ex Syntaxi rępętantūr.

#### REGULAE SUBSIDIARIAE DE CONGRUENTIA.

§ 156. (1) Adjectivā prō Substantivis pōnuntūr :

*Multā paupęri dęsunt, āvārō omnīā.*

(2) Infinitivā prō Substantivis pōnuntūr :

*Vivęrę est vālęrę.*

(3) Clausūlae prō Substantivis pōnuntūr :

*Crędibīlē est omnīā consīliō fięrī.*

§ 157. Impersōnālis Verbī Nōminativūs nōn exstāt, nisi si Infinitivum vęl Clausulā est :

Pūdęt ęum facti (i.e. *pūdōr pūdęt*).

Quid āgitūr? Stātūr (i.e. *stātīō fit*).

Taedęt ęādęm *audīrę* mīlięs.

Magni intęrest *ūt tę vidęam*.

§ 158. Vox intelligītūr ōmissā pęr Ellipsin :

Nihil bōnum nisi quōd hōnestum (bīs intelligę *est*).

Perfundor gęlīdā (intelligę *āquā*).

§ 159. Congręentiā vāriātūr pęr Attractiōnem :

Nōn omnis errōr stultitiā est *dīcendā*.

Thębae, *quod* Boeōtię capūt est.

§ 160. Congręentiā cum sensū fit pęr Sýnęsin, praesertim āpūd pōētās :

*Sūbęunt Tęgęaeļ jūventūs . . . auxiliō tardī.*

*Ubi est is scēlūs, qui mę perdīdīt?*



## PROSODIAE COMPENDIUM.

- § 161. Dē Syllābārum Quantitātē dissērit,  
Et dē Mētrōrum lēgibus, Prōsōdīa.



### DE SYLLABARUM QUANTITATE.

#### REGULAE QUANTITATIS GENERALES.

- § 162. 1. Omnis Diphthongus contractāque Syllābā longa est.  
2. Dant Dērīvātis prōpriū Primāriū tempus.  
3. Praeviā vōcālī vōcālis corrīpiētur.  
4. Vōcālis fit longā sītū, cui consōnā substat  
    Altērā post ūnam; ut *tristis*: seu vōcē in ēādē  
    *J* sūbīt, *x*, aut *z*; sic *Ājax*, *āxis*, *Āmāzōn*.  
    *a.* Vōcālis dūbia est, quāvis brēvis ipsā sūā vī,  
    Quam sēquitur, liquidā subjunctā, consōnā mūta:  
    Sic rectē *lūgūbrē* mēlos vel *lūgūbrē* dicēs.  
    *b.* *N* post *g* longam dat sempēr: ut *agnūs* ēt *ignis*.  
    Nec minūs *m* post *g*; *tēgmen* quod monstrāt ēt *āgmen*.

#### DE QUANTITATE SYLLABARUM FINALIUM.

- § 163. 1. Plērāque prōdūcēs Mōnōsyllābā, quālīā *mē*, *vēr*.  
2. Prōdūcuntūr in *A*: *frustrā*, *contrāque*, *pārāque*.  
    *a.* Accūsātīvōs et cāsūs excipē Rectōs:  
    *Carmīnā Mūsā* cānit; rēsōnant *Āmāryllidā* silvae.  
3. *E* brēvis in fine est: sic *lēgē*, *tīmētē*, *cārērē*.  
4. Prōdūcuntūr in *I*: *dīcī*, *plēbīque*, *dōlique*.  
5. Prōdūcuntūr in *O*: *virgō*, *multōque*, *juvōque*.  
6. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ū*: sic *tū*, *dictūque*, *dūūque*.  
7. *Y* brēvis in fine est: sic dant *chēlŷ*, *Tiphŷ*, pōetae.  
8. In *C* prōdūcuntūr, ut *illic* (excipē *donēc*).  
9. Corrīpē in *L*, *D*, *T*: sic *Hannībāl*, *illūd*, *āmāvīt*.  
10. *N* brēvis in fine est: sunt testēs *Ilīōn*, *agmēn*.

11. *R* brēvis in fine est: ceu *calcār, amābītūr, Hectōr.*
12. Prōdūcuntūr in *As*: ut *terrās* atquē *Mēnalcās.*
13. Prōdūcuntūr in *Ēs*, ut *sēdēs* atquē *vīdērēs.*
14. *Is* brēvis in fine est: ceu *dicērīs, ūtilīs, ensīs.*
  - a. Obliqui cāsūs plūrālēs excipiuntur,  
 Ut *terrīs, vobīs*; etiam persōnā sēcunda  
 In primō nūmērō Quartae Praesentis, ūt *audīs*:  
 Composita ā *vīs, sis: mālīs, nolisque, vēlisque.*
15. Prōdūcuntūr in *Os*: ut *ventōs* atquē *sacerdōs.*
16. *Us* brēvis in fine est: *testēs opūs, intūs, amāmūs.*
  - a. Hinc Quartae cāsūs contractōs excipe, ūt *artūs*:  
 Et quis crescentis longa est pēnultimā cāsūs,  
 Ut *tellūs incūsque, jūventūs* atquē *sēnectūs.*
17. *Ys* brēvis in fine est: *testēs chēlūs, Ōthrūs, Ērinūs.*  
*Obs. Mōs rēgit Auctōrum tempus, sī rēgulā dēfit.*

## DE METRORUM LEGIBUS.

## DEFINITIONES.

- § 164. Syllābā longā brēvī subjectā vocātūr *Iambus* . . √ -  
 Quod si longā brēvī praecesserit, illē *Trōchēus* . - √  
*Spondēus* binis fertur consistere longis . . . . . - -  
*Dactylūs* efficitur longā brēvibusque duabus . . - √ √

## DE SCANSIONE ET FIGURIS SCANSIONIS.

- § 165. 1. Scansio, | quam vāri|ā con|cinnant | artē Fi|gūrae,  
 Distribū|it Ver|sum | prō rāti|ōnē Pē|dum.
2. A. Vōcālem elidet Sŷnāloepha in limītē vōcis,  
 Si Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in liminē vōcis;  
 ‘*Phyllid’ am’ | ant’ al|ās.*  
 (prō *Phyllidā, amō, antē.*)
3. B. Ecthlipsis Vōcālem atquē *m* dē limītē trūdet,  
 Si Vōcālīs ērit subnexae in liminē vōcis;  
 ‘*Ō cūlrās hōmīn’ | Ō quant’ | est in | rēbūs in|āne.*  
 (prō *hōmīnum, quantum.*)
- a. Extrēma in dūbiis censētur syllābā versūs.

## § 166. VERSUS MEMORIALES DE VOCUM DIFFERENTIA.

- I. In silūis *ācēr* est : *ēquūs ācēr* Olympiā vincit.  
*Vocē cānēs* ; *dūc ējā cānēs*, nisi tempōrā *cānēs*.  
*Clāvā* fērit : *clāvus* firmat ; *clāvisque* rēclūdit.  
 Ut *placēās cōmītī*, *mōrēs cōmēs* indūē *cōmēs*.  
*Cōmoedi scēnam*, *cōmēdōnēs* quaeritē *cēnam*.  
*Consulē* doctōrēs ; sic tū *tibi consūlis* ipsī.  
 Bellandī *cūpidō* nōcūit sūā saepē *cūpidō*.  
 Carminā *dicuntur*, Dōminō dum templā *dicantur*.  
 Solvērē *diffidit*, nōdum quī *diffidit* ense.  
 Uxōrem *dūcit* vir ; *nūbit* sponsā mārītō.  
*Ēducāt* hic cātūlōs, ut mox *ēducāt* in āprōs.  
 Sī tibi non est *aes*, *ēs* inops, et pinguiā nōn *ēs*.  
 Fallit saepē *frētum* plācidō nīmīs aequōrē *frētum*.  
 Sōl nūbēs *fūgāt*, et *fūgit* irrēpārābilē tempus.  
 Per quod quis peccat, pēr *idem* mox plectitūr *idem*  
 Difficilis *lābōr* est, cūjus sub pondērē *lābor*.  
 Frons pūeri est *lēvis*, *lēvis* autem linguā pūellae.  
 In campīs *lēpōrēs*, in libris quaerē *lēpōrēs*.  
 Nōn *licēt* assē *mihī*, quī *mē* nōn assē *licētur*.  
*Mālo* egō *mālā* mēā bōnā quam *mālā* frangērē *mālā*.  
*Merx* vēnit, mercesquē vēnit quaesitā *lābōre*.  
*Mulcēt* āmans plācidam, dum *mulget*, Silvīā vaccam.  
 Fēcēris officium, *mīsēris* sī *mīsēris* aera.  
*Nitērē*, parvē pūer, cūpiēs quicumquē *nitēre*.  
*Oblitā* quae fūcō rūbēt, est *oblitā* dēcōrī.  
*Occidit* illē dōlō turpī, quem *occidit* āmicus.  
*Ōs* (ōris) mandat, sēd *ōs* (ossis) manditūr *ōre*.  
 Uxōris *pārēre* et *pārērē*, *pārārē* mārītī est.  
*Pārentēs* pūerī faciunt gaudērē *pārentēs*.  
*Lūdē pilā* : *pilum* torquētur : *pilā* cōlūma est.  
 Prō rēti et rēgiōnē *plāga* est ; prō verbērē *plāga*.  
 Sunt cīvēs urbis *pōpūlus* ; sed *pōpūlus* arbor.  
*Prōrā* prior, *puppis* pars postēra, āt imā *cārīna*.  
 Spondet *vas* (*vādīs*), at *vās* (*vāsīs*) continēt escam.  
*Vas* cāpūt, at nummōs tantum *praes* praestāt āmicē.  
 Sī cītūs irē *vēlis*, *vēlis* ōpūs omnībūs ūti est.

- II. *Fidē*, sēd antē *vidē* : quī *fidit*, nec *hēnē vidit*,  
*Fallitūr* : ipsē *vidē* nē cāpiārē *fidē*.  
*Consortēs* fortūna ēādem, *sōciōs* lābōr idem,  
*Ūnum collēgās* efficit officiūm :  
 At cārōs faciunt schōlā, lūdus, mensā, *sōdālēs* ;  
*Sulcūs* āgrī *lira* est : dat *lŷrā* tactū mōdōs.  
 Nē sit *sēcūrus*, quī nōn est *tūtūs* āb hoste ;  
 Ad flūmen *rīpās*, ad mūrē *litūs* hābēs.  
 Sunt aetātē *sēnēs* ; *vētērēs* vixērē priōrēs :  
 Quod nōn est *simulō dissimulōquē* quōd est.  
 Annē *nōvī* quid hābēs ? Alium pētē : nīl ēgō *nōvī*.  
 Quod minimē *rēfert* garrulūs illē *rēfert*.  
 Sī quā fortē *sēdēs*, atque est tībī commōdā *sēdēs*,  
 Illā *sēdē sēdē* ; nec mīhī *cēdē* lōcō.

(ENGLISH OF NOUNS, § 25—30.)

[§ 25.] (1) *Silver, gold, iron, plebeian-order, justice, spring, time, death, blood, childhood.* (2) *Ghosts, children, household-gods, riches, cradle, trifles, thanks, arms, functions, huts, feast of Flora.*

[§ 26.] (5) *Artificer, worker, guest, seer, new-comer, witness, citizen, inhabitant, parent, priest (or priestess), guardian, avenger, young man (or woman), infant, informer, judge, heir, companion, guide, chief, burgess, husband (or wife), hostage, bird, interpreter, author, exile, ox (or cow), deer, mole, tiger, crane, dog, snake, serpent, swine.*

[§ 28.] *Paunch, bear-constellation, canvas, distaff, ground, vine-leaf, winnowing-fan, pear-tree, sapphire, sea, poison, common-folk.*

[§ 29.] I. (1) *Spade, order, pirate, hinge, margin.* (2) *Weevil, bat, poniard, staff, butterfly, ternion, sice.* (3) *Echo, flesh.* (4) *Tree, surface (or sea), marble (or sea), heart.* (5) *Whetstone, dowry.* (6) *Osier, maple, stripe, spring, truffle, teat (or fertility), carcase, pepper, journey, poppy.* (7) *Fetter, mat, reward, sheaf, rest, crop, copper.* II. (1) *River, axle, stalk, hill, hind-leg, hair, bundle, bellows, bludgeon, fire, circle (or world), sword, bread, fish, doorpast, month, brand, talon, canal, lever, worm, birthday, stone, blood, cucumber, dust, nets, ghosts, dormouse.* (2) *Path, thorn, rope, end, collar, cinder.* (3) *Adamant, elephant, male, giant, as, bail, vessel.* (4) *Shears, law, death, furniture, pumice, tile, bolt, basalt, sorrel.* (5) *Arch, phoenix, cup.* (6) *Fountain, mountain, iron, dropsy, griffin, bridge, cable, torrent, tooth, client, one-third-part, trident, west, east.* (7) *Boar-pig, scimeter.* III. (1) *Bran, turtle-dove, vulture, thief.* (2) *Slavery, youth, virtue, safety, old-age, land, anvil, marsh.* (3) *Beast.* (4) *Hare, mouse.* (5) *Mullet, consul, salt, sun, boxer.* (6) *Kidney, spleen, comb, dolphin, woodcock.* (7) *Gorgon, linen, kingfisher.*

[§ 30.] *Tribe, needle, porch, house, daughter-in-law, mother-in-law, old-woman, Ides, hand.*

## FIRST MEMORIAL SYNTAX.

## ON AGREEMENT.

## THE FOUR GENERAL RULES.

[§ 88.] I. A Verb Finite agrees with the Nominative of its Subject in Number and Person:

Māgistēr docēt.  
*The master teaches.*

Lībrī lēguntūr.  
*Books are read.*

Tū docēs: nōs discimūs.  
*Thou teachest: we learn.*

Discērē est utilē.  
*To learn is useful.*

[§ 89.] II. An Adjective agrees in Gender, Number, and Case with that to which it is in attribution:

Vīr bonūs illē bonam hanc uxōrem hābēt.  
*That good man has this good wife.*

Hīrundo pullis suis orbātā quērītūr.  
*The swallow bereft of its young complains.*

Cārī sunt parentēs; cārā est patriā.  
*Dear are parents, dear is country.*

Pūērī discendō fiunt doctī.  
*Boys by learning become learned.*

[§ 90.] III. A Substantive agrees in Case with that to which it is in apposition:

Nōs pūērī patrem Lollium imitābimūr.  
*We boys will imitate our father Lollius.*

Effodiuntūr opēs, irritāmentā mālōrum,  
*Riches are dug out, incentives of evil.*

Spēs est expectātiō bonī.  
*Hope is the expectation of good.*

Syllābā longā brevī subjectā vocātūr Iambus.  
*A long syllable following a short is called Iambus.*

[§ 91.] IV. A Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person; but in Case belongs to its own clause:

*Dēum vĕnĕrāmŭr quī nōs crĕāvīt.*

*We worship God, who created us.*

*Āmicŭs est, quem āmāmŭs, ā quō āmāmŭr.*

*A friend is one whom we love, by whom we are loved.*

*Āmō tē, mātĕr, quae mē āmās.*

*I love you, mother, who love me.*

### ON THE COMPOSITE SUBJECT.

[§ 92.] With a Composite Subject Plural words agree:

*Vĕnĕnō absumptī sunt Hannibāl ĕt Philōpoemēn.*

*Hannibal and Philopocmen were cut off by poison.*

1. If the Persons differ, Verbs agree with the Prior Person: \*

*Sī tū ĕt Tulliā vālētis, ĕgō ĕt Cīcērō vālēmŭs.*

*If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well.*

2. When the Genders differ, Adjectives agree with the Masculine rather than with the Feminine:

*Pātĕr mīhī ĕt mātĕr mortŭi sunt.*

*My father and mother are dead.*

a. If the things are lifeless, the Attributes are often Neuter:

*Divitiae, dĕcŭs, glōriā ĩn ōcŭlis sītā sunt.*

*Riches, honour, glory, are placed before our eyes.*

### ON CASES.

#### ON THE CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT.

[§ 93.] 1. The Subject of a Finite Verb is a Nominative:

*Annī fŭgiunt.*

*Years flee.*

(2) The Subject of an Infinitive is put in the Accusative:

*Constāt annōs fŭgĕrĕ.*

*It is agreed that years flee.*

*Scīmŭs annōs fŭgĕrĕ.*

*We know that years flee.*

[§ 94.] Copulative Verbs, whether Finite or Infinitive, generally have a Complement agreeing with the Subject:

*Vitā est somnĭum.*

*Life is a dream.*

*Vitā dīcītŭr essĕ somnĭum.*

*Life is said to be a dream.*

*Nēmō nascītŭr sāpĭens.*

*Nobody is born wise.*

*Nēmō pōtest nascī sāpĭens.*

*Nobody can be born wise.*

\* The First Person is considered Prior to the Second, the Second to the Third.

*Aiunt vitam esse somnium.*

*They say that life is a dream.*

*Constāt nēmīnem nascī sapiētem.*

*It is agreed that nobody is born wise.*

a. The Construction of Accusative with Infinitive is called Oblique (Indirect) Enunciation.

## ON THE ACCUSATIVE.

[§ 95.] The Accusative is the Case of the Nearer Object. It has also the power of limiting.

### I. THE ACCUSATIVE OF THE OBJECT.

[§ 96.] Transitive Verbs govern an Accusative of the Object:

*Mātēr ālit pullōs.*

*The mother nourishes the young ones.*

*In primīs vērārāre Dēum.*

*In the first place worship God.*

[§ 97.] Intransitive Verbs take an Accusative of kindred meaning:

*Dūram servit servitūtē.*  
*He serves a hard slavery.*

*Claudīus ālēam lūsīt.*  
*Claudius played hazard.*

[§ 98.] Some Verbs, especially those of *asking* and *teaching*, admit two Accusatives, one of the Thing, the other of the Person:

*Numquam dīvītās dēos rōgāvi.*  
*Never asked I of the gods riches.*

*Quid nunc tē littērās dōcēam?*  
*Why now should I teach you letters?*

[§ 99.] Certain Verbs of *making*, *calling*, *thinking*, and the like, have two Accusatives, one of the Object, the other of the oblique Complement:

*Tē faciūmus, Fortunā, dēam.*  
*We make thee, Fortune, a goddess.*

*Rōmūlūs urbem suā Rōmam vōcāvit.*  
*Romulus called his city Rome.*

## II. THE ACCUSATIVE OF LIMITATION.

[§ 100.] The Accusative of Respect is joined to Verbs and Adjectives, especially in poetry :

|                                  |  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------------|
| Trēmīt artūs.                    |  | Nūdae sunt lācertōs.                 |
| <i>He trembles in his limbs.</i> |  | <i>They are bare as to the arms.</i> |

[§ 101.] The Place, *Whither* one goes, is put in the Accusative ; and without a Preposition, if it is either the name of a town, or dōmūs (*home*), rūs (*country*) :

Rēgūlūs Carthāgīnem rēdīit.  
*Regulus returned to Carthage.*  
 Vōs itē dōmum : ēgō rūs ibō.  
*Go ye home : I will go into the country.*

[§ 102.] (1) The Duration of Time is put in the Accusative :

Pēriclēs quādrāgintā annōs praefūit Āthēnīs.  
*Pericles led Athens forty years.*

(2) The Measure of Space is put in the Accusative :

Ērant mūrī Bābylōnīs dūcēnōs pēdēs altī.  
*The walls of Babylon were two hundred feet high.*

[§ 103.] Many Prepositions govern an Accusative Case (see the list, § 83).

## ON THE DATIVE.

[§ 104.] The Dative is the Case of the Recipient or Remoter Object.

§ 105. I. Words which carry their meaning over to a Remoter Object are called Trajective, and include many Adjectives, Adverbs, and Verbs, more rarely Substantives, by which is implied (1) Nearness or (2) Demonstration, (3) Gratification or (4) Dominion ; and any notion contrary to these.

§ 106. Trajective Words take a Dative when the meanings implied are

(1) Nearness and its contraries :

Est finītimūs ōrātōrī pōētā.  
*A poet is near akin to an orator.*  
 Nīl fūit unquam sic impār sibi.  
*Nothing was ever so unequal to itself.*  
 Congrūentēr nātūrae vivendum est.  
*We should live agreeably to nature.*



*Praesentiā confēr praelēritīs.*

*Compare present things with past.*

*Nec tāmēn ignōrat quid distent aerā lūpīnis.*

*And yet he is not ignorant how coins differ from lupins.*

(2) Demonstration and its contraries:

*Dic mīhī, Dāmoetā, cūjum pēcūs?*

*Tell me, Damoetas, whose flock (is this)?*

*Anguis Sullae appārūit immōlantī.*

*A snake appeared to Sulla while sacrificing.*

*Haud cuiquam in dūbiō ērāt bellum immīnērē.*

*It was not doubtful to any one that war was imminent.*

(3) Gratification and its contraries:

*Pātriae sīt idōnēūs, ūtilīs āgrīs.*

*Let him be serviceable to his country, useful to the lands.*

*Turbā grāvis pāci plācidaeque īnīmīcā quīētī.*

*A crowd oppressive to peace and unfriendly to calm rest.*

*Quōd āliī dōnāt sibi dētrāhīt.*

*What he gives to another, he withdraws from himself.*

*Lūcem reddē tūae, dux bōnē, pātriae.*

*Restore light to thy country, good chief.*

*Nōbīs spondet fortūnā sālūtem.*

*Fortune guarantees safety to us.*

*Nē libēāt tibi quod nēmīni licēt.*

*Let not (that) please thee which is lawful to no man.*

*Parcē pīō gēnērī.*

*Spare a pious race.*

*Succensērē nēfās pātriae.*

*It is impious to be wroth with one's country.*

*Rēsistendum est appētītībūs.*

*We should resist our passions.*

(4) Dominion and its contraries:

*Sāpiens, sibi qui impēriōsus.*

*The wise man (is he) who (is) lord over himself.*

*Omnībūs supplex est.*

*He is suppliant to all.*

*Impērāt aut servit collectā pēcūniā cuique.*

*Amassed money sways or serves every man.*

*Mundūs Dēō pārēt, et huic ōboedīunt mārīa terraequē.*

*The universe obeys God, and seas and lands hearken to Him.*

a. Among Trajective words are many Verbs compounded with Particles, such as *bēnē* (well), *mālē* (ill), *sātīs* (enough),

rē, ad, antē, con, in, intēr, dē, ob, sub, supēr, post, and prae :

*Ceteris satisfaciō sempēr, mihi numquam.*  
*I satisfy others always, myself never.*

*Siciliā quondam Itāliae adhaesit.*  
*Sicily once was attached to Italy.*

*Gigantēs bellum dis intulerunt.*  
*The giants waged war on the gods.*

*Ōnātum ovā gallinīs supponimus.*  
*We place eggs of ducks under hens.* ✓

§ 107. II. A Dative can be added anywhere with a certain notion of Advantage or Disadvantage :

*Esto, ut nunc multi, dives tibi, pauper amicis.*  
*Be, as many are now, rich for thyself, poor for friends.*

*Nūmā virginēs Vestae legit.*  
*Numa chose virgins for Vesta.*

*Vēnūs nupsit Vulcanō.*  
*Venus wedded Vulcan (lit. veiled herself for Vulcan).*

*Philosophiae sempēr vacō.*  
*I always am at leisure for philosophy.*

a. Refer here the Dative of the Pronoun, which is called the Ethic Dative :

*Quid mihi Celsus agit?*  
*What (is) my Celsus doing?*

b. Sum with its compounds, except possum, takes a Dative :

*Sum tibi Mercūrius.*  
*I am to thee Mercury.*

*Vir mihi sempēr abest.*  
*My husband is always absent from me.*

c. Est, sunt, with a Dative, often imply having :

*Est hominī cum Dēo similitūdō.*  
*Man has a resemblance to God.*

*Sunt nobis mītiā pōma.*  
*We have mellow apples.*

d. The same Dative is joined to Participles and Participials of the Passive Voice, especially to Gerundives :

*Magnus civis obit et formidātus Ōthōnī.*  
*A great citizen is dead, and one dreaded by Otho.*

*Mulīs illē bonis flēbilīs occidit.*  
*He died a cause of weeping to many good men.*

*Lēgendae sunt pueris Aesōpi fabulae.*  
*The fables of Aesop are to be read by boys.*

§ 108. III. A Dative of the Purpose is used as a Complement, a Dative of the Recipient being often added :

*Nimīa fiduciā cālāmītātī sōlēt essē.*

*Too much confidence is wont to be a calamity.*

*Exitiō est avidum mārē nautīs.*

*The greedy sea is a destruction to sailors.*

§ 109. IV. A Dative of the Complement is used by Attraction, especially in expressions of naming :

*Licuit Thēmistōclī essē otīōsō.*

*It was lawful for Themistocles to be at leisure.*

*Huic egō diēi nōmēn Trīnummō faciām.*

*To this day I will give the name Trinummus.* ✓

## ON THE ABLATIVE.

[§ 110.] The Ablative is the Case of circumstances which attend action, and limit it adverbially. It defines also Time and Place.

[§ 111.] I. Ablative of Cause :

*Odērunt peccārē bonī virtūtis amōre.*

*The good hate to sin from love of virtue.*

*Coeptis immānībūs effērā Didō.*

*Dido wild with horrid purposes.*

[§ 112.] II. Ablative of the Instrument :

*Hī jacūlīs, illī certant dēfendērē saxīs.*

*These strive to defend with javelins, those with stones.*

[§ 113.] III. Ablative of Manner :

*Injuriā fīt dūobūs mōdīs, aut vī aut fraudē.*

*Wrong is done in two manners, either by force or by fraud.*

[§ 114.] IV. Ablative of Condition :

*Pacē tuā cum Thāidē collōquār.*

*With your leave I will converse with Thais.*

*Hōmō mēa sententiā prūdētissimū est.*

*He is a man in my opinion very prudent.*

[§ 115.] V. Ablative of Quality, with Epithet :

*Quā faciē fuit, cui dēdisti symbolum?*

*Of what aspect was he to whom you gave the ticket?*

*Sēnex prōmissā barbā, horrentī cāpillō.*

*An old man with long beard and rough hair.* ✓

## [§ 116.] VI. Ablative of Respect :

Angör *ānimō*.*I am distressed in mind.*Ennius *ingēnō* maximus, *artē* rudis.*Ennius, mighty in genius, in art (is) rude.*

## [§ 117.] VII. Ablative of Price :

Ēgō *spem* pretiō nōn ēmō.*I buy not hope at a cost.*Quōd nōn ōpūs est, *assē* cārum est.*What is not needful is dear at a penny.*

## [§ 118.] VIII. Ablative of Measure :

Longum *sesquipedē*, lātum *pedē* est.*It is a foot and a half long, a foot wide.*Sōl *multis* partibūs mājor est quam *lūnā*.*The sun is many times larger than the moon.*

Tantō pessimū omnium pōtā,

*Quantō* tu optimū omnium patrōnū.*By so much the worst poet of all,**As you (are) the best patron of all.*

## [§ 119.] IX. Ablative of Matter :

Cibūs eōrum *lactē*, *cāsēō*, *carne* constat.*Their food consists of milk, cheese, and flesh.*

a. These words govern an Ablative: (1) The Verbs fungōr (perform), frūōr (enjoy), ūtōr (use), vescōr (eat), pōtōr (get possession of), dignōr (deem worthy). (2) The Adjectives dignūs (worthy), indignūs (unworthy), contentūs (content), frētūs (relying), praeditūs (endued). (3) The Substantives ōpūs (need), ūsūs (use) :

(1) Fungar *vicē* cōtis.*I will perform the function of a whetstone.*Hannibāl, cum *victoriā* possēt ūtī, frūī mālūt.*Hannibal, when he might have used his victory, preferred to enjoy it.*Rex impiūs *aurō* vī pōtītur. § 133.*The impious king gets possession of the gold by force.*(2) Dignum *laudē* vīrum Mūsā vētat mōrī.*A man worthy of praise the Muse forbids to die.*(3) Ūbī rēs adsunt, quid ōpūs est *verbis*?*When things are present, what need is there of words?*Ūsūs est filiō *viginti* minis.*My son needs twenty minas.*

b. Most Adjectives and Verbs of *abounding* or *wanting*, *enriching* or *depriving*, take an Ablative; many also a Genitive.

*Amor ēt mellē ēt fellē est fēcundissimūs.*  
*Love is very fruitful both in honey and gall.*

*Nunquam ānimūs mōtū vācūūs est.*  
*The mind is never void of motion.*

*Vis consili expers mōlē rūit sūā.*  
*Force devoid of counsel falls by its own weight.*

*Mancipīs locūplēs ēgēt aeris Cappadōcum rex.*  
*The king of the Cappadocians, rich in slaves, lacks coin.*

*Vācārē culpā maximū est sōlāciū.*  
*To be free from blame is a very great comfort.*

§ [120.] X. The Ablative of Time answers the questions:  
*When? Within what time? How long before or after?*

*Himē omniā bellā conquiescunt.*  
*In winter all wars rest.*

*Quidquid est biduō sciēmūs.*  
*Whatever there is we shall know in two days.*

*Hōmērūs annīs multīs fuit antē Rōmūlum.*  
*Homer was many years before Romulus.*

§ [121.] XI. A. The Ablative of Place is put without a Preposition, when the question is, *By what road?*

*Ibam fortē Vīā Sācrā.*  
*I was going by chance on the Sacred Road.*

B. The Ablative is often without a Preposition when the question is, *Where?* especially if it is the name of a town, or if it stands with an Epithet.

*Philippūs Nāpōlī est, Lentulus Pūtēolīs.*  
*Philippus is at Naples, Lentulus at Puteoli.*

*Tābernae tōtā urbē clauduntūr.*  
*The shops are closed in the whole city.*

a. Singular names of towns of the first and second Declension define the place of station by cases in *ae*, *i*:

|                               |  |                              |
|-------------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| <i>Quid Rōmae faciām?</i>     |  | <i>Is hābitāt Mīlētī.</i>    |
| <i>What can I do at Rome?</i> |  | <i>He dwells at Miletus.</i> |

b. Like these are *hūmī* (on the ground), *dōmī* (at home), *bellī*, *militiae* (at the wars), *rūrī* (in the country):

*Caesaris virtūs dōmī militiacquē cognitā est.*  
*Caesar's virtue was known at home and at the wars.*

C. The Ablative of a town is without a Preposition, when the question is, *Whence?*

*Dēmārātūs fūgīt Cōrīnthō.*  
*Demaratus fled from Corinth.*

a. So *dōmō* (from home), *rūrē* (from the country).

On the Accusative of Place *Whither*, see § 101.

§ [122.] XII. Various Prepositions govern an Ablative. (See the list, § 83).

a. Prepositions, even when compounded, govern an Ablative, especially *āb*, *dē*, *ex*:

*Quīntiūs dictātūrā sē abdīcāvīt.*  
*Quintius resigned the dictatorship.*  
*Dētrūdunt nāvēs scōpūlō.*  
*They thrust off the ships from the rock.*

b. The Ablative of the Agent takes the Preposition *ā*, *āb*:

*Laudātūr āb hīs, culpātūr āb illīs.*  
*He is praised by these, he is blamed by those.*

[§ 123.] XIII. The Ablative of Separation and Origin is joined also without a Preposition to Verbs and Participles:

*Cādēs cōemptīs saltībūs et dōmō.*  
*You will retire from purchased glades and mansion.*  
*Pēlōpē nātūs, Tantūlō prognātūs est.*  
*He was born of Pelops, descended from Tantalus.*

[§ 124.] XIV. Ablative of the Thing Compared:

(1) For *quam* (*than*) with Nominative:

*Nihīl est āmābīlīūs virtūtē.*  
*Nothing is more amiable than virtue.*  
*Vīlīūs argentum est aurō, virtūtībūs aurum.*  
*Silver is less valuable than gold, gold than virtues.*

(2) For *quam* with Accusative:

*Pūtō mortem dēdēcōrē lēvīōrem.*  
*I think death easier than disgrace.*  
*Nēmīnem Lŷcurgō ūtīlīōrem Spartā gēnūīt.*  
*Sparta produced no man more serviceable than Lycurgus.*

[§ 125.] XV. A Substantive combines with a Participle in the Ablative which is called Absolute:

*Rēgībūs exactīs consūlēs crēātī sunt.*  
*Kings having been driven out, consuls were elected.*

a. For the Participle is often substituted another Substantive, or an Adjective:

Nīl despērandum Teucrō dūce ēt auspīcē Teucrō.  
*There must be no despair with Teucer for leader, and Teucer for omen-giver.*

Nātūs est Augustūs consūlibūs Cīcērōnē et Antōnīō.  
*Augustus was born when Cicero and Antonius were consuls.*

Jamquē cīnis, vīvīs frātrībūs, Hectōr erat.  
*And now Hector was ashes, his brothers being alive.*

Quīd dicam, hāc jūventūtē?  
*What can I say, when our young men are of this stamp?*

### ON THE GENITIVE.

[§ 126.] The Genitive, the Case of the Proprietor, generally defines Nouns subjectively or objectively.

#### A. THE SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 127.] I. Genitive of the Author and Possessor:

Pōlyclētī signā plānē perfectā sunt.  
*Polycletus's statues are quite perfect.*

Singulōrum ōpēs sunt divitiāe civitātis.  
*The resources of individuals are the riches of the state.*

Omniā, quae muliērīs fūerunt, virī fiunt.  
*All things, which were the woman's, become the husband's.*

Ēā stātūā dicēbātūr essē Mýrōnīs.  
*That statue was said to be Myro's.*

a. Sometimes the Genitive depends on a word omitted.

Hectōrīs Andrōmachē (supplē uxōr).  
*Hector's Andromache (supply wife).*

Ventum ērat ad Vestae (supplē templum).  
*We had come to Vesta's (supply temple).*

b. A Genitive so stands that nature, token, function, or duty, can be supplied.

Cūjuscūq; hōmīnis est errārē.  
*It is in any man's nature to err.*

Est ādōlescentīs mājōrēs nātū vērērī.  
*The young man's duty is to reverence elders.*

Tempōrī cēdērē hābētūr sāpientīs.  
*To yield to occasion is held a wise man's function.*

## [§ 128.] II. Genitive of Quality, with Epithet.

*Ingēnūi vultūs pūēr ingēnūiquē pūdōris.**A boy of high-bred countenance and high-bred modesty.**Claudīus ērat somnī brēvissimī.**Claudius was (a man) of very brief slumber.*

a. The Elliptic Genitives may be remarked: *parvī* (of small worth), *mīnōris* (of less value), *mīnimī* (of very little worth), *magnī* (of great price), *plūris* (of more value), *plūrimī*, (of high value), *tantī* (of so great price), *quantī* (of what price), *maximī* (of very great price), to which supply *prētīi*:

*Vōluptātem virtūs mīnimī fācit.**Virtue makes pleasure of very small account.**Ēmit hortōs tantī quantī Pŷthiūs vōlūt.**He bought the pleasure-ground at such price as Pythius wanted.*

## [§ 129.] III. Intērest (it imports), rēfert (it concerns), admit a Genitive:

*Intērest omnīum rectē fācērē.**It imports all men to act rightly.**Rēfert composītiōnis quae quibūs antēpōnās.**It concerns arrangement what things you place before what.*

a. The same Verbs instead of the Genitives of Pronouns use these Cases, *mēā*, *tūā*, *sūā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, agreeing with *rē*:

*Ēt tūā ēt mēā intērest tē vālērē.**It imports both your weal and mine, that you be well.**Quid nostrā id rēfert?**What (does) that concern us?*

## [§ 130.] IV. A Genitive of the Thing Distributed is joined to Partitive words, which, as far as may be, take the Gender of the Genitive:

*Ēlēphantō belūārū est nullā prūdentiōr.**Of beasts, none is more sagacious than the elephant.**Hōmīni ūni ānimantīum luctūs est dātūs.**To man alone of animals sorrow has been given.**Sullā centum vīgintī sūōrū āmisīt.**Sulla lost a hundred and twenty of his men.**Mājor Nērōnum mox grāvē proelīum commīsīt.**The elder of the Neros ere long fought a severe battle.**Gallōrū fortissimī sunt Belgae.**The Belgae are bravest of the Gauls.*



*Nēmō mortālīum omnībūs hōrīs sāpit.*  
*Of mortals nobody is wise at all hours.*

*Piscīum fēmīnae mājorēs sunt quam mārēs.*  
*Of fishes the females (are) larger than the males.*

*Sēquimur tē, sanctē dēōrum.*  
*We follow thee, holy one of gods.*

*Hōc ād tē mīnimē omnīum pertīnēt.*  
*This belongs to thee least of all men.*

a. *Nostrūm (of us), vestrūm (of you)*, follow Partitives:

*Tē vēnirē ūterquē nostrūm cūpīt.*  
*Each of us desires that you come.*

[§ 131.] V. A Genitive of the Thing Measured is joined to Words of Quantity and Neuter Adjectives:

*Sātīs ēlōquentīae, sāpientīae pārū est.*  
*He has enough eloquence, too little wisdom.*

*Āliquīd pristīnī rōbōrīs conservāt.*  
*He keeps something of his old strength.*

*Quantum nummōrum, tantum fidēi est.*  
*There is the same amount of credit as of money.*

## B. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE.

[§ 132.] I. A Genitive is joined objectively to Substantives, Adjectives, or Participles, which have a certain transitive force, especially if they signify *skill, care, desire*, or whatever is contrary to these.

*Insītūs est mentī cognitiōnis āmor.*  
*Love of knowledge is implanted in the mind.*

*Difficīlis est cūrā rērum āliēnārū.*  
*Hard is the care of other people's affairs.*

*Tempūs ēdax rērum est.*  
*Time is consumer of things.*

*Corpūs patiēns inēdiāe fūit.*  
*His body was capable of enduring inanition.*

*Consciā mens rectī est.*  
*The mind is conscious of rectitude.*

*Impērītūs mōrum fūit.*  
*He was unskilled in manners.*

*Āvidā est pēriculī virtūs.*  
*Valour is greedy of danger.*

*Animūs fūit āliēnī appētens, sūi prōfūsus.*  
*His mind was desirous of another's (wealth), lavish of his own.*

a. Mēi, tūi, sūi, nostrī, vestrī, are put objectively ; mēus, tūus, sūus, nostrer, vester, subjectively :

Niciās tūā sūi mēmōriā dēlectātūr.

*Nicias is charmed with your recollection of him.*

(a) A Subjective Genitive understood in a Possessive Pronoun admits a Genitive agreeing with it :

Respublicā mēā ūniūs ōpērā salvā ērāt.

*The state was saved by my single exertion.*

Āvēs fētūs ādultōs sūae ipsōrum fidūciae permittunt.

*Birds entrust grown nestlings to their own self-reliance.*

[§ 133.] II. A Genitive is joined to Verbs and Adjectives which signify *power and impotence, inculpation, innocence, condemnation, acquittal, memory and forgetfulness* :

(1) Rōmānī signōrum pōtītī sunt. § 119 a.

*The Romans gained the standards.*

Irā est impōtens sūi.

*Anger is incapable of self-restraint.*

(2) Frāternī est sanguinīs insons.

*He is innocent of a brother's blood.*

Rēus est injuriarum.

*He is arraigned of injurious acts.*

(3) Pētiliūs furti absōlūtus est.

*Petillius was acquitted of theft.*

Condemnāmūs hāruspicēs stultiliāe.

*We condemn soothsayers (as guilty) of folly.*

(4) Rēs adversae admōnent nōs religiōnum.

*Adversity reminds us of religious duties.*

Omnēs immēmōrem bēnēficii ōdērunt.

*All men hate one unmindful of a kindness.*

a. Mēmīnī, rēmīniscōr, rēcōrdōr (*I remember*), obliscōr (*I forget*), admit Genitive or Accusative :

Jūbet mortis tē mēmīnissē Dēus.

*God bids thee remember death.*

Dulcēs mōriens rēmīniscītūr Argōs.

*Dying he remembers sweet Argos.*

[§ 134.] III. Pīgēt (*it irks*), pūdēt (*it shames*), pānītēt (*it repents*), taedēt (*it disgusts*), and mīserēt (*it moves pity*), Impersonal Verbs, take a Genitive with an Accusative :

Mīserēt tē āliōrum: tūi nēc mīserēt nēc pūdēt.

*Thou pitiest others, for thyself without pity or shame.*

Ēōs partim scēlērū, partim īneptiārū pānītēt.

*They repent, some of their crimes, others of their follies.*

[§ 135.] IV. *Misēřēr, misēřescō* (*I pity*), take a Genitive; *misērōr, commisērōr* (*I compassionate*), an Accusative:

*Arcādī, quaesō, misēřescitē rēgis.*

*Pity, I pray, the Arcadian king.*

*Sortem misērātūr inīquam.*

*He compassonates the unjust fate.*

[§ 136.] VI. The Genitive is freely used by poets. But *aegēr ānīmī* (*sick at heart*), *ānīmī pendēō* (*I waver in mind*), and the like, appear even in prose.

#### ON CASES OUT OF THE SENTENCE.

[§ 137.] The Vocative stands out of the Sentence either without an Interjection or with an Interjection:

*Ōrō tē, fili* (*vēl O fili*).

*I pray thee, son (or, O son).*

[§ 138.] The Nominative and the Accusative are used in Exclamations either without an Interjection or with an Interjection:

(1) *Infandum!*

*Unutterable!*

(2) *Mē misērum!*

*Wretched me!*

*Eccē nōvā turbā!*

*Lo, a new disturbance!*

*En quattuōr ārās!*

*Lo, four altars!*

[§ 139.] So the Dative is put with *hei* (*alas!*), *vae* (*woe!*)

*Ei misērō mihi!*

*Alas wretched me!*

*Vae victis!*

*Woe to the vanquished!*

#### ON THE VERB INFINITE.

[§ 140.] I. The Infinitive stands—

1. Substantively, for Nominative or Accusative:

(1) *Invidēre nōn cādīt in sāpiētem.*

*Envyng happens not to a wise man.*

*Dulce et dēcōrum est prō patriā mōrī.*

*Dying for country is sweet and comely.*

(2) *Mōrī nēmō sāpiēns misērum dixērīt.*

*No wise man will call it miserable to die.*

## 2. Predicatively, in narration, for a Finite Verb :

*Multi sēquī, fugērē, occidī, cāpī.*

*Many were following, flying, being slain, being captured.*

## 3. Obliquely, with Accusative of the Subject. See § 94.

## 4. Carrying on the construction of a Verb or Adjective :

*Sōlent diū cōgītārē quī magnā vōlunt gērērē.*

*They are wont to reflect long who wish to perform great things*

*Pātriae dicēris essē pāter.*

*Thou art said to be father of thy country.*

*Lūdum insōlentem lūdērē pertīnax.*

*Persisting to play an insolent game.*

## [§ 141.] II. Gerunds and Supines are the Cases of the Infinitive.

## 1. The Accusative of the Gerund is joined to Prepositions :

*Ad bēnē vivendum brēvē tempūs sātis est.*

*For living well a short time is sufficient.*

## 2. The Genitive of the Gerund is joined to Substantives and Adjectives :

*Ars scribendī discitūr.*

*The art of writing is learnt.*

*Cūpīdūs audiendī est.*

*He is desirous of hearing.*

## 3. The Dative of the Gerund is joined to Nouns and Verbs :

*Pār est dissērendō.*

*He is competent for arguing.*

*Dāt ōpēram lēgendō.*

*He pays attention to reading.*

## 4. The Ablative of the Gerund is of cause or manner, or is joined to a Preposition :

*Fūgiendō vincimūs.*

*We conquer by flying.*

*Dē pugnandō delībērant.*

*They deliberate about fighting.*

5. The Supine in *um* is an Accusative after Verbs of motion :

*Lūsum it Maecēnās, dormitum ēgō.*

*Mæcenas goes to play, I to sleep.*

a. *Irī* with the Supine forms the Infinitive of the Future Passive :

*Audīerāt nōn dātum irī filiō uxōrem sūō.*

*He had heard (that there was) no intention (non irī) to give a wife to his son.*

6. The Supine in *u* is for an Ablative of Respect :

*Foedum dictū est.*

*It is horrible to state.*

*Nēfās visū est.*

*It is impious to view.*

[§ 142.] III. The Infinitive, with Gerund, Participles, and Supine in *um*, governs the same Cases as the Verb Finite :

*Cūpiō sātisfācērē rēipublicae.*

*I desire to satisfy the commonwealth.*

*Cūpidūs sum sātisfāciendī rēipublicae.*

*I am desirous of satisfying the commonwealth.*

*Ausi omnēs immānē nēfās ausōquē pōtiti.*

*All dared monstrous impiety, and achieved their daring.*

*Ast ēgō non Graiūs servitum mātribūs ibō.*

*But I will not go to be a slave to Greek matrons.*

[§ 143.] In Transitive Gerunds the Gerundive Attraction is more usual; the rule for which construction is the following :

The Object is attracted to the Case of the Gerundive, the Gerundive to the Number and Gender of the Object :

*Brūtūs in libērāndā patrī est interfectūs.*

*Brutus was slain in freeing his country.*

*Hī septemvīrī fūerunt āgrīs dīvidēdis.*

*These were the seven commissioners for dividing lands.*

[§ 144.] IV. 1. The Impersonal Gerundive construction implies necessity, principally in Intransitive Verbs :

*Bibendum est.*

*One must drink.*

*Ēundum ērit.*

*One will (have) to go.*

a. To this may be joined a Dative, more rarely an Ablative with *ā*, *āb* :

*Bibendum est nobis.*

*We must drink.*

*Vobis ēundum ērit.*

*You will (have) to go.*

b. And any other Case governed by the Verb :

*Cīvibūs est ā vōbīs consūlendū.*

*You must consult for the citizens.*

*Sūo cuiquē iūdicīo est ūtendū.*

*Each must use his own judgment.*

*Eudoxūs ōpinātūr Chaldaeis mīnimē essē crēdendū.*

*Eudorus thinks that astrologers should by no means be believed.*

2. The Attributive construction of the Gerundive implies necessity, in Transitive Verbs :

*Dēūs ēt dīligendūs est nobīs ēt tīmendūs.*

*God is both to be loved and feared by us.*

*Nōn tangendā rātēs transiliunt vādā.*

*Barks o'erleap the shallows (which should) not be meddled with.*

## ON THE PRONOUN.

[§ 145.] Sē, sūus, Reflexive Pronouns, are referred to the Subject of the principal Sentence, provided it be of the third Person :

Sentit ānimū sē vī sūā mōvērī.

*The mind feels (that) it is moved by its own force.*

a. Reflexives can be referred to the Object, if that reference involves no ambiguity :

Scipiōnem impellit ostentātiō sū.

*Ostentation of self sways Scipio.*

Āpībūs fructum restitūō sūum.

*I restore to the bees their produce.*

Mors sūā quemquē mānet.

*His death awaits every man.*

## ON SOME PARTICLES.

[§ 146.] Many Conjunctions annex like words to like :

Miratur portās strēpītumque et strātā viārum.

*He marvels at the gates and the noise and the pavements of the streets.*

Virtūs nec ēripī nec surripī pōtest.

*Virtue can neither be torn away nor stolen.*

Nēmīnem sapiētiōrem pūtō quam Sōcrātem.

*I deem no man wiser than Socrates.*

Omnē solum fortī patriā est, ut piscībūs aequor.

*Every soil is a country to the brave man, as the sea to fishes.*

[§ 147.] Nē prohibitive is used with an Imperative or Conjunctive Mood: nēdum (*not to say, much less*), ūtinam (*O that*), ō sī, ūt for ūtinam, with a Conjunctive :

Nē quā mēis estō dictis mōrā.

*Let there be no delay to my orders.*

Nē culpam in mē contulērīs.

*Lay not the fault on me.*

Nē dēsint ēpulis rōsae.

*And (let) roses not be wanting to the feast.*

Mortālīā factā pēribunt,  
Nādam sermōnum stēt hōnōs et grātiā vivax.  
*Mortal deeds will perish, much less (can) the honour and popularity of literary works stand permanent.*

Ūtinam mīnus vītae cūpīdī fūissēmūs.  
*Would that we had been less fond of life.*

O sī urnam argentī fors quae mīhī monstrēt!  
*O if some chance would show me a pot of silver!*

Ūt illum dī dēaequē perdant.  
*I wish that the gods and goddesses may destroy him.*

## OUTLINE OF RULES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

[§ 148.] The Conjunctive Mood is used, purely, in various senses: but, if it is subjoined to another Verb, it is called Subjunctive.

[§ 149.] Pronouns and Particles, which question indirectly, require a Subjunctive:

Ipsē quis sīt, ūtrum sīt, an nōn sīt, id quōquē nescit.  
*He knows not even this, who himself is, whether he is, or is not.*

Such Interrogatives are:

|                                             |                               |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Quantūs ( <i>how great</i> )                | Cūr ( <i>why</i> )            |
| Ūtēr ( <i>which of two</i> )                | Quōtiēns ( <i>how often</i> ) |
| Qualīs ( <i>of what sort</i> )              | Quārē ( <i>wherefore</i> )    |
| Quīs ( <i>who or what</i> )                 | Quam ( <i>how</i> )           |
| Quōt ( <i>how many</i> )                    | Quōmōdō ( <i>how</i> )        |
| Quōtūs ( <i>which, in order of number</i> ) | Num, -nē ( <i>whether</i> )   |
| Undē ( <i>whence</i> )                      | Ūt ( <i>how</i> )             |
| Ūbī ( <i>where or when</i> )                | An, ūtrum ( <i>whether</i> ). |
| Quandō ( <i>when</i> )                      |                               |

[§ 150.] The Relative quī, with its Particles, ūbī (*where, when, &c.*), undē (*whence*), &c., in its simple sense, takes an Indicative; if there is implied in it *since, although, in order that, or such that*, a Subjunctive:

Misērēt tūi mē, quī hunc faciās inimicum tibi.  
*I pity you, since you make this man your foe.*

Littērās mīi quibūs ēt. placārem eūm ēt mōnērem.  
*I sent a letter wherewith I might pacify and admonish him.*

Quīs est quī nōn odērīt prōtervram pūeritiā?  
*Who is there that hates not saucy boyhood?*

Dignā rēs est ūbī nervōs intendās.  
*The matter is worthy (that) you devote your energies to it.*

[§ 151.] A Relative or Conjunction, if it is subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual, requires a Subjunctive.

Ennius nōn censēt lūgendam essē mortem, quam immortalitās consēquātūr.

*Ennius considers that death (ought) not to be mourned, which immortality succeeds.*

Sōcratēs accūsātūs est quōd corrumpērēt iuventūtem.

*Socrates was accused (on the charge) that he corrupted youth.*

a. A Conjunctive Mood often has a Subjunctive in subordination to it.

Clāmant omnēs: praestārēt quōd rēcēpissēt.

*All cry out, he should perform what he had undertaken.*

[§ 152.] Of Conjunctions governing\* Moods there are three Classes:

I. The First Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Subjunctive is appropriate:

(1) CONSECUTIVE:

Ūt (*so that*)

Quin (*but that*)

(2) FINAL:

Ūt (*in order that*)

Nē (*lest, that . . . not*)

Quō (*in order that*)

Quōminūs (*but that*)

(3) CAUSAL:

Quum (*since*)

(4) CONDITIONAL:

Dum

Mōdō

Dummodō } (*provided that*)

(5) CONCESSIVE:

Licet

Quamvis } (*although*)

Ūt

(6) COMPARATIVE:

Tamquam

Vēlūt, ceu } (*as if*)

Quāsi, &c.

II. The Second Class consists of those Conjunctions, to which the Indicative is appropriate, unless they are subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, either actual or virtual.

(1) CAUSAL:

Quōd, quā (*because*)

Quōniam (*since*)

Quandōquidem (*since*)

Siquidem (*inasmuch as*)

Simul (*as soon as*)

Post-quam (*after that*)

Dum

Dōnēc } (*whilst, as long as*)

Quōdā

(2) TEMPORAL:

Quandō, quum, ubi (*when*)

Ūt (*when, since*)

Quōtiēs (*as often as*)

(3) CONCESSIVE:

Quamquam (*although, however*)

Ūtūt (*however*)

\* When we speak of Moods being governed by Conjunctions, we mean only that certain Conjunctions are used, always or in certain senses, with certain Moods. The reason of Mood is independent of Conjunctions; but Conjunctions distinguish the relations of Clauses more fully, as Prepositions distinguish the relations of Nouns.



III. The Third Class consists of those Conjunctions which either the Indicative or the Subjunctive follows, according as the matter expressed is fact or contingency.

(1) TEMPORAL:

Dum, dōnēc, quōād (*until*)  
Antē-quam } (*before that*)  
Prius-quam }

(2) CONDITIONAL AND CONCESSIVE:

Sī (*if*)  
Nisi (*unless*)  
Etsī, ētīamsī (*although, even if*)

a. [§ 153.] Idioms of the Latin language are:

(1) Quum (*when*) followed by a Subjunctive of the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Zēnōnem, quum Āthēnīs essem, audiēbam frēquentēr.  
*I often used to hear Zeno, when I was at Athens.*

Dēcessit Agēsīlāūs quum in portum vēnissēt.  
*Agesilaus died, when he had come into harbour.*

(2) Dum (*whilst*), followed by an Indicative Present, even in oblique subordination, and concerning a past circumstance:

Quem ardōrem stūdiū censētīs fūissē in Archimēdē, quī,  
*dum in pulvērē quaedam dēscribit attentius, nē patriam*  
*quidem captam essē sensērīt?*

*What ardour of study think ye there was in Archimedes, who, whilst drawing some figures in the dust with peculiar attention, did not perceive even that his country was captured?*

b. [§ 154.] A Conjunction is sometimes understood.

Philōsōphīae serviās oportēt.  
*It behoves (that you) be a servant to philosophy (supply ut).*

Quaeram justum sit necnē pōēma.  
*I will inquire (whether) it be a true poem or not (supply ūtrum).*

Partem ōpēre in tantō, sīn ēret dōlōr, Īcāre, hābērēs.  
*Thou, Icarus, wouldst have a share in this great work, did grief allow (supply sī).*

c. [§ 155.] The Rule for the Consecution of Tenses is, that Primary Tenses are subordinated to Primary, Historic to Historic. (§ 48).

Examples may be looked out from the Syntax.

## SUPPLEMENTARY RULES OF AGREEMENT.

[§ 156.] (1) Adjectives are put for Substantives :

*Multā paup̄rī dēsunt, āvārō omniā.**Many things are wanting to the poor man, to the miser all things.*

(2) Infinitives are put for Substantives :

*Vivēre est vūlērē.**To live is to be well.*

(3) Clauses are put for Substantives :

*Crēdibilē est omniā consiliō fieri.**It is probable that all things happen by design.*

[§ 157.] The Nominative of an Impersonal Verb is not apparent unless it be an Infinitive or a Clause :

*Pūdēt eum facti (i.e. pūdōr pūdet).**He is ashamed of the act.**Quid agitur? Stātūr (i.e. stātio fit).**What is being done? There is a stand-still.**Taedēt eādem audirē mīliens.**To hear the same things a thousand times is tedious.**Magnī intērest ut tē vidēam.**It is of great importance that I should see you.*

[§ 158.] A Word is understood when omitted by the figure Ellipsis :

*Nihil bonum nisi quod honestum (understand est twice).**Nothing is good but what is morally right.**Perfundor gēlidā (understand aquā).**I bathe myself with cold water.*

[§ 159.] Agreement is varied by the figure called Attraction :

*Nōn omnis error stultitiā est dicendā.**Not every error must be called folly.**Thēbae, quod Boeōtiāe caput est.**Thebes, which is the capital of Boeotia.*

[§ 160.] Agreement with the meaning takes place by the figure called Synesis, especially in poetry :

*Sūbēunt Tēgēaeā iuventūs auxiliō tardī.**The youth of Tegea come slow to the succour.**Ūbi est is scēlūs, quī mē perdidit?**Where is that villain, who has ruined me?*

## OUTLINE OF PROSODY.

[§ 161.] Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables and of the laws of metre.

### ON THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

#### GENERAL RULES OF QUANTITY.

- [§ 162.] 1. Every diphthong and contracted syllable is long.  
 2. Primitives give their own quantity to their derivatives.  
 3. A vowel coming before a vowel will be short.  
 4. Any vowel becomes long by Position, which two consonants follow, as *tristis*: or which in the same word *j* follows or *x* or *z*: so *Ajax*, *āris*, *Amāzon*.  
 5. A vowel, though short by its own power, is doubtful if a mute consonant with a liquid after it follows; thus you will say rightly (*lugūbre melos*) a mournful melody, or *lugūbre*.  
*a.* *Gn* always makes a long syllable, as *āgnus* and *ignis*: and like wise *gm*; which *tēgmen* and *āgmen* shew.

#### ON THE QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

- [§ 163.] 1. Most words of one syllable are long, as *mē*, *vēr*.  
 2. Words ending in A are long: *frustrā*, and *contrā*, and *parā*.  
*a.* Except Accusative and Nominative Cases: (*Musā*) the Muse sings (*carminā*) songs: the woods resound (*Amarylīdā*) *Amarylīs*.  
 3. E final is short: as *legē*, *timetē*, *carerē*.

[§ 162.] 1. Examples: *heū*; *cōygo=cōgo*. Except *prae* before a vowel, as *praeceuntem*.

2. Examples: *pōmum*, *pōmarium*; *sālix*, *sālicetum*. Exceptions are numerous, as *hōmo*, *hūmanus*; *nūbo*, *pronūba*; *nōtus*, *cognītus*.

3. Examples: *principium*, *prōhioe*. (H is regarded as a breathing only, and not taken into account in Prosody.) Many Greek exceptions; *Chāonis*, *Aenēas*, *Clio*, *Myrtōus*, *Enyō*. Some Latin; *diēi*, *Pompēi*; *aulāi*, *ēheu*; *fio* (except before *er*, as *fieri*); *Doubtful*: *fidēi*, *Dīana*; *Gen. in ius*; *illūs*.

[§ 163.] 1. Exceptions: words in l, b, d, t, v, s, sūb, id, ēt, stēt. Also *ēs* and its compounds, *adēs*; *quē*, *vē*, *nē* interrogative; *nēc*, *ān*, *in*, *pēr*, *tēr*, *vīr*, *cōr*, *ōs* (*ossis*), *fūc*, *fēr*, *bīs*, *īs*, *cīs*, *quīs*.

2. *a.* Most Vocatives in ā are short; *Orestā*; also *cīā*, *itā*, *quīā*.

3. Except Cases of the 1st and 5th Declension, as *Thisbē*, *speciē*; their Derivatives; *quarē*, *hodiē*; Imperatives Sing. of the 2nd Conj.; *audē* (but *cavē* is doubtful). Adverbs derived from Adjectives; *miserē*; also *fermē*, *ferē*, *ohē*, *fāmē*.

4. Words in I are long; *dici* and *plebī* and *dolī*.
5. Words in O are long; *virgō* and *multō* and *juvō*.
6. Words in U are long, so *tū* and *dictū* and *diū*.
7. Y final is short; thus poets have *chelȳ*, *Tiphȳ*.
8. Words in C are long, as *illīc*, except *donēc*.
9. Shorten words in L, D, T; thus *Hannibāl*, *illūd*, *amavīt*.
10. N final is short, *Ilīōn*, *agmēn*, are instances.
11. R final is short; as *calcār*, *amabitūr*, *Hecīōr*.
12. Words in As are long; as *terrās* and *Menalcās*.
13. Words in Es are long; as *sedēs* and *viderēs*.
14. Is final is short; as *dicerīs*, *utilīs*, *ensīs*.  
  - a. The Oblique Cases Plural are excepted, as *terrīs*, *vobīs*; also the Second Person Singular, Present Tense, of the Fourth Conjugation, as *audīs*; the compounds of *vīs*, *sīs*; *malīs*, *nolīs*, and *velīs*.
15. Words in Os are long, as *ventōs* and *sacerdōs*.
16. Us final is short: *opūs*, *intūs*, *amamūs*, are instances.  
  - a. Except from this rule the contracted cases of the Fourth Declension, as *artūs*; and words which, increasing, have long penult; as *tellūs* and *incūs*, *juventūs* and *senectūs*.
17. Ys final is short: *chelȳs*, *Othryȳs*, *Erinyȳs*, are instances.  
  - a. The custom of Authors governs Quantity, if a rule is wanting.

## ON THE LAWS OF METRE.

[§ 164.] A long syllable following a short is called Iambus (˘ –); but if a long syllable goes before a short one, that is a Trochee (– ˘):  
 A Spondee will consist of two long syllables (– –);  
 A Dactyl is formed by a long and two short syllables (– ˘ ˘).

## ON SCANSION AND FIGURES OF SCANSION.

[§ 165.] 1. Scansion, which Figures adjust by various art, distributes a Verse according to Feet.

4. Exceptions are: Greek Datives and Vocatives; Thyrsidī, Chlorī; also sicubī, necubī, nīsi, quasi. But mihī, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi, are doubtful.
5. The quantity of words in O, especially Verbs and Proper Names, fluctuates. Oblique Cases, and Adverbs in O derived from Adjectives, have ō long, except citō. Moīō and its Compounds, egō, duō, octō, sciō, nesciō, have ō short: immō, putō, doubtful.
10. Exceptions: many Greek words; Hymēn, Ammōn.
11. Exceptions: many Greek words; cratēr, aēr.
12. Exceptions: Greek cases of Third Declension; Arcās, lampadās. Also anās, a duck.
13. Exceptions: Greek Plurals increasing; Troadēs: also penēs; and some Singular Nouns which increase short, as segūs.
14. a. Gratis, foris, are long: and Substantives which increase long; Samnis, Simois. Its of the Future and Perfect in Verbs is doubtful, as fecerīs.
15. Some Greek words in ōs (ος) are short; Argōs, epōs.
16. a. Some words from the Greek in ūs are long; Sapphūs, Melampūs, Icsūs.

2. Synaloepha (Elision) will cut off a Vowel at the end of a word, if there be a vowel at the beginning of the next word: *Phyllid' am' ant' alias*, for *Phyllida amo ante alias*.

3. Ecthipsis will cut off a Vowel and *m* from the end, if there be a Vowel at the beginning of the next word: *O curas homin', O quant' est in rebus inane*, for *hominum, quantum*.

a. The last syllable of a verse is counted doubtful.

[§ 166.] I. The maple is in the woods; the spirited horse wins the Olympia. You will sing with your voice: up, lead dogs, unless you are white on the temples. A club strikes; a nail holds firm, and a key opens. To please a companion, put on, as a companion, affable manners. Comedians, seek the stage; messmates, seek supper. Consult teachers, so you consult for yourself. Often has his own desire injured one desirous of war. Songs are recited, while temples are dedicated to the Lord. He trusted not to untie, who severed the knot with a sword. The man leads a wife; the bride veils for a husband. This man trains dogs to take them out soon against boars. If you have not money, you are destitute, and eat not delicacies. The sea often deceives one who relies too much on the clear surface. The sun chases the clouds, and irrecoverable time flies. By what a man sins, by the same the same man is soon punished. It is a difficult labour under the weight of which I sink. The boy's forehead is smooth, but the girl's tongue light. Seek hares in plains, elegancies in books. I bid not a penny for him who bids not a penny for me. I had rather break with my jaw good apples than bad. Merchandise is sold, and reward comes gained by toil. Silvia strokes lovingly, while she milks, her gentle cow. You will have done a duty, if you have sent coins to the wretched. Strive, little boy, whoever shalt desire to shine. She who is red, smeared with paint, is forgetful of decency. He fell by base treachery, whom a friend killed. A meuth commands, but a bone is eaten with the mouth. It is a wife's part to bring forth and obey, a husband's to procure. Obedient children make parents rejoice. Play at ball: a javelin is hurled; *pila* is a pillar. *Plāga* is for a net and a country; *plāga* for a blow. People are the citizens of a city: but poplar is a tree. The prow is the front (of a ship), the stern the hind part, and the keel the lowest. A bail promises, but a vessel contains food. A bail kindly assures the person, but a surety money only. If you wish to go quick, you have need to use all the sails.

II. Trust, but first see; he who trusts, and has not well seen, is deceived: see lest you be inveigled by trust. The same fortune makes partners; the same toil comrades; one duty colleagues: but school, play, the table, make dear companions. *Lira* is the furrow of a field: *lyra* (the lyre) touched utters notes. Let him not be secure, who is not safe from the enemy: you have banks by a river, shore by the sea. Men are old by time; ancients lived formerly: I feign what is not, and dissemble what is. Have you any news? Seek another: I know nothing. That chatterer relates what matters little. If perchance you sit anywhere, and the seat is convenient to you, sit in that seat: nor give up the place to me.

## APPENDIX I.

## I. NOTES ON ETYMOLOGY.

## I. NOUNS.

## A. Substantives, §§ 16-25 :—

## FIRST DECLENSION, § 18.

- a.* The old Genitive ending **as** remains in *familias* :  
Pater- (mater-) *familias*, *father (mother) of a family*.  
*b.* The Gen. in **ai** is found in epic and comic poetry : *aquai*.  
*c.* Nouns which form Gen. Pl. in **um**, instead of **arum**, are (1) *Patronymics* : *Aeneades* ; (2) Some names of people, *Lapitha* ; (3) *Compounds* with *-cola*, *-gena* ; *caelicola*, *terrigena* ; (4) *Drachma*, *amphora*.  
*d.* Nouns like *Dea*, with Dat. Abl. Pl. **abus**, are some of those which correspond to Masculine Nouns in *us* : *filia*, *nata*, *liberta*, *mula*, &c.

## SECOND DECLENSION, § 19.

- a.* Nouns declined like *filius* are, *genius*, *familiar spirit*, and Latin Proper Names in *ius* ; *Mercurius*, *Laelius*.  
*b.* The Gen. **ii** was often contracted into **i**. Virgil and Horace use **i** ; Ovid writes **ii**.  
*c.* The Gen. Pl. in **um** for **orum** appears in (1) names of coins, weights, measures, and trades : *nummus*, *sestertius*, *medimnus*, *modius*, *talentum*, *faber*. So, *denum talentum* ; *praefectus fabrum*. (2) Some names of people : *Argivus*, *Danaus*. Poets often use it in words of short penult ; *virum* for *virorum*.  
*d.* Greek nouns in **os**, *m.* and *f.*, have Acc. on or **um** : *Deos* ; Acc. *Delon* or *Delum*. Nouns in **on**, *n.*, are like *bellum* in all but N. V. A. Sing. ; *Pelion*.  
*e.* *Pelagus*, *sea*, *virus*, *poison*, being Neuter, have Acc. and Voc. the same as Nom. *Vulgus*, *common people*, is Masculine or Neuter, and has **-um** or **-us** in Acc. These three Nouns have no Plural.

## THIRD DECLENSION, §§ 20-22.

## 1. Variant Consonant Nouns :

*Old man, Swine, Ox or cow, Jupiter,*

|          | m.    | c.  | c.   | m.       |      |
|----------|-------|-----|------|----------|------|
| N. V.    | Senex | Sus | Bos  | Juppiter |      |
| Acc.     | Sen-  | Su- | Bov- | Jov-     | em   |
| Gen.     | Sen-  | Su- | Bov- | Jov-     | is   |
| Dat.     | Sen-  | Su- | Bov- | Jov-     | i    |
| Abl.     | Sen-  | Su- | Bov- | Jov-     | o    |
| N. V. A. | Sen-  | Su- | Bov- | —        | os   |
| Gen.     | Sen-  | Su- | —    | —        | um   |
| D. Abl.  | Sen-  | —   | —    | —        | ibus |

Sus has Dat. Abl. Pl. subus or suibus; bos has Gen. Pl. boum

Dat. Abl. bōbus or būbus.

Iter, *journey*, n.; Gen. itiner-is.

Jecur, *liver*, n.; Gen. jecōris or jecinōr-is.

Supellex, *furniture*, f.; Acc. supellectilem.

Parisyllable Nouns, declined like Consonant Nouns, are:

the syncopated words, pater, mater, frater, accipiter;

canis, juvenis, vates, volucris.

## 2. Variant I-Nouns:

Imparisyllable I-Nouns, like dens, are: (1) Nouns with Stem ending in two Consonants, except lynx; (2) the words, glis, lis, mas, mus, nix (nivis), strix, with faux and vis.

Nouns like tussis are: sitis, *thirst*, f.; amussis, *carpenter's rule*, f.; with a few more. Also names of rivers, Tiberis, Tiber, m.; of towns, Hispalis, *Seville*, f.

Like clavis: classis, *fleet*, f.; febris, *fever*; messis, *harvest*; navis, *ship*, f.; puppis, *stern*, f., and a few others. Restis, *rope*, f., Abl. ē; securis, *axe*, f., Abl. ī only.

Like canalis are Adjectival Nouns: aedilis, m.

Like imber are: ūter, *bladder*; venter, *belly*, m.; linter, *boat*, f.

## 3. Greek Consonant-Nouns form Acc. Sing. in ā or em; Acc. Plur. usually in ās:

|                             |         |       |    |
|-----------------------------|---------|-------|----|
| Gigas, <i>giant</i> , m.    | gigant- | ā, em | ās |
| Lampas, <i>torch</i> , f.   | lampād- | ā, em | ās |
| Cratēr, <i>bowl</i> , m.    | cratēr- | ā, em | ās |
| Aēr, <i>air</i> , m.        | aēr-    | ā, em | ās |
| So, Naïs, <i>Naiad</i> , f. | Naïd-   | ā, em | ās |
| Herōs, <i>hero</i> , m.     | herō-   | ā, em | ās |
| Erinyes, <i>fury</i> , f.   | Eriny-  | ā     | ās |

Greek Nouns in īs, ŷs, have Voc. ī, ŷ: Parī, Naī, Erinŷ.

Greek I-Nouns have Nom. īs, f.; Voc. ī; Acc. īn or im; Gen. ēōs; Dat. Abl. ī: poēsis, *poetry*.

## 4. The following are various Masculine forms of Proper Names:

| Nom.       | Voc.  | Acc.        | Gen.           | Dat.       | Abl.   |
|------------|-------|-------------|----------------|------------|--------|
| 1. ēūs     | eu    | ēum, ēā     | ēī, ēōs        | ēī, ēī, ēō | ēō     |
| 2. ēs, ēūs | ē, eu | em, ēn, ēā  | īs, ēī, ī, ēōs | ī          | ē      |
| 3. ēs      | ē, ēs | em, ēn      | īs, ī          | ī          | ē, ē   |
| 4. ēs      | ēs    | em, ēā      | īs, ī          | ī          | ē      |
| 5. ēs      | ē, ēs | em, ēn, ētā | īs, ētīs       | ī, ētī     | ē, ētē |

Examples.—1. Orpheus, Peleus. 2. Achilles, Ulixes (ēūs). 3. So-crates, Thucydides. 4. Eteocles, Pericles. 5. Chremes, Thales.

## FOURTH DECLENSION, § 23.

The Nouns which prefer ūbūs to ībūs in Dat. Abl. Pl. are Disyllables in ūs: arcus, *bow*; also, tribus, *tribe*; partus, *birth*; artus (Plur.), *limbs*; and veru, *spit*, N.

Poets often contract ūī into ū: Parce metu.—VERB.

## FIFTH DECLENSION, § 24.

Dies, *day*, and res, *thing*, are the only Nouns which form the increasing Cases in the Plural. Most have no Plural at all.

Poets contract *ei* into *ē*: Constantis juvenem fide.—Hor.

Fidei generally has *e* short: so rei, spei.

Respublica, *commonwealth*, declines both elements: Acc. rempublicam, Gen. reipublicae, etc. So jusjurandum, *oath*; Gen. jurisjurandi, etc.

## ANOMALOUS SUBSTANTIVES, § 25.

The chief Nouns, Plural only, besides those named (2) are:

|                    |                                 |                               |
|--------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| DECL. 1. <i>f.</i> | Deliciae, <i>delight</i>        | Nonae, <i>Nones</i>           |
|                    | Epulae, <i>feast</i>            | Nundinae, <i>market-day</i>   |
|                    | Exsequiae, <i>funeral rites</i> | Nuptiae, <i>bridal</i>        |
|                    | Feriae, <i>holidays</i>         | Reliquiae, <i>remnant</i>     |
|                    | Insidiae, <i>ambush</i>         | Tenebrae, <i>darkness</i>     |
|                    | Kalendae, <i>Calends</i>        | Athenae, <i>Athens</i>        |
|                    | Minae, <i>threats</i>           | Thebae, <i>Thebes</i>         |
| DECL. 2.           | Fasti, <i>annals</i>            | Delphi                        |
|                    |                                 | Gabii                         |
| DECL. 3.           | Fores, <i>door, f.</i>          | Moenia, <i>town walls, n.</i> |
| DECL. 4.           | Artus, <i>limbs, m.</i>         | Idus, <i>Ides, f.</i>         |

The most important Nouns which change meaning in Plural (3) are:

|          |                          |                           |
|----------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| DECL. 1. | Copia, <i>plenty, f.</i> | Copiae, <i>forces</i>     |
| DECL. 2. | Ludus, <i>play, m.</i>   | Ludi, <i>public games</i> |
| DECL. 3. | Aedes, <i>temple, f.</i> | Aedes, <i>house</i>       |

Add to Defective Nouns:

Mane, *morning*, Nom. Acc. Abl. Sing.

Fas, *right*; nefas, *wrong*; instar, *likeness*; nihil, *nothing*; necesse, *necessity*; opus, *need*: Nom. Acc. Sing.

Fors, *chance*; Abl. S. forte, *by chance*.

Sponte, *by one's own choice*.

## B. Adjectives, §§ 32-37:—

§ 33. *a.* Like melior are declined Comparatives. Vetus (*veter-*), *ancient*, has the same endings as melior in the Oblique Cases and Plural.

Like felix, Adjectives in *ax, ix, ox, ux*.

Like ingens, Adjectives in *-ns, -rs, ex*; also locuples (*locuplēt-*), *wealthy*; par (*pār-*) with its compounds. Present Participles have Abl. S. *ī*, when used as Epithets; otherwise *ē*: with occasional exception.

Like acer, Adjectives of the Second Class in *-cer, -ster*; also cēlēber, *renowned*; salūber, *healthful*.

β. Abl. S. *ī*, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Plur. Nom. Acc.: inop-*s*, *destitute*; vigil, *wakeful*; memor, *mindful*; degener, *degenerate*; uber, *fruitful*.

γ. Abl. S. *ē*, Gen. Pl. *um*; no Neut. Pl.: ales (*alit-*), *winged*; dives (*divit-*), *rich*; sospes (*sospit-*), *safe*; superstes (*superstit-*), *surviving*; compos (*compot-*), *possessing*; impos (*impot-*), *not possessing*; deses, *reses* (*desid-, resid-*), *inactive*; pauper, *poor*; puber, *of age*.



## C. Pronouns, § 38:—

The suffixes -mēt, -tē, -ptē, -cē, strengthen various Pronouns.

Mēt may be joined 1. to ego and its cases (except Gen. Plur.): egomet, *I myself*; 2. to the cases of tu (except Nom. Sing.): vosmet, *ye yourselves*; 3. to se and its cases, except sui: sibimet; 4. to the cases of suus: suamet facta.

Tē is joined to tu: tute; also, tutemet, *thou thyself*.

Ptē is joined especially to the Abl. Sing. of the Possessive Pronouns: meopte consilio, *by my advice*.

Cē is joined to the Demonstratives: huncce, hujusce. For illece, istece, are written illic, istic, which may be declined,

|      | Sing.          |        |       | Plural.         |          |        |
|------|----------------|--------|-------|-----------------|----------|--------|
|      | M.             | F.     | N.    | M.              | F.       | N.     |
| N.   | istic          | istaec | istuc | istice          | istaecce | istace |
| Acc. | istunc         | istanc | istuc | istosce         | istasce  | istace |
| Gen. | istiusce, etc. |        |       | istorumce, etc. |          |        |

From the Possessives noster, vester, cujus, are derived:

|                                  |  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--|--------------------------------|
| Nostr-as (āt-), of our country.  |  | Cuj-as (āt-), of what country. |
| Vestr-as (āt-), of your country. |  |                                |

## D. Derived Nouns.

1. Substantiva Mobilia have a Feminine as well as a Masculine form:

a. Many O-Nouns have a Feminine A-Noun formed by changing ūs into ā: agnus, *lamb*; asinus, *ass*; cervus, *stag*; deus, *god*; dominus, *lord*; equus, *horse*; famulus, *house-servant*; filius, *son*; libertus, *freed-man*; lupus, *wolf*; maritus, *husband*; mulus, *mule*; natus, *son*; servus, *slave*; sponsus, *bridegroom*; ursus, *bear*, &c. Fem. agna, asina, etc.

Avus, *grandfather*, has avia; gallus, *cock*, gallina; caper, *he-goat*, capra and capella; puer, *boy*, puella; magister, minister, change *ter* into *tra*; poeta, *poet*, poetria; citharista, *harper*, citharistria. Taurus, *bull*, has vacca, *cow*; verna, *born-slave*, ancilla, *maid-servant*.

b. Consonant-Nouns verbal in tōr often have a Feminine trix: ultor, *avenger*, ultrix; victor, *conqueror*, victrix. Some in trix are found as Adjectives: arma victricia, *victorious arms*.

c. Caupo, *vintner* (3), has Fem. copa (1); cliens, *client* (3), clienta (1); fidicen, *lute-player* (3), fidicina (1); tibicen, *flute-player* (3), tibicina (1); leo, *lion* (3), leaena or lea (1).

d. Gentile names: Cres, *Cretan* (3), Cressa (1); Laco, *Lacedaemonian* (3), Lacaena (1); Libys, *Libyan* (3), Libyssa (1); Phoenix, *Phoenician* (3), Phoenissa (1); Thrax, *Thracian* (3), Thraeissa (1); Tros, *Trojan* (3), Troas (3), &c.

e. Nepos, *grandson* (3), has Fem. neptis (3); aries, *ram* (3), ovis, *ewe* (3); vir, *man* (2), mulier, *woman* (3); gener, *son-in-law* (2), nurus (4); socer, *father-in-law* (2), socrus (4); senex, *old man* (3), anus (4).

Note. Nouns having only one Gender for both sexes are called Epicoena (ἐπικοίνα): passer, *sparrow*, m.; vulpes, *fox*, f. Sex must be expressed, if needful, by the words mas, femina: vulpes mas, *a dog-fox*.

2. Deminutives are Derived Nouns which express smallness. Deminutives are formed, chiefly, in

| M.                              | F.                           | N.                                   |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. -ŭlus                        | -ŭla                         | -ŭlum                                |
| 2. -ŏlus                        | -ŏla                         | -ŏlum                                |
| 3. -ellus                       | -ella                        | -ellum                               |
| 4. -cŭlus                       | -cŭla                        | -cŭlum                               |
| 1. riv-ulus, <i>streamlet</i>   | cist-ula, <i>small chest</i> | scut-ulum, <i>small shield</i>       |
| 2. fili-olus, <i>little son</i> | capre-ola, <i>young roe</i>  | savi-olum, <i>kiss</i>               |
| 3. ag-ellus, <i>small field</i> | pat-ella, <i>saucer</i>      | lab-ellum, <i>lip</i>                |
| 4. flos-culus, <i>floweret</i>  | parti-cula, <i>particle</i>  | munus-culum, <i>little present</i> . |

Adjectives are also diminished: as, parvulus, pallidulus, misellus.

3. Patronymics are Personal Names, derived from a parent or ancestor.

#### Masc.

|       |            |        |           |
|-------|------------|--------|-----------|
| ĭdēs, | Aeneādes,  | son of | Aeneas.   |
| idēs, | Tyndarīdes | "      | Tyndarus. |
| idēs, | Nelīdes    | "      | Nelus.    |
| īdēs  | Thestīādes | "      | Thestius. |

#### Fem.

|     |           |             |           |
|-----|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| is, | Tyndaris, | daughter of | Tyndarus. |
| īs, | Nelīs,    | "           | Nelus.    |
| ās, | Thestias, | "           | Thestius. |

And some others.

## II. COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

### A. CHANGES OF PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

(1) A, ab=

A before *m*, *v*: amitto, avoco.

A b before *c*, *t*: abscedo, absterreo.

A s before *p*: asporto.

A u before *f*: aufero, aufugio. But afui, afore.

A b before other letters: abeo, abdo.

(2) A d remains before *b*, *d*, *h*, *j*, *m*, *v*, and vowels: adbibō, addo, adhibeo, adjicio, admitto, advoco, adeo.

becomes *a-* before *gn*, *sc*, *sp*: agnosco, ascendo, aspicio.

is assimilated before other letters: affero, appono, assisto.

(3) Con- (for *cum*), in-, are written com-, im-, before *p*, *b*, *m*: comparo, combibo, immitto.

are assimilated before *l*, *r*: colludo, irruo.

Con- becomes *co-* before vowels, *h*, and *gn*: coeo, coheres cognosco. So ignosco. Note comēdo, comburo.

Con-, in-, remain before other consonants: conféro, induco.

(4) O b, s u b, are assimilated before *c*, *g*, *p*, *f*: occurro, oppono, suppono. So summovere.

Except suscipio, suscito, suspendo, suspicio.

They remain before other letters.

Except sustineo, sustollo, sustulī, surripio.

Note omitto, ostendō.

- (5) *E, ex*, are assimilated before *f*: *effero*.  
*Ex* before vowels, *h, c, q, p, s, t*: *exeo, exhibeo, excedo, exquiro, expello, extruo,\* extraho*.  
*E* before others: *educō, evoco*.
- (6) *Trans* becomes *tra* before *d, j, n*: *trado, trajicio, trano*.  
*Tran-* before *s*: *transcribo*.
- (7) *Dis-* is assimilated before *f*: *differo*.  
 Remains before gutturals, labials, *t, j*, and *s* with vowels  
*discerpo, dispello, distraho, disjicio, dissero*. But *di-*  
*judico*.  
*Di-* before *s* with consonant, and before other consonants: *dir-  
 tringo, diruo*.  
 Not used before vowels. But *dir-ibeo* for *dis-hibeo*, *dir-  
 imo* for *dis-imo*.
- (8) *Re- se-* add *d* in *reddo, redeo, redhibeo, redīmo, redoleo, seditio*.

### B. VOWEL-CHANGE IN COMPOSITION.

- a.* Verbs weakening *a* into *e* in all forms of their compounds:  
 (1) *damnare, jactare, lactare, patrare, sacrare, tractare*;  
 (2) *arcēre*; (3) *-candēre, carpēre, scandēre, spargēre, gradi,  
 pati*; (4) *farcire, partīri*.
- b.* Verbs weakening *a* into *u* in all forms: (1) *calcare, saltare*;  
 (3) *quatēre, (-cutēre, -cussi, -cussum)*.
- c.* Verbs weakening *ae* into *i* in all forms: (3) *caedēre (-cīdi,  
 -cīsum), laedēre (-līdēre, -līsi, -lisum), quaerēre (-quirēre, -quī-  
 sivi, -quisitum)*.
- d.* Verb weakening *au* into *ū* in all forms: (3) *claudēre (-clūdēre,  
 -clūsi, -clūsum)*.
- e.* Verb weakening *au* into *ō* in all forms: (3) *plaudēre (-plōdēre,  
 -plōsi, -plōsum)*. Exc. *applaudēre*.
- f.* Verbs weakening *a* into *i* in all forms: (2) *habēre, latēre, placēre,  
 tacēre*; (3) *sapēre, statuēre*. Exc. *complacēre, perplacēre*.
- g.* Verbs which vary the Vowel in the forms of compounds:—
- (a) *a × i, e, a*: (3) *agēre (-igēre, -ēgi, -actum), frangēre (-frin-  
 gēre, -frēgi, -fractum), pangēre (-pingēre, -pēgi, -pactum)*.  
 Exc. *circum-, peragēre (-ēgi, -actum), cogēre (co-ēgi,  
 -actum), degēre (dēgi), satagēre (satēgi), repangēre*.
- (b) *a × i, i, a*: (3) *cadēre (-cīdēre, -cīdi), tangēre (-tingēre, -tīgi,  
 -tactum)*.
- (c) *a × i, i, e*: (3) *canēre (-cinēre, -cīnui, -centum), rapēre  
 (-ripēre, -ripūi, -reptum)*.
- (d) *a × i, e, e*: (3) *capēre (-cipēre, -cēpi, -ceptum), facēre  
 (-ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum), jacēre (-jicēre, -jēcī, -jectum),  
 lacēre (-licēre, -lexī, -lectum)*. Exc. *benefacēre* and  
 many other compounds of *facēre (-fācēre, -fēcī, -factum),  
 elicēre, elicui, elicītum*.
- (e) *a × i, i, u*: (4) *salire (-silire, -silui, -sultum)*.
- (f) *a × i, e*: (2) *fatēri (-fitēri, -fessus)*; (3) *apisci (-ipisci,  
 -eptus)*.

\* The Greek form *ec* (*ἐκ*) must be assumed when *expecto, exul, &c.*, are written for *ec-specto, ec-sul, &c.*

- (g) *e x i, i, e*: (2) *tenēre* (-*tinēre*, -*tinui*, -*tentum*).  
 (h) *e x i, e, e*: (2) *sedēre* (-*sidēre*, -*sēdi*, -*sessum*); (3) *regēre* (-*rigēre*, -*rexī*, -*rectum*), *specēre* (-*spicēre*, -*spexī*, -*spec-tum*), *premēre* (-*primēre*, -*pressi*, -*pressum*), *emēre* (-*imēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emptum*), *legēre* (-*ligēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*). **Exc.** *circumsedēre*, *pergēre* (*perrexi*, *perrectum*), *surgēre* (*surrexi*, *surrectum*); *co-*, *per-*, *inter-* (-*emēre*, -*ēmi*, -*emptum*). Also *sublegēre* (-*lēgi*, -*lectum*), *di-ligēre*, *neg-legēre*, *intelligēre* (-*lexi*, -*lectum*). These four last are from *legēre*, *to choose*. The compounds of *legēre*, *to read*, are *per-*, *prae-*, *re-* (-*legēre*, -*lēgi*, -*lectum*).

## EXAMPLES OF COMPOUND VERBS.

- |                                      |                                        |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| a. (1) <i>Condemno, condemn</i>      | Conticeo, <i>be silent</i>             |
| Objecto, <i>cast forward</i>         | (3) <i>Desipio, be silly</i>           |
| Delecto, <i>delight</i>              | <i>Restituo, restore</i>               |
| Impet̄ro, <i>obtain (by asking)</i>  | g. (a) (3) <i>Abigo, drive away</i>    |
| Consēcro, <i>consecrate</i>          | <i>Refringo, beat back</i>             |
| Obtrecto, <i>disparage</i>           | <i>Impingo, knock against</i>          |
| (2) <i>Coerceo, confine</i>          | (b) (3) <i>Oc̄ido, die</i>             |
| (3) <i>Incendo, set on fire</i>      | <i>Attingo, reach</i>                  |
| <i>Excerpo, cull</i>                 | (c) (3) <i>Succino, sing low</i>       |
| <i>Ascendo, climb</i>                | <i>Diripio, tear asunder</i>           |
| <i>Dispergo, disperse</i>            | (d) (3) <i>Decipio, deceive</i>        |
| <i>Progredior, go forward</i>        | <i>Efficio, effect</i>                 |
| <i>Perpetior, endure</i>             | <i>Ejicio, cast out</i>                |
| (4) <i>Infercio, stuff in</i>        | <i>Allicio, allure</i>                 |
| <i>Dispertior, distribute</i>        | (e) (4) <i>Circumsilio, leap round</i> |
| b. (1) <i>Proculco, trample down</i> | (f) (2) <i>Diffiteor, disown</i>       |
| <i>Insulto, insult, leap on</i>      | (3) <i>Adipiscor, acquire</i>          |
| (3) <i>Decutio, shake down</i>       | (g) (2) <i>Abstineo, abstain</i>       |
| c. (3) <i>Oc̄ido, kill</i>           | (h) (2) <i>Praesideo, preside</i>      |
| <i>Collido, dash together</i>        | (3) <i>Porrigo, stretch</i>            |
| <i>Acquiro, acquire</i>              | <i>Transpicio, look through</i>        |
| d. (3) <i>Inclūdo, shut in</i>       | <i>Opprimo, weigh down</i>             |
| e. (3) <i>Explōdo, stamp off</i>     | <i>Eximo, take out</i>                 |
| f. (2) <i>Prohibeo, prohibit</i>     | <i>Colligo, collect</i>                |
| <i>Displaceo, displease</i>          | <i>Diligo, love</i>                    |
|                                      | <i>Perlēgo, read through</i>           |

*Note.*—The Compounds of Verbs which reduplicate the Perfect omit the Reduplication in their Perfects, except those of *disco*, *posco*, *curro*, *do*, *sto*.

## III. CORRELATIVE PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES.

The full series comprises—1 Interrogative; 2 Demonstratives; 3 Relative; 4 Indefinite; 5 Universals. These last are subdivisible under several heads. In the following list the dual series (*uter*, &c.) is marked \*.

## PRONOUNS.

- |                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>Quis? qui? who? what?</i> | <i>Idem, the same</i>              |
| * <i>Uter? which of two?</i>   | <i>Alius, another</i>              |
| 2 <i>Is, ille, iste, that</i>  | * <i>Alter, the one, the other</i> |
| <i>Hic, this</i>               | 3 <i>Qui, who</i>                  |

- 4<sup>r</sup> Quis, qui, *any one*  
 Aliquis, aliqui, *some one*  
 Quispiam, *any one*  
 Quisquam, ullus, *any at all*  
 Quidam, *a certain one*  
 \*Alteruter, *one or other*  
 5 a. Quisquis, quicumque, *whosoever, whatsoever*  
 \*Uteruter, uterumque, *which-soever*
- b. Quivis, quilibet, *any you will*  
 \*Utervis, uterlibet, *which you will*  
 c. Quisque, *each (of several)*  
 Omnes, universi, *all*  
 \*Uterque, *each (of two)*  
 \*Ambo, *both*  
 d. Nemo, nullus, *no one, none*  
 \*Neuter, *neither*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHERE.

- 1 Ubi? *where?*  
 \*Utrobi? *in which place?*  
 2 Ibi, illic, istic, *there*  
 Hic, *here*  
 Ibidem, *in the same place*  
 Alibi, *elsewhere*  
 3 Ubi, *where*  
 4 Ubi, alicubi, uspiam, *anywhere*  
 Usquam, *anywhere at all*
- 5 a. Ubiubi, ubicumque, *where-soever*  
 b. Ubivis, ubilibet, *where you will*  
 c. Ubique, *everywhere*  
 \*Utrobique, *in both places*  
 d. Nusquam, *nowhere*  
 \*Neutrubi, *in neither place*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHITHER.

- 1 Quo? *whither?*  
 \*Utro? *to which place?*  
 2 Eo, illuc, istuc, *thither*  
 Huc, *hither*  
 Eodem, *to the same place*  
 Alio, *to another place*  
 3 Quo, *whither*  
 4 Quo, quopiam, *anywhither;*  
 aliquo, *somewhither*
- Quoquam, *anywhither at all*  
 5 a. Quoquo, quocumque, *whither-soever*  
 b. Quovis, quolibet, *whither you will*  
 c. \*Utroque, *to each place*  
 d. \*Neutro, *to neither place.*

## ADVERBS OF PLACE WHENCE.

- 1 Unde, *whence?*  
 2 Inde, illinc, istinc, *thence*  
 Hinc, *hence*  
 Indidem, *from the same side*  
 Aliunde, *from another side*  
 3 Unde, *whence*  
 4 Unde, alicunde, *from some side*
- 5 a. Undeunde, Undecumque, *from whatever side*  
 b. Undevis, undelibet, *from what side you will*  
 c. Undique, *from every side*  
 \*Utrimque, *from each side* †

## ADVERBS OF TIME WHEN.

- 1 Quando? ubi? *when?*  
 2 Tum, tunc, *then*  
 Nunc, jam, *now*  
 Simul, *at the same time*  
 Alias, *at another time*  
 3 Quum, ubi, *when*
- 4 Quando, aliquando, *ever*  
 Umquam, *ever at all*  
 5 a. Quandocumque, *whensoever*  
 c. Quandoque, *at any time*  
 Semper, *always*  
 d. Numquam, *never*

† So quā, *in what direction?* eā, hāc, aliā, quā, aliquā, quaquā, &c.  
 quorsum, *whitherward?* illorsum, aliquorsum, &c.  
 See the series of qualis, quantus, quot, § 38 (9).

## ADVERBS OF NUMBER.

- |                                           |                                              |
|-------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1 Quotiens? <i>how often?</i>             | 4 Aliquotiens, <i>several times</i>          |
| 2 Totiens, <i>so often</i>                | 5 a. Quotienscumque, <i>how often soever</i> |
| 3 Quotiens, ( <i>as often</i> ) <i>as</i> |                                              |

## ADVERBS OF MANNER.

- |                                                                                                      |                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 Quomodo? quemadmodum?<br>ut? quam? <i>how?</i>                                                     | 3 Quomodo, quemadmodum, ut,<br><i>as</i>                                               |
| 2 Ita, sic, tam, <i>so</i><br>Item, itidem, <i>in like manner</i><br>Aliter, secus, <i>otherwise</i> | Ac, atque, quam, <i>as, than</i><br>5 a. Utut, utcumque, quam-<br><i>quam, however</i> |

## ADVERBS OF CAUSE.

- 1 Cur? quare? *why? wherefore?*  
 2 Ideo, propterea, idcirco, *on that account*  
 3 Cur, quare, *why*; quod, quia, *because*

## CORRELATION BETWEEN A DEMONSTRATIVE ADVERB AND A CONJUNCTION APPEARS ALSO IN

- |                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (1) Consecutive Construction:<br>Adeo, ita, sic, tam, tantum,<br>&c., <i>so, so much, &amp;c.</i><br>ut, ut non, ut nihil, ut<br>nemo, &c., <i>that, &amp;c.</i> | Usque, eo, &c., <i>so long, &amp;c.</i><br>dum, donec, quoad, <i>until.</i>                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| (2) Final Construction:<br>Idcirco, ideo, &c., <i>for the purpose, &amp;c.</i><br>ut, ne, ut ne, ne quis, &c.,<br><i>that, &amp;c.</i>                           | (4) Conditional Construction:<br>Modo, tantum, tantummo-<br>do, <i>only, &amp;c.</i><br>si, <i>if</i> (or omitting si).                                                                                                                                                                             |
| (3) Temporal Construction:<br>Tum, tunc, <i>then</i><br>quum, <i>when</i><br>Interea, <i>meantime</i><br>dum, <i>whilst</i>                                      | (5) Concessive Construction:<br>Tamen, <i>yet, nevertheless</i><br>etsi, etiamsi, quamquam,<br>quamvis, &c., <i>although, &amp;c.</i><br>(6) Comparative Construction:<br>Ita, perinde, proinde, simi-<br>liter, itidem, <i>just so, &amp;c.</i><br>quasi, ac si, ut si, &c., <i>as if, &amp;c.</i> |

## IV. NUMERALS, MONEY, TIME.

## A. NUMERALS.

The Cardinal Numbers are those on which the other Numerals hinge (*cardo, hinge*). Unus is used in the Plural with Substantives 'Plural only': una castra, *one camp*. But for higher numbers the Distributives are used: bina castra, *two camps*.

Ordinal Numerals denote numerical rank (*ordo*): primus, *first*, &c.

Distributive Numerals denote so many each or at each time: Sexageni caedunt singulos, *sixty men beat each (centurion)*.—TAC. Poets often use them for the Cardinal Numbers.

Numeral Adverbs denote the *number of times* that anything happens or is done: semel, *once*; bis, *twice*; &c.

| <i>Roman Symbols.</i> | <i>Cardinalia.</i>                            | <i>Ordinalia.</i>                                     | <i>Distributiva.</i> | <i>Adverbia.</i>          |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|---------------------------|
| I.                    | unus                                          | primus                                                | singuli              | semel                     |
| II.                   | duo                                           | secundus or alter                                     | bini                 | bis                       |
| III.                  | tres                                          | tertius                                               | terni or trini       | ter                       |
| IV.                   | quattuor                                      | quartus                                               | quaterni             | quater                    |
| V.                    | quinque                                       | quintus                                               | quini                | quinqüiens                |
| VI.                   | sex                                           | sextus                                                | seni                 | sexiens                   |
| VII.                  | septem                                        | septimus                                              | septeni              | septiens                  |
| VIII.                 | octo                                          | octavus                                               | octoni               | octiens                   |
| IX.                   | novem                                         | nonus                                                 | noveni               | noviens                   |
| X.                    | decem                                         | decimus                                               | deni                 | deciens                   |
| XI.                   | undecim                                       | undecimus                                             | undeni               | undeciens                 |
| XII.                  | duodecim                                      | duodecimus                                            | duodeni              | duodeciens                |
| XIII.                 | tredecim                                      | tertius decimus                                       | terni deni           | tredeciens                |
| XVIII.                | duodeviginti                                  | duodevicesimus                                        | duodevicensi         | duodeviciens              |
| XIX.                  | undeviginti                                   | undevicesimus                                         | undevicensi          | undeviciens               |
| XX.                   | viginti                                       | vicesimus                                             | vicensi              | viciens                   |
| XXI.                  | { unus et vi-<br>ginti or vi-<br>ginti unus } | { primus et vice-<br>simus or vice-<br>simus primus } | vicensi singuli      | { semel et vi-<br>ciens } |
| XXX.                  | triginta                                      | tricesimus                                            | tricensi             | triciens                  |
| XL.                   | quadraginta                                   | quadagesimus                                          | quadrageni           | quadragiens               |
| L.                    | quingenta                                     | quingagesimus                                         | quingageni           | quingagiens               |
| LX.                   | sexaginta                                     | sexagesimus                                           | sexageni             | sexagiens                 |
| LXX.                  | septuaginta                                   | septuagesimus                                         | septuageni           | septuagiens               |
| LXXX.                 | octoginta                                     | octogesimus                                           | octogeni             | octogiens                 |
| XC.                   | nonaginta                                     | nonagesimus                                           | nonageni             | nonagiens                 |
| C.                    | centum                                        | centesimus                                            | centeni              | centiens                  |
| CC.                   | ducenti                                       | ducentesimus                                          | ducenti              | ducentiens                |
| D or IO.              | quingenti                                     | quingentesimus                                        | quingeni             | quingentiens              |
| M or CIO.             | mille                                         | millesimus                                            | singula milia        | miliens                   |
| MM.                   | duo milia                                     | bis millesimus                                        | bina milia           | bis miliens               |

e. The General Rules for writing Compound Numbers, Cardinal, Ordinal, and Distributive, are as follows:—

(1) In Compound Numbers less than 20, either the smaller number without *et* precedes the larger, or the larger with *et* precedes the smaller: *Nos Tyndaritani in septemdecim populis Siciliae numeramur, we of Tyndaris are reckoned among the 17 nations of Sicily.*—CIC. *Roscius fundos decem et tres reliquit, Roscius left 13 farms.*—CIC. *Licet dicere decimus et septimus pro septimus decimus.*—PRISC.

(2) In Compound Numbers above 20, either the smaller number with *et* comes first, or the larger without *et*: *Romulus septem et triginta regnavit annos, Romulus reigned 37 years.*—CIC. *Dentes tricensi bini viris attribuuntur, to men are assigned 32 teeth.*—PLIN.

(3) In Compound Numbers above 100, the larger with or without *et* generally precedes the smaller: *Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos, Gorgias of Leontini completed 107 years.*—CIC. *Olympiade centesima quartâ-decimâ Lysippus fuit, Lysippus lived in the 114th Olympiad.*—PLIN.

(4) The thousands are expressed either by prefixing the numeral





## C. TIME.—THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

Every Roman month had three chief days: Kalendæ (Calends), Nonæ (Nones), Idus (Ides). The Calends were always the 1st day of the month; the Nones were usually on the 5th; the Ides on the 13th; but in four months the Nones were on the 7th, the Ides on the 15th.

March, May, July, October; these are they  
Make Nones the 7th, Ides the 15th day.

These three days, the Calends, Nones, and Ides, were taken as points, from which the other days were counted backwards. That is, the Romans did not say, such and such a day *after*, &c., but such and such a day *before* the Calends, or Nones, or Ides. The rules are: (1) For days before the Calends subtract the day of the month from the number of days in the month increased by two; (2) For days before the Nones or Ides subtract from the day on which they fall, increased by one.

*Examples.*—May 31, *Pridie Kalendas Junias*.

„ 30, *Ante diem tertium* (a.d. III.) *Kal. Jun.*

„ 11, „ „ *quintum* (a.d. V.) *Id. Mai.*

„ 2, „ „ *sextum* (a.d. VI.) *Non. Mai.*

| English Month. | MARTIUS, MAIUS, JULIUS, OCTOBER, 31 Days. | JANUARIUS, AUGUSTUS, DECEMBER, 31 Days. | APRILIS, JUNIUS, SEPTEMBER, NOVEMBER, 30 Days. | FEBRUARIUS, 28 Days—in every fourth Year 29. |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1              | Kalendis                                  | Kalendis                                | Kalendis                                       | Kalendis                                     |
| 2              | a.d. VI.                                  | a.d. IV.                                | a.d. IV.                                       | a.d. IV.                                     |
| 3              | a.d. V.                                   | a.d. III.                               | a.d. III.                                      | a.d. III.                                    |
| 4              | a.d. IV.                                  | Pridie                                  | Pridie                                         | Pridie                                       |
| 5              | a.d. III.                                 | Nonis                                   | Nonis                                          | Nonis                                        |
| 6              | Pridie                                    | a.d. VIII.                              | a.d. VIII.                                     | a.d. VIII.                                   |
| 7              | Nonis                                     | a.d. VII.                               | a.d. VII.                                      | a.d. VII.                                    |
| 8              | a.d. VIII.                                | a.d. VI.                                | a.d. VI.                                       | a.d. VI.                                     |
| 9              | a.d. VII.                                 | a.d. V.                                 | a.d. V.                                        | a.d. V.                                      |
| 10             | a.d. VI.                                  | a.d. IV.                                | a.d. IV.                                       | a.d. IV.                                     |
| 11             | a.d. V.                                   | a.d. III.                               | a.d. III.                                      | a.d. III.                                    |
| 12             | a.d. IV.                                  | Pridie                                  | Pridie                                         | Pridie                                       |
| 13             | a.d. III.                                 | Idibus                                  | Idibus                                         | Idibus                                       |
| 14             | Pridie                                    | a.d. XIX.                               | a.d. XVIII.                                    | a.d. XVI.                                    |
| 15             | Idibus                                    | a.d. XVIII.                             | a.d. XVII.                                     | a.d. XV.                                     |
| 16             | a.d. XVII.                                | a.d. XVII.                              | a.d. XVI.                                      | a.d. XIV.                                    |
| 17             | a.d. XVI.                                 | a.d. XVI.                               | a.d. XV.                                       | a.d. XIII.                                   |
| 18             | a.d. XV.                                  | a.d. XV.                                | a.d. XIV.                                      | a.d. XII.                                    |
| 19             | a.d. XIV.                                 | a.d. XIV.                               | a.d. XIII.                                     | a.d. XI.                                     |
| 20             | a.d. XIII.                                | a.d. XIII.                              | a.d. XII.                                      | a.d. X.                                      |
| 21             | a.d. XII.                                 | a.d. XII.                               | a.d. XI.                                       | a.d. IX.                                     |
| 22             | a.d. XI.                                  | a.d. XI.                                | a.d. X.                                        | a.d. VIII.                                   |
| 23             | a.d. X.                                   | a.d. X.                                 | a.d. IX.                                       | a.d. VII.                                    |
| 24             | a.d. IX.                                  | a.d. IX.                                | a.d. VIII.                                     | a.d. VI.                                     |
| 25             | a.d. VIII.                                | a.d. VIII.                              | a.d. VII.                                      | a.d. V.                                      |
| 26             | a.d. VII.                                 | a.d. VII.                               | a.d. VI.                                       | a.d. IV.                                     |
| 27             | a.d. VI.                                  | a.d. VI.                                | a.d. V.                                        | a.d. III.                                    |
| 28             | a.d. V.                                   | a.d. V.                                 | a.d. IV.                                       | Pridie                                       |
| 29             | a.d. IV.                                  | a.d. IV.                                | a.d. III.                                      |                                              |
| 30             | a.d. III.                                 | a.d. III.                               | Pridie                                         |                                              |
| 31             | Pridie                                    | Pridie                                  |                                                |                                              |

[In Leap-year, Feb. 24th (a.d. VI. *Kal. Mart.*) was twice reckoned,—hence this day was called *DIES BISSEXTUS*, and leap-year itself *ANNUS BISSEXTUS*.]

## V. ABBREVIATIONS.

## (1) PRAENOMINA.

|              |               |                      |
|--------------|---------------|----------------------|
| A. Aulus     | K. Kaeso      | Q. Quintus           |
| C. } Gaius   | L. Lucius     | S. (Sex.) Sextus     |
| G. }         | M. Marcus     | Ser. Servius         |
| Cn. } Gnaeus | M'. Manius    | Sp. Spurius          |
| Gn. }        | Mam. Mamercus | T. Titus             |
| D. Decimus   | P. Publius    | Ti. (Tib.) Tiberius. |

*Note.*—A Roman of distinction had at least three names: the Praenomen, individual name; the Nomen, name showing the Gens or clan; and the Cognomen, surname showing the Familia or family. Thus, Lucius Junius Brutus expressed Lucius of the Gens Junia and Familia Brutorum. To these were sometimes added one or more Agnomina, titles either of honour (as Africanus, Macedonicus, Magnus, &c.), or expressing that a person had been adopted from another Gens, as Aemilianus, applied to the younger Scipio Africanus, who was the son of L. Paulus Aemilius, but adopted by a Scipio. The full name of the emperor Augustus (originally an Octavius) after he had been adopted by his uncle's will and adorned by the Senate with a title of honour, was Gaius Julius Caesar Octavianus Augustus.

## (2) VARIA.

|                              |                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| A. D. Ante diem              | HS. Sestertius, Sestertium   | P. R. Populus Romanus           |
| A. U. C. Anno urbis conditae | Id. Idus                     | Pl. Plebis                      |
| Aed. Aedilis                 | Imp. Imperator               | Proc. Proconsul                 |
| Cal. (Kal.) Calendae         | L. Libra                     | S. Senatus                      |
| Cos. Consul                  | LL. Dupondius                | S. P. Q. R. Senatus             |
| Coss. Consules               | Non. Nonae                   | Populusque Romanus              |
| D. Divus                     | O. M. Optimus Maximus        | S. C. Senatusconsultum          |
| Des. Designatus              | P. C. Patres (et) Conscripti | S. D. P. Salutem dicit plurimam |
| Eq. Rom. Eques Romanus       | P. M. Pontifex Maximus       | Tr. Tribunus.                   |
| F. Filius                    |                              |                                 |

## II. NOTES ON SYNTAX.

## I. AGREEMENT. § 88-92. § 156-160.

A. The Subject (§ 88) may be any Noun-term, § 87. B. a.

Adjective (§ 89) includes Participles and Adjective Pronouns.

An Adjective agrees as Epithet with a Substantive: as Compliment with any Noun-term, § 87 E.

B. Adjectives are used as Substantives (§ 156).

1. In the Masc. Sing. and Pl., *man* or *men* being implied: *amicus*, a friend; *sapiens*, a wise man; *stultus*, a fool; *boni*, good men; *multi*, many; *plerique*, most.

2. In the Neut. Sing. abstractly: *Honestum et utile*, morality and expediency.—Cic. *Triste lupus stabulis*, the wolf is a bane to the stalls.

—VERG.

3. In the Neut. Pl., *things* being implied: *multa*, many things; *omnia*, all things.

C. The term Substantive (§ 90) includes all Noun-terms.

A Substantive may be (§ 87. F.) in Apposition to any Noun-term, as Appositive Epithet or Complement.

An Apposite usually agrees in Number also with its Noun, sometimes in Gender: *Usus magister egregius.*—PLIN. *Vita rustica parsimoniae magistra est.*—CIC.

D. The use of the Relative (§ 91) may be shewn by placing it between two Noun-terms, with the former of which it agrees in Gender, Number, and Person, with the latter in Case:

*Vir quem virum vides rex est* (Full Form).

*Vir quem . . . . . vides rex est* (Usual Form).

*. . . quem virum vides rex est.*

*. . . quem . . . . . vides rex est.*

But it may refer to a Noun-term of any Person, ego, nos, tu, vos, &c.

E. Figures varying Agreement (§ 158–160):—

1. Ellipsis omits words: (1) Pronouns; *Aiunt, they say*: (2) Substantives; *Falernum, Falernian* (vinum, *wine*), *gelida* (aqua), *cold water*; *ad Junonis, to Juno's* (templum, *temple*). (3) Verbs, especially the Copulants *est, sunt.* See § 158.

Emphasis throws stress on words: *Ego reges ejeci, vos tyrannos introducitis, I expelled kings, ye are bringing in tyrants.*—LIV.

2. Attraction removes Agreement from the usual word to some other: *Amantium irae amoris integratio est, the quarrels of lovers are the renewal of love.*—TER.; where *est* agrees with the Complement *integratio*, not with the Subject *irae*.

3. Synesis occurs when words have one Gender or Number in form, another in meaning, and construction is made to agree with meaning:

*Capita conjurationis securi percussi sunt, the heads of the conspiracy were decapitated.*—LIV. *Pars epulis onerant mensas, part load the tables with viands.*—VERG.

Singular Nouns with Plural sense; *pars, juvenus, turba, multitudo, nobilitas, plebs, populus, civitas, volgus, etc.,* are called Collective Nouns, or Nouns of Multitude.

F. A Composite Subject (§ 92) contains two or more Noun-terms. The rule holds good, whether the Nouns are linked by Conjunctions, or without Conjunctions, or united by the Preposition *cum*.

*Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Quirinus with his brother Remus will give laws.*—VERG.

a. A Singular Verb may be used with a Composite Subject when the Nouns form one notion: *Senatus populusque intellegit.*—CIC.

β. The Verb may agree with one of the Nouns, and be understood with the others: *Convicta est Messalina et Silius, Messalina was convicted, and Silius.*—TAC.

γ. As the first Person is prior to the second, and the second to the third, so the Masculine Gender is held in Grammar superior to the Feminine. § 92, 1. 2.

Upon Impersonal Verbs, see § 157, also § 75, &c.

## II. CASES OF SUBJECT AND COMPLEMENT. § 93-94.

These rules show :

- (1) that the Subject of a Verb Finite is a Nominative ;
- (2) that the Subject of an Infinitive is an Accusative ;
- (3) that the Complement of a Copulative Verb, Finite or Infinitive, agrees, if a single Adjective, attributively with the Subject ; if a single Substantive, appositively with the Subject, except in a few instances (§ 108, § 127).

The Complement, in two examples of Rule § 94, follows a Finite Copulative Verb, and agrees with a Nominative Subject ; in two others it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, and agrees with a Nominative Subject ; in the last two it follows an Infinitive Copulative Verb, obliquely used, and agrees with an Accusative Subject.

The Verb *sum* may be completely Predicative, not Copulative, if it denotes absolute existence : *Jam seges est, ubi Troja fuit, now corn is, where Troy was.*—Ov.

Factive Verbs in the Passive Voice are Copulative. See III. D.

## III. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE. § 95-103.

A. When the Verb is Transitive (§ 96), the construction is often without sense until a word is added to express that on which the Verb acts. This is called the Object (or Nearer Object), and stands in the Accusative Case. *Romulus condidit, Romulus founded,* is incomplete in sense until we add *Romam, Rome.*

How to express a Transitive Active Sentence Passively, see IX. E.

B. (1) Transitive Verbs are sometimes used intransitively ; *Jam verterat fortuna, fortune had now turned.*—Liv.

(2) More often Intransitive Verbs become transitive : *Flet necem fili, he weeps for his son's death.*

(3) The Compound of an Intransitive Verb is often transitive : *Hostes urbem circumsedent, the enemies surround the city.*

(4) Passive Verbs used reflexively sometimes become transitive, like Deponents : *Exuitur cornua, she puts off her horns.*—Ov. Hence such constructions as *Nodo sinus collecta fluentes, having gathered up in a knot her flowing folds.*—VERG.

C. The Verbs which take double Accusative (thing and person) (§ 98) are *doceo* (and its compounds), *rogo*, *interrogo*, *oro*, *exoro*, *posco*, *flagito*, *percontor*, and, in Horace, *lacezzo*. Sometimes *celo, conceal.*

In Passive Construction the Accusative of the thing remains : *Quid tu docearis a me litteras ? why should you be taught letters by me ?*

D. Factive Verbs (§ 99) are such as may be said to make (*facere*) a thing to be of a certain character, by deed, word, or thought :

(1) *facio, efficio, reddo, praesto, creo, lego, eligo, &c.* ; (2) *dico, voco, memoro, praedico, nomino, nuncupo, declaro, usurpo, appello, saluto, &c.* ; (3) *aestimo, numero, credo, existimo, puto, duco, judico, habeo, censeo, agnosco, invenio, reperio, deprehendo, &c., &c.*

They are Active forms of those which in the Passive are Copulative Verbs, and Factive Construction in the Passive becomes Copulative :

*Fis dea a nobis, Fortuna : A Romulo urbs sua Roma vocata est.*

*E.* The Accusative of Respect is seldom used in prose, except when it is a Pronoun or an Adjective: *Illud doleo; Hoc laetor; Cetera assentior Crasso, in other things I agree with Crassus.*—CIC

*F.* Many Grammarians deem the original force of the Accusative Case to be, that it marks the limit or object of motion. § 101.

The Prepositions *in, ad*, are generally used by prose writers, if motion to other places than towns or small islands is mentioned.

#### IV. THE DATIVE CASE. § 104–109.

*A.* Words whose sense is incomplete without reference to a Recipient (105) are called Trajective. Thus *carus, dear*, necessarily implies, *dear to some one*; *dare, to give*, necessarily implies not only a thing given, but a person to whom it is given. Trajective words take a Dative of this object of reference. Verbs of this sort, if they take a Dative only (*parco, faveo, irascor, &c.*), are purely Trajective: if they take an Accusative also, they are both Trajective and Transitive, such as *do, narro, spondeo, &c.*

*B.* The fundamental notion of the Dative (§ 106) seems to be Nearness, with its opposite Remoteness. The First Class, then, of Trajective words is composed of those which contain the ideas of *nearness and remoteness, presence and absence, affinity and non-affinity, custom and strangeness, fitness and unfitness, likeness and unlikeness, agreement and disagreement, union and disunion, comparison and contrast*. Next, *shewing and being shewn* is the bringing near or being brought near to the eye, ear, or (generally) to the mind. Herein we include the Second Class, words of *utterance and silence, narration and concealment, affirmation and denial, evidence and obscurity, persuasion and dissuasion*. We are hence led on to the Third Class, a large body of words which express application or exhibition with the attendant notion of *favour or disfavour*. These comprise words which express *profit and harm, kindness and unkindness, bounty and stint, indulgence and grudging, help and obstruction, pleasing and displeasing, pardon and resentment, flattery and reviling, blessing and malediction, compliance and resistance, promise and menace, gift, loan, present, payment, dedication, and refusal; delivery and withdrawal; faith and infidelity, trust and distrust, lawfulness and unlawfulness, ease and difficulty*. There are yet a few words, which share something of the character of both the two last-mentioned classes, and may conveniently form a Fourth Class. These are words which express *rule and subservience, command and obedience*.

*C.* The reason why many Verbs compounded with Particles (106 a.) become Trajective, is, that the Particle confers upon them one or other of the notions enumerated above: most frequently that of Nearness.

*D.* The reason why a Dative of that *for which* anything is or happens (Dativus Commodi vel Incommodi, § 107) may be attached to almost any predication, is because almost any action or state may be attended with some result to some Recipient; it may be *for* or *against* some one's interest; in some way *interesting* to some one. Thus *nubere* means 'to take the bridal veil,' and a bride is said, '*nubere viro*,' 'to take the veil for her husband,' that is, 'to marry him.' *Vacare* means 'to be void,' or 'empty:' hence, 'to be disengaged *for*,' that is, 'to have leisure *for*:'

as, vacare philosophiae. Here, too, may be ranked the Ethic Dative, the Dative with *sum*, with Participles, Gerunds, &c.

*E.* Some Adjectives in the classes named prefer the construction of ad with Accusative to that of the Dative: such are *natus*, *aptus*, *utilis*, *idoneus*, *paratus*, *rudis*, &c.: *Ad laudem et ad decus nati sumus*, *we are born to praise and glory*.—CIC.

Others use *in*, *erga*, *adversus*: *Acer in hostem*, *spirited against the foe*.—VERG. *Benignus erga te fui*, *I was kind towards you*.—PLAUT.

*Communis*, *proprius*, *affinis*, *similis*, *par*, and some other Adjectives, take a Dative or a Genitive Case.

*F.* Some Verbs belonging in sense to the classes named above (*B*) take Accusative and not Dative: *juvo*, *jubeo*, *laedo*, *rego*, *guberno*. *Multos castra juvant*, *the camp delights many*. *Animum rege*, *rule the temper*.—HOR.

Others use Dative or Accusative: *tempero*, *moderor*.

The construction of Verbs varies considerably, owing to the use of Prepositions and other causes. Thus we find *donare alicui munus* and *donare aliquem munere*, *invidere alicui*, *invidere rem alicui*, *invidere re aliquem*.

*G.* The English Prepositions chiefly used in rendering the Latin Dative are *to* and *for*. But after some Adjectives and Verbs (*iratus*, *succenseo*, &c.) *with* must be used; after some Verbs (*disto*, *aufero*, &c.), *from*; after many Compound Verbs, *upon*, *into*, or *against*. Others, *parco*, *placeo*, *displaceo*, *medeor*, &c., are rendered without an English Preposition.

*H.* The Dative after a Finite Passive Verb is rare: *Non intellegor ulli*, *I am not understood by anybody*.—OV. So is the Dative after a Verb of motion: *It clamor caelo*, *a cry ascends to heaven*.—VERG.

#### V. THE ABLATIVE CASE. § 110-125.

*A.* When the Ablative stands without a Latin Preposition, it is rendered with the help of various English Prepositions; namely, I. Cause, *by*, *for*, *from*, *through*, *with*, *at*. II. Instrument, *with*, *by*. III. Manner: *in*, *with*, *by*. IV. Condition: *with*, *in*, *upon*. V. Quality: *of*, *with*. VI. Respect, *in*, *by*, *with*. VII. Value or Price: *at*, *for*, *of*, *with*. VIII. Measure: *by*, or no Preposition. IX. Matter: *of*, *in*, *with*, *from*, *upon*, *for*, or no Preposition. X. Time: *at*, *in*, *within*, or no Preposition. XI. *A.* Place by which: *by*, *along*, *upon*, *through*. *B.* Place where: *at*, *in*, *upon* (*humi*). *G.* Place from which: *from*. XII. (See Prepositions). XIII. Separation and Origin: *from*, *of*. XIV. Thing compared: *than*.

*B.* The use of the Simple Ablative in most of these meanings is varied considerably by the introduction of Latin Prepositions. Thus Cause may be expressed by *ab*, *de*, *ex*, *prae*; also by *ob*, *per*, *propter*, with Accusative. Agent requires *a*, *ab*; while Instrument is without Preposition. Manner without an Epithet requires '*cum*,' (except in a few phrases, such as *vi*, *fraude*, *jure*, *injuriâ*, *ritu*, *silentio*, *arte*, *ordine*, &c.). Thus, *I speak with grief*, or *he writes with diligence*, cannot be rendered *dolore loquor*, *diligentiâ scribit*, but *cum dolore loquor* (or *dolens loquor*), *cum diligentiâ scribit* (or *diligenter scribit*).

If an Epithet is joined to this Ablative, the Preposition is often used, often omitted; and observation must determine the choice of construction: *Cato summā contentione dixit, Cato spoke with the utmost energy, —CIC. Magnā cum curā atque diligentia scripsit, he wrote with great care and diligence.—CIC.*

C. The Case of Quality, whether Ablative or Genitive, requires an Epithet. § 115.

D. The Ablative of Price is used with Verbs and Adjectives implying sale, purchase, dearness, cheapness, cost, &c.

*Muto, I change*, may have Accus. of what is left, and Abl. of what is taken, or (in poetry) the converse. Thus, *mutare urbem exilio*, and *mutare urbe exilium* may equally mean '*to quit the city and go into banishment.*'

*Pretio* is often dropt: *magno, dear; parvo, vili, cheap.* § 117.

E. The Ablative of Measure defines Verbs and Adjectives of Extent and Degree, especially Comparative and Superlative Words.

For this purpose in particular are used the Pronominal Ablatives *hoc, eo, quo, altero, tanto, quanto, aliquanto*: also *paulo, multo, duplo, dimidio, nihilo, nimio, &c.*: *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt, the more they have, the more they desire.* § 118.

F. The use of Prepositions in defining Time (§ 120) is frequent:

*Sol binas in singulis annis reversiones facit, the sun makes two turns in each year.—CIC. De die, before the close of day. De nocte, before the close of night. De multā nocte, long before the close of night. Sub vesperum, on the approach of evening. Diem ex die expecto, I wait day after day.* In is usually prefixed to an Ablative of time when a numeral Adverb follows: *Quidam oves in anno bis tondent, some shear sheep twice a year.—VARR.*

G. 1. Generally *Place where* (§ 121 B.) is expressed with *in*: *in portu navigo.—SEN.* In is omitted in certain phrases:

*Loco (in the stead), multis locis, pluribus locis, &c.; hoc libro, alio libro, &c.; terrā marique; or where totus is used: totā Asiā, in all Asia, dextrā (parte), on the right hand, laevā, sinistrā, on the left hand.*

Poets are more free in the omission: *Silvisque agrisque viisque corpora foeda jacent, in forests and fields and roads lie revolting corpses.—OV.* But this license needs discrimination.

When a work is quoted *in* is used: *in Iliade Homeri; in Andriā Terentii; in Gorgiā Platonis*; but when the author only is cited, *apud; apud Homerum; apud Terentium; apud Platonem (in Homer, &c.).*

2. That the seeming Genitive, *Romae, Corinthi, &c.* (§ 121 B. a.), is not strictly such, was perceived by ancient Grammarians, who call it an Adverb. But if we notice that it ends in *i*, *Romai (Romae), militiæ (militiæ) Miletī, domi, humi, belli*; and compare the old forms of place in the Third Declension ending in *i*, *ruri, Lacedaemoni*—*NEP.*; *Carthagini*—*LIV.*; *Tiburi*—*CIC., &c.*; we cannot doubt the original existence in the Latin language, as in the Sanskrit, of a Locative Case ending in *i* Singular, in *s* Plural.

3. Prepositions are much used with names of towns:

*In Epheso est. In Ephesum abii. Ex Epheso huc litteras misi, I sent a letter to this place from Ephesus.—PLAUT. Has litteras a Brundisio dedit, this letter he dated from Brundisium.—CIC.*

*H.* The usage of Verbs and Participles of Separation and Origin (§ 123) must be carefully observed, some of them taking or omitting the Preposition in prose: arceo, cedo, moveo, pello, prohibeo, summoveo, removeo: others requiring a Preposition in prose, but not in poetry; alieno, discedo, disjungo, dispello, disto, divello, repello, reporto, rejicio, segrego, secerno, separo, &c. The chief Participles are natus, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, editus, oriundus, &c.

*K. 1.* The Case of the word with which the Ablative is compared (§ 124) is much oftener a Nominative than an Accusative. In comparison with other cases quam must be used: Nulli flebilior quam tibi, Vergili, *to none more a cause of weeping than to thee, Vergilius.*—HOR. Flagiti magis nos pudet quam erroris, *we are more ashamed of the crime than of the blunder.*—CIC. And, in general, for the sake of perspicuity: Segnius homines bona quam mala sentiunt, *men feel blessings less keenly than evils.*—LIV.

*2.* After plus, amplius, minus, an ellipse of quam often occurs before Numerals: Romani paulo plus sexcenti ceciderunt, *of the Romans rather more than 600 fell.*—LIV. Unus is omitted: Quinctius tecum plus annum vixit, *Quinctius lived with you more than a year.*—CIC.

*L. 1.* The Ablative Absolute (§ 125) being an abridged Clause, the Participle may often be transformed into a Finite Verb with Conjunction. Thus, in the example, Regibus exactis = postquam reges exacti sunt.

*2.* A common instance of Substantive put Absolutely with Substantive is that of *consule* or *consulibus*: Caninio consule scito neminem prandisse, *in the consulship of Caninius you must know that nobody dined.* CIC.

## VI. THE GENITIVE CASE. § 126–136.

*A. 1.* The Genitive is Subjective when it limits a Noun like an Attribute; Objective when it limits it like an Object. It is the same thing to say, Sullanus exercitus, or Sullae exercitus, *the army of Sulla*; flamen Martialis, or flamen Martis, *the priest of Mars*; on the other hand, cupido pecuniae is nearly the same as cupere pecuniam. But Adjectives are even used for the Objective Genitive: bellum regium for bellum contra regem; timor externus for timor exterorum. So the Possessive Pronouns; Desiderium vestrum ferre non possum, *I cannot bear the want of you.*—CIC. ‘Native of a place’ is expressed by an Adjective derived from the place: Dionysius Halicarnasseus, for Dionysius Halicarnassus natus, *Dionysius of Halicarnassus.*

*2.* The Possessive Genitive is rendered in English either by *of* or the Genitive in *’s*: Philippi filius, ‘son of Philip,’ or ‘Philip’s son.’

*3.* Instar (an undeclined Substantive meaning *likeness*) stands (with a Genitive) in apposition to a Substantive: Instar montis equum, *a horse resembling a mountain.*—VERG.

*B. (1)* Some suppose interest to be for inter rem est, *refert* for rem fert, and mea, &c., to be corruptions of meam, &c (§ 129).

*(2)* These Verbs may be qualified by the Genitives of Value, magni, parvi, pluris, tanti, quanti: Utriusque nostrum magni interest ut te videam, *it is of great importance to both of us that I see you.*—CIC.



C. 1. The Genitives Rei Distributæ (§ 130) and Rei Demensæ (§ 131) are so far the same, as that each is a divided whole; but the former is numerically divided, the latter quantitatively: the former is Plural unless a Collective Noun; the latter usually Singular.

The Partitive words which govern the former Genitive are—

(α) Pronominals: *alius, alter, uter, uterque, utervis, uterlibet, ullus, nullus, nemo, plerique, multi, pauci, ceteri, reliqui, solus, qui, quis, quicumque, quisquis, quisque, unusquisque, tot, quot, quotcumque, quotusquisque, quisnam, quisquam, aliquis, quidam, quispiam, &c.*

(β) Numerals, Cardinal and Ordinal: *unus, primus: duo, secundus, &c.; also princeps, medius.*

(γ) Comparative and Superlative Adjectives; the former distributing two things: Major Neronum; or one class into two parts: Avium loquaciores, *the noisier sort of birds.*—PLIN. Also Superlative Adverbs.

(δ) Any Adjective, Participle, or Substantive which can imply a distributive meaning: Sancte deorum; lecti juvenum; piscium feminae.

2. Partitives are sometimes attracted in Gender to the Subject:

*Indus est omnium fluminum maximus, the Indus is the largest of all rivers.*—CIC.

Or varied by Synesis: *Dulcissime rerum, dearest of beings.*—HOR.

3. A Collective Noun is distributed:

*Plato totius Graeciae doctissimus, Plato the most learned man of all Greece.*—CIC.

4. This Genitive forms a Complement:

*Fies nobilium tu quoque fontium, thou too shalt become one of the renowned fountains.*—HOR.

5. Adverbs of Place, *ubi, quo, eo, nusquam, &c.*, are Partitively used with the Genitives *gentium, locorum, terrarum, &c.*:

*Nusquam gentium, nowhere in the world.*—LIV.

6. *Primus, ultimus, summus, imus, extremus*, and other like Adjectives are used as Epithets with Partitive force:

*Primâ luce summus mons a Labieno tenebatur, at break of day the top of the mountain was occupied by Labienus.*—CAES.

D. Among Quantitative words governing a Genitive (§ 131) are:

*Nihil, satis, affatim, abunde, nimis, partim, minus, minimum, parum, aliud, id, illud, hoc, idem, quod, quid, aliquid, quidquid, quidquam, multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, aliquantum, nimium dimidium.*

They are usually rendered in English as agreeing with the thing measured: *nimum pecuniae (too much money); nihil mali (no evil).*

They may also be followed by the Genitive of an Adjective of the Second Declension; but an Adjective of the Third is commonly in the same Case with the word of Quantity: *Ne quid falsi dicere audeas, ne quid veri non audeas, you should dare to say nothing false, nothing true not dare to say.*—CIC. *Nec viget quicquam simile aut secundum, and nothing exists like or in second rank.*—HOR.

E. Among poetic Genitives (§ 135) are these:

(1) Cause: *Laudat leti juvenem, he praises the youth for his death.*

(2) Respect: *O seri studiorum, O late in your studies.*

(3) Dominion: *Daunus agrestium regnavit populorum, Daunus ruled over rustic tribes.*

## VII. THE VERB INFINITIVE. § 140-141.

A. The Infinitive when used in direct predication (§ 140, 2.) is called the Historic Infinitive. It appears in poetry as well as prose, (a) in passages descriptive of strong emotion; (b) where various actions take place simultaneously or in immediate sequence; (c) in actions interrupted, and from time to time repeated. It is analogous to the ellipse of the Copula; in fact, both constructions occur together:

*Ceterum facies totius negotii varia, incerta, foeda atque miserabilis; dispersa suis pars cedere, alii insequi: neque signa neque ordines observare: ubi quemque periculum ceperat, ibi resistere ac propulsare; arma, tela, equi, viri, hostes, cives permixti; nihil consilio neque imperio agi; fors omnia regere, now the aspect of the whole affair was confused, indecisive, shocking, and pitiable. Parties scattered from their comrades were some retiring, others advancing; observing neither standards nor ranks; where peril encountered each man, there was he resisting and repelling; arms, darts, steeds, men, foes, countrymen were intermingled; nothing was proceeding by counsel or command; chance directed all.—SALL.* This Infinitive is Imperfect.

B. 1. The Infinitive is Prolatively used when it carries on the construction of Verbs which express ability, desire, custom, beginning, ceasing, seeming, being thought, being said, &c.:

*Possum, queo, nequeo, debeo, volo, nolo, malo, aveo, cupio, gestio, amo, soleo, coepi, incipio, statuo, pergo, conor, meditor, paro, cesso, desino, videor, putor, credor, feror, dicor, trador, memoror, &c.*

Among these Verbs, those which are Copulative (videor, credor, existimor, putor, dicor, narror, feror, trador, reperior, arguor, &c.) are used personally with Infinitive rather than impersonally with Accusative and Infinitive. *Videtur errasse Cicero* is better than *Videtur errasse Ciceronem*; *Dicitur Homerus caecus fuisse*, than *Dicitur Homerum caecum fuisse*.

The Participle Passive is often found after such Verbs with ellipse of *esse*: *Fertur Prometheus coactus, &c., Prometheus is said to have been compelled, &c.—HOR.* *Manlius locutus fertur, LIV.*

2. The construction of an Infinitive with Adjectives abounds in poetry, especially lyric:

*Audax omnia perpeti, bold to endure all things.—HOR.* *Fruges consumere nati, born to consume the fruits.—HOR.*

In the best prose it is used but with few words; *Paratus, assuetus, &c.*; but Tacitus adopts it freely.

C. Under the Dative Gerund (§ 141, 3.) note the phrase, *non esse solvendo, to be insolvent*; and the use of the Dative Gerund and Gerundive in describing functions of office: *Triumviri agro dando, triumvirs for assigning land, &c.*

D. The Transitive Gerund is not always attracted (§ 143):

*Efferor studio patres vestros videndi, I am rapt with the desire of seeing your sires.—CIC.*

Especially when a Neuter Pronoun or Adjective is the Object:

*Pars honesti versatur in tribuendo suum cuique, one branch of morality lies in giving each his own.—CIC.* *Parva non contemnendo majores nostri maximam hanc rem fecerunt, by not despising small things our ancestors made this commonwealth very great.—LIV.*

But, as a general rule, the Gerundive attraction is used.

## VIII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS. § 145.

A. Personal and Possessive Pronouns of the First and Second Persons may be used reflexively; that is, they may be referred to a Subject of *their own* Person. But *se* and *suus* differ from the rest, inasmuch as they cannot be used unless there be a Noun of their own (the Third) Person, expressed or understood, to which they are referred. Although we can say *amat me*, *he loves me*, *amat te*, *he loves thee*; we cannot say, *amo se*, *amas se*, but *amo eum*, *I love him*, *amas eum*, *thou lovest him*; not, *culpo suum factum*, but *culpo ejus factum*, *I blame his deed*.

B. The reference of *se* or *suus* to the Object is not ambiguous

(a) If the Pronoun is an adjunct to the Subject, as in the first and third examples under § 145, a.;

(b) If the Subject is not of the Third Person, as in the 2nd example;

(c) If the context shows that the Pronoun cannot be referred to the Grammatical Subject: *Scipio suas res Syracusanis restituit*, *Scipio restored to the Syracusans their property*.—Lrv. To suppose that *Scipio restored his own property* to the Syracusans would be absurd.

The Object to which *se*, *suus*, are referred, usually precedes: except the Distributive Pronoun *quisque*, which, if so used, generally follows them. *Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam*, *his own character moulds each man's fortune*.—NEP.

When *se*, *suus*, would be improper, in some places is used the Pronoun *is*, in others the Pronoun *ipse*: *Chilius te rogat, et ego ejus rogatu*, *Chilius requests you and I at his request*.—Cic. *Caesar milites incusavit cur de suâ virtute et de ipsius diligentia desperarent*, *Caesar reproachfully asked his troops why they despaired of their own valour and of his carefulness*.—CAES.

## IX. ADDITAMENTA MEMORABILIA.

A. Negatives:—

*Non*, *haud*, deny: *nē* prohibits. *Haud* is chiefly used with Adjectives and Adverbs: *res haud dubia*; *haud temere*, &c. And with a few Verbs: *haud scio*, *haud dubito*.

*Ne* . . . *quidem* has the emphatic word or words between the Particles: *as, Ne tu quidem, not even you*. Either the Verb precedes with another Negative: *Non praetereundum est ne id quidem, even that should not be passed over*.—Cic.; or it follows without one: *Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo, I will not appeal even to Cato*.—Cic. *Nēdum*, with Subjunctive, shows that something is denied a fortiori, when compared with what was denied before. See § 147.

The Pronominal words *quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam*, *usquam*, &c., are used with a Negative or Dubitative Particle: *non*, *haud*, *si*, *num*, &c., *quisquam*, *ullus*, &c. The Negative is contained in *nemo* (*ne-homo*), *nullus* (*ne-ullus*), *numquam*, *nusquam*, *nequiquam*, *nequaquam*, &c.

In Negative Consecutive Clauses are used *ut non*, *ut nemo*, *ut nullus*, *ut numquam*, *ut nusquam*, &c.; but in Final Clauses *ne*, *ut ne*, *ne quis*, *ut ne quis*, *ne quando*, *ut ne quando*, *ne quo*, *ut ne quo*, &c.

*Non quod* (generally), *non quo* (always), take a Subjunctive Verb.

For *et nemo*, write *nec quisquam*; for *et nihil*, *neque quicquam*; for *et nullus*, *neque ullus*; for *et numquam*, *neque umquam*, &c.; for *aio non*, write *nego*.

Neque (nec) is used for et non, except when the negative emphasis falls on a single word: Quaestio difficilis est et non profutura.

Non nihil, *something*; nihil non, *everything*; non numquam, *sometimes*; numquam non, *always*, &c.; non potui non ire, *I could not but go*.

### B. Single and Double Questions.

a. *Single*: Nonne expects the answer *Yes*; num, the answer *No*; -ne is indifferent; an often implies *surprise*, expecting a negative answer.

b. *Double*. The forms are:

|                 |                |
|-----------------|----------------|
| utrum . . . . . | an (or)        |
| num . . . . .   | an (or)        |
| -ne . . . . .   | an (or)        |
| — . . . . .     | an, anne (or). |

A negation in the second member is annon or necne.

a. Qualis est tua mens? potesne dicere? *What sort of thing is your mind? can you tell?*—Cic.

An tu me tristem esse putas? *Do you think I am downcast?*—PLAUT.

Num negare audes? *Do you venture to deny?*—Cic.

Canis nonne similis lupo est? *Is not a dog like a wolf?*—Cic.

b. Haec utrum abundantis an egentis signa sunt? *Are these the tokens of one who abounds or lacks?*—Cic.

Num duas habetis patrias an est illa patria communis? *Have you two countries, or is this your common country?*—Cic.

Romamne venio an hic maneo an Arpinum fugio? *Do I come to Rome, or stay here, or flee to Arpinum?*—Cic.

Quaeram justum sit necne poema, *I will enquire whether it be a true poem or not.*—HOR.

### C. Prepositions:

a. Tenus follows its Case, which is often a Genitive: Tauro tenus, *as far as Mount Taurus*; nutricum tenus, *as far as the breasts*.

b. Ante, circa, circum, circiter, citra, extra, infra, intra, juxta, pone, post, prope, supra, ultra, clam, coram, palam, super, subter, may be used as Adverbs.

c. Among idiomatic Phrases formed by Prepositions, observe: (1) Ad: ad tempus, *for a time*; ad multam noctem, *till late at night*; ad unum, *to a man*; ad tibiam canere, *to sing to the flute*; ad hoc, *furthermore*; ad extremum, *at the last*; ad summum, *in fine*; ad verbum, *word for word*; ad unguem, *to a nicety*; ad amussim, *accurately*; ad decem annos, *ten years hence*; servi ad remum, *slaves for rowing*; ad iudices, *before the judges*; insignis ad laudem, *eminent in renown*; nihil ad te, *nothing compared with you*. (2) Per: per noctem, *during the night*; per litteras, *by letter*; per jocum, *in jest*; per deos te oro, *I pray you by the gods*; per me licet, *I give leave*; res per se expetenda, *a thing in itself desirable*. (3) A, ab: a fronte, *in the van*; a tergo, *in the rear*; a millibus passuum duobus, *two miles off*; prope abest a mari, *he is near the sea*; philosophus a Platone, *a Platonic philosopher*; hoc a me facit, *this is on my side*; proximus a rege, *next to the king*; ab animo aeger sum, *I am sick at heart*; a doctrinā instructus, *well informed*; servus a pedibus, *a footman*; a manu, *an amanuensis*. (4) De: de nocte, *in the night*; de die, *in the daytime*; de meo, *from my own purse*; de

marmore, *of marble*; de more, *according to custom*; de industria, *on purpose*; de novo, *afresh*; justis de causis, *for good reasons*; de Parthis triumphavit, *he triumphed over the Parthians*. (5) E, ex: diem ex die, *day after day*; ex pedibus laborat, *he has the gout in his feet*; e republicā, *for the good of the state*; heres ex asse, *universal heir*; ex improviso, *by surprise*; ex tempore, *offhand*; e vestigio, *suddenly*; e regione Massiliae, *opposite Marseilles*. (6) Prae: prae me beatus es, *you are happy compared with me*; prae dolore tacet, *he is silent from grief*. (7) Pro: pro foribus, *before the door*; pro certo, *for a fact*; pro viribus, *according to one's powers*; pro tuā humanitate, *such is your courtesy*; pro re natā, *in existing circumstances*; pro eo ac potui, *according to my ability*. (8) In: a. frumentum binis assibus in modum, *corn at two asses a peck*; dormire in lucem, *to sleep till daylight*; vocat me ad cenam in hortos in proximum diem, *he invites me to dine the next day in his pleasure-grounds*; in hunc modum locutus est, *he spoke in this wise*; in praesens, *for the time being*; in horas, *from hour to hour*; in aeternum, *for ever*; in universum, *generally*; in vicem, *in turns*. β. in incerto, *in doubt*; in praesenti, *at this moment*; hic non modo in aere alieno nullo, sed in suis nummis multis est, *this man is not only out of debt, but has much ready money of his own*; filius in manu patris, *a son in his father's power*; in tuā manu hoc est, *this is in your power*.

#### D. Participles:

a. The Participles are important elements in Latin, as in Greek, construction. But the Latin language is less rich in Participles than the Greek.

β. A Participle is the Attribute of one that acts, or has acted, or will act; of one that is being acted on, or has been acted on, or will be acted on: to which we must add, of one that is meet for being acted on. A Greek Verb regularly and fully conjugated has Participles (including the Verbal in *τέος*) representing all these categories; but Latin Verbs with Active and Passive Conjugation have the first, third, fifth, and seventh (the Present Act., Future Act., Perfect Pass., and Gerundive) Participles, but want the second, fourth, and sixth, that is, the Perfect Active, Present Pass., and Future Pass. Participles. For the Gerundive must not be regarded as Future, though it may in some places contain the notion of future time.

c. Deponent Verbs Intransitive have three Participles: Present and Future, both of which are Active in form and sense, and Perfect, which is Passive in form, but [usually] Active in sense: labor, labens, lapsurus, lapsus. Transitive Deponents add the Gerundive in *du*: patior, patiens, passurus, passus, patiendus.

d. The want of a Perfect Participle Act., in Active Verbs, is supplied in Latin either by the Finite Verb Active, with Relative or Participle, or by an Ablative Absolute Passive:

Tarquinius regem qui non tulerim, Sicinius feram? *Having refused to endure Tarquin as king, shall I endure Sicinius?*—Liv. Alexander, quum interemisset Clitum, vix a se manus abstinuit, Alexander, having slain Clitus, hardly refrained from suicide.—Cic. Pompeius, captis Hierosolymis, victor ex illo fano nihil attigit. Pompeius, having taken Jerusalem, in the very hour of victory, meddled with nothing belonging to that temple.—Cic.

e. The want of a Present Participle Passive is supplied by the Finite Passive Verb with Relative or Participle: as, *Pueri, qui—quum—dum docentur, discunt* = Greek *οἱ παῖδες διδασκόμενοι μαθήνουνσι*, *Children by being taught learn*. Rarely the Perf. Participle takes a Present Passive sense: *Sperata victoria* (Liv.) = *victoria quae speratur*.

f. A Future Participle Passive is not often used even in Greek. In Latin the Finite Verb with Relative stands for it: *Grata superveniet quae non sperabitur hora*, *Welcome will arrive the hour that shall be never hoped for*.—HOR.

g. The Perfect Participles of some Deponent and Semi-Deponent Verbs may occasionally be rendered as Present Active: *ausus, fissus, diffusus, gavisus, ratus, solitus, usus, veritus*:

*Caesar, veritus ne noctu hostes profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet*, *Caesar, fearing the enemy would escape in the night, ordered two legions to keep watch under arms*.—CÆS. See § 62 Note.

h. Many Participles are used as mere Adjectives: *neglĕgens, patiens, sapiens, doctus, venerandus, tremendus, &c.*

Many appear as Substantives. Such are, *amans, adolescens, sponsus; nupta, sponsa, coeptum, dictum, factum, praeceptum, &c.*

The nouns, *man, men, thing, &c.*, are frequently to be understood with Participles: *Jacet corpus dormientis ut mortui*, *The body of a sleeping person often lies as of one dead*.—CIC. *Grande locuturi nebulas Helicone legunt*, *They that would utter a sublime strain must cull mists from Helicon*.—PERS. *Male parta male dilabuntur*, *Ill gotten, ill go*.—CIC. *Beatos duco, qui aut faciunt scribenda, aut scribunt loquenda*, *I deem them happy, who either do things fit to be written, or write things fit to be spoken*.—PLIN. See § 142. Also § 107 d.

#### E. Active and Passive Construction:

a. When an Active Transitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, the Object becomes Subject, and the Subject becomes Ablative of the Agent:

ACT. *Egrege consul rem gessit.*

PASS. *Egrege ab consule res gesta est.*

*The consul conducted the affair excellently*.—LIV.

b. When an Active Intransitive Sentence is changed into Passive Construction, that Construction is Impersonal; the Subject becoming Ablative of the Agent.

ACT. *Hostes constanter pugnabant.*

PASS. *Ab hostibus constanter pugnabatur.*

*The enemy fought steadily*.—CÆS.

c. If the Active Verb had a Genitive, Dative, or Ablative Case with it, the Passive Construction retains that Case:

ACT. *Medicinae nos indigemus.*

PASS. *Medicinae a nobis indiget.*

*We need medicine*.—CIC.

ACT. *Mihi isti nocere non possunt.*

PASS. *Mihi ab istis noceri non potest.*

*They cannot hurt me*.—CIC.

ACT. Litibus et jurgiis supersedere vos aequum est.

PASS. Litibus et jurgiis supersederi a vobis aequum est.

*It is fair for you to abandon strife and wrangling.*—LIV.

(a) The Ablative of the Agent, like a Pronoun Subject, is often understood in the Impersonal Construction; *Itur in antiquam silvam, They go into the ancient forest.*—VERG. *Nunc est bibendum, Now we must drink.*—HOR.

(b) Hence it appears that Passive Verbs govern the same Cases as Active Verbs, except only the Accusative of the Object.

(c) Quasi-Passive Verbs (§ 72) have the construction of Verbs Passive; *Testis ab reo fustibus vapulavit, The witness was beaten with cudgels by the defendant.*—QUINT. *Malo a cive spoliari quam ab hoste venire, I would rather be stript by a citizen, than be sold by a foe.*—QUINT.

#### F. Summary of Impersonal Construction:

##### a. Case-construction.

- (1) Accusative of Person with Genitive of Thing:  
Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret. § 134.
- (2) Accusative of the Object:  
Oportet, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, are Transitive.
- (3) Dative:  
Libet, licet, liquet, patet, accidit, contingit, convenit, evenit, expedit, placet, restat, vacat, opus est, necesse est, are Transitive.
- (4) Ad with Accusative: attinet, pertinet, conducit.

##### b. Subject-construction.

- (1) Verb-noun Infinitive:  
Oportet, opus est, taedet, piget, pudet, paenitet, decet, dedecet, libet, licet, attinet, pertinet, contingit, convenit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, vacat, delectat, juvat, interest, refert, necesse est.
- (2) Infinitive Clause (Enuntiatio Obliqua):  
Oportet, opus est, decet, dedecet, licet, liquet, patet, attinet, pertinet, accidit, contingit, convenit, placet, praestat, restat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert, necesse est.
- (3) Subjunctive Clause with *ut* (for Infinitive Clause):  
Oportet, opus est, licet, accidit, contingit, evenit, est, fit, expedit, placet, praestat, restat, interest, refert, necesse est.
- (4) Subjunctive Clause omitting *ut*:  
Oportet, licet, necesse est.
- (5) Indicative Clause with *quod* (for Infinitive Clause):  
Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret, accidit, delectat, juvat, fallit, fugit, interest, refert.

- (6) Subject included in the meaning of the Verb :

Piget, pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret : also Impersonals implying changes of season and weather : pluit, tonat, fulgurat, &c., and Passive Impersonals. See *E. b. c.*

- (a) The following Deponent Perfects are occasionally used :

Pertaesum est; pigitum est; puditum est; miseritum est; libitum est; licitum est; placitum est.

(b) The following Verbs joined with Impersonal Infinitives become Impersonal: coepit, debet, desinit, potest, solet, incipit: Pigere eum facti coepit, *he began to be sorry for the act.*—JUST. Perveniri ad summa, nisi ex principiis, non potest, *the highest things cannot be reached, except from beginnings.*—QUINT.

#### G. Summary of Rules for Time, Place, and Space :

- a. (1) Time *during* which : §§ 102. 103. 120.  
Accusative; Accus. with *per* ; rarely Ablative.  
(2) Time *at* which, *within* which, &c. : §§ 120. 122.  
Ablative; Prepositions with their Cases.  
b. (1) Place *where* : § 121. A. B. 122.  
Ablative with *in* ; Accusative with *ad* or *apud*.

But if town, small island, or domus, humus, militia, bellum, rus :  
Singular Case in *ae, i* or *e* ; Plural Case in *is* or *ibus*,  
without a Preposition: Romae, militiae, Corinthi, domi,  
humi, belli, ruri, Tibure, Athenis, Gadibus, &c.

- (2) Place *whither* : §§ 101. 103.  
Accusative with *ad* or *in*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c. :  
Accusative without Preposition usually.

- (3) Place *whence* : §§ 121 C. 122.  
Ablative with *ab* or *ex*.

But if town, small island, domus, rus, &c. :  
Ablative without Preposition usually.

- c. (1) Space intervening : §§ 102 (2). 118.  
Accusative; Aberam ab Amano iter unius diei, *I was one day's journey distant from Amanus.*—CIC.  
Or Ablative of Measure; Aesculapii templum quinque milibus passuum ab Epidaurō distat, *the temple of Aesculapius is five miles from Epidaurus.*—LIV.

- (2) Space traversed : § 102.  
Accusative; Milia tum pransi tria repimus, *then after dining we creep on three miles.*—HOR.

- (3) Space of measurement :  
Accusative, § 102 ; or Ablative, § 118 ; or Genitive of Quality; Areas latas pedum decem facito, *you must make barn-floors ten feet wide.*—COLUM.



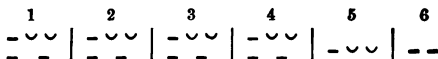
## III. NOTES ON PROSODY.

## METRE:—

## A. (a) Dactylic Hexameter or Senarius.

This Metre has six feet. The first four may be Dactyls or Spondees. The fifth must be a Dactyl (rarely a Spondee). The sixth a Spondee.

## Scheme.



## Examples.

1. Sicēlī|dēs Mū|sae || paū|lō mā|jōră cǎ|nēm̄us.
2. Nōn ōm|nēs ār|būstă || jū|vānt hūmī|lēsquē mŷ|rīcae.

A break in the words, called *Caesura*, is usually made after the first syllable of the third foot, as after -sae, in (1). This is called a *strong* *Caesura*. If the break occurs after the second syllable of a Dactyl, as after -ta in (2), it is called a *weak* *Caesura*. Occasionally, the chief *Caesura* occurs after the first syllable of the fourth foot, as in the following verse:

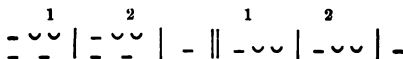
Clāmō|rēs sīm̄ul | hōrrēn | dōs || ād | sīdēră | tōllit.

The Heroic Measure of Epic poets, Virgil, Lucan, &c., consists of Dactylic Hexameters only.

## (b) Dactylic Pentameter:

This Verse consists of two parts, called *Penthemimers*, which are kept distinct. The first *Penthemimer* contains two feet (Dactyls or Spondees) and a long syllable. The second contains also two feet (both Dactyls) and a long syllable.

## Scheme.



## Example.

Tū pătēr | ēt mā|tēr || tū mīhī | frătēr ō|rās.

This Verse is not used alone, but follows an Hexameter in the *Elegiac Distich*:

Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos,  
Tempora si fuerint nubila, solus eris.

The chief *Elegiac* poets are Ovid, Tibullus, and Propertius.

## B. (a) Iambic Trimeter or Senarius:

This Metre has six feet. Each may be an Iambus:

Sūs | -ēt īp|să Rō|mă vī|rībūs | rūit.

But a Spondee may stand in the first, third, and fifth foot; and (rarely) a Dactyl or Anapaest (∪ ∪ -) in the first. A Tribrach (∪ ∪ ∪) sometimes takes the place of an Iambus, except in the two last feet.

*Scheme.*

| 1     | 2     | 3     | 4     | 5   | 6   |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-----|-----|
| ∪ -   | ∪ -   | ∪ -   | ∪ -   | ∪ - | ∪ - |
| - -   | - -   | - -   | - -   | - - | - - |
| ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ | ∪ ∪ ∪ |     |     |
| ∪ ∪ ∪ |       |       |       |     |     |
| ∪ ∪ - |       |       |       |     |     |

*Examples.*

Lābūn|tūr āl|tīs ∥ īn|tērīm | rīpīs | āquae.

Cānīdī|ā brēvī|būs ∥ īm|plicā|tā vī|pēris.

Pōsītōs|quē vēr|nās ∥ dī|tīs ēx|āmēn | dōmus.

The usual Caesura is after the first syllable of the third foot. Another, less usual, is after the first syllable of the fourth foot;

Ÿbē|rīcīs | pērūs|tē ∥ fū|nībūs | lātus.

The Trimeter may form a distinct measure.

*(b) Iambic Dimeter.*

This Verse leaves out the third and fourth feet of the Trimeter, with which it is used to form an Iambic Distich;

Pātēr|nā rū|rā bō|būs ēx|ercēt | sūis,

Sōlū|tūs ōm|nī fē|nōre.

Horace uses this and also the single Trimeter in his Epodes.

*C. The Sapphic Stanza:*

This Stanza contains four lines. The three first are the same Verse repeated (Sapphic Minor). The fourth is called Versus Adonius.

*Scheme.*

|    |     |     |       |     |
|----|-----|-----|-------|-----|
| 1. | - ∪ | - - | - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ |
| 2. | - ∪ | - - | - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ |
| 3. | - ∪ | - - | - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ |
| 4. |     |     | - ∪ ∪ | - ∪ |

*Example.*

1. Ōtī|ūm dī | vōs rōgāt | īn pā|tēnti

2. Prēnsūs | Aēgāē|ō sīmūl | ātrā | nūbes

3. Cōndī|dīt lū|nām nēquē | cērtā | fūlgēt

4. Sīdērā | nautīs.

*D. The Alcaic Stanza:*

This Stanza contains four lines: of which the two first are similar.

*Scheme.*

|    |            |       |     |       |       |
|----|------------|-------|-----|-------|-------|
| 1. | — —<br>⏑ — | — —   | —   | — ⏑ ⏑ | — ⏑ ⏑ |
| 2. | — —<br>⏑ — | — —   | —   | — ⏑ ⏑ | — ⏑ ⏑ |
| 3. | — —<br>⏑ — | — —   | — — | ⏑ —   | —     |
| 4. | — ⏑ ⏑      | — ⏑ ⏑ | — ⏑ | — ⏑   |       |

*Example.*

Ēheū | fūgā|cēs | Pōstūmē | Pōstūme  
 Lābūn|tūr ān|nī | nēc pīē|tās mōram  
 Rūgīs | ēt īn|stāntī | sēnēc|tae  
 Affērēt | īndōmī | tāēquē | mōrti.

Models of the Sapphic and Alcaic Stanzas, with other Lyric Metres, are found in the Odes of Horace. Rules for their elegant construction are given in the Grammar.

## APPENDIX II.

---

### MOOD AND COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

#### I. THE TWO PRIMARY MOODS.

1. The Latin Verb, like the Greek, has Moods (modes of expression) containing Tenses, which mark time, with Numbers and Persons, which determine agents.

The primary Moods are two; a Fact-mood (called *Indicative*), which *states* and *questions*: and a Will-mood (called from one of its uses *Imperative*), which *bids* or *entreats*.

The Fact-mood has Present, Past and Future Tenses, each having two Numbers (Singular and Plural) with three Persons in each.

The Will-mood, having no Past Tenses and no First Persons, is fragmentary.

The old verb *eo*, *ire*, *to go* (pp. 64, 65), has in the Indicative six Tenses, with their full complements: *eo* &c., *ibo* &c., *ibam* &c., *ivi* &c., *ivero* &c., *iveram* &c.: in the Imperative two forms (called there a Present Tense) of the second Persons, *i*, *ite*; and forms (called, as by Madvig, a Future) of the Second and Third Persons, *ito*, *itote*, *eunto*. These old-*to* forms are but sparingly used in classical prose, though not unusual in poetry.

2. The Tenses of the Indicative Mood.

The Present indicates, (1) what *is* at the time; *esurio*: *frater villam venditat*: (2) what *is* at the same time with something else; *dum spiro*, *spero*: *dum mula ligatur*, *tota abit hora*; hence the idiom of 'dum,' which is used with a present, even in past time; *dum obsequor* *adulescentibus*, *me senem esse sum oblitus*: (3) what *is* habitually or always; *Bacchus amat colles*: *probitas laudatur et alget*: (4) what an author, living in his works, says or does; *Livius scribit*: *Tacitus ait*: *Cicero verbis abundat*.

*Obs. 1.* The Present with *jamdiu*, *jampridem*, *jamdudum*, states what *has been and still is*; *jampridem cupio*, *I have been long desiring*; *jamdudum video*, *I see it this long time*.

*Obs. 2.* The Historic Present (so called) is used by historians and poets to paint to the mind's eye past scenes; *Roma orescit* *Albae ruinis*, *duplicatur civium numerus*, *Caelius additur urbi mons* &c. L. (See Hist. Infinitive, p. 140.) It is often used along with the Perfect. See Verg. *Aen. v.* 243 and often.

The Perfect indicates (1) as simple aorist, what *was* in time past; *veni, vidi, vici*: hence (2) what *has ceased to exist*; *fuimus* Troes, *fuit* Ilium: (3) what *has been up to* the present moment (past in present); *vixi* et quem dederat cursum fortuna fortuna *peregi*: *dixi* (at the close of a speech): hence (4) what *is accomplished* or *suddenly done*; *perii*: *vicimus*: *fugere ferae*: (5) what *has always happened* under the circumstances, what *is usual*; *amisso rege rupere fidem constructaque mella diripere*, V.

The Imperfect indicates (1) what *was going on* in time past; see Cic. Off. iii. 27, *neque vero tum ignorabat* &c. (2) what *was usual* in time past; *dicebat* melius quam scripsit Hortensius, C.

The Pluperfect indicates what *was past* in time past; *inruerant* Danai, et tectum omne tenebant, V.

The Simple Future indicates what *will be* in time to come: *ibitis* Italiam. It is often used as a polite Imperative; *facies* ut sciam, C.: *nec totâ claudes faenilia brumâ*, V.

The Future Perfect indicates what *will be completed* in time to come; *qui Antonium oppresserit*, is *bellum confecerit*, C.; and often stands in connection with simple Future; *ut sementem feceris, ita metes*, C.; *Turno tempus erit cum optaverit intactum Pallanta*, V.; or for simple Future; *si pergis, abiero*, Ter.

Obs. The Future Conjugation -urus sum &c. (§ 64) expresses (1) 'being about to,' 'on the point of,' (2) 'being likely to' or 'sure to,' (3) 'being destined to.' On the Gerundive Conjugation, see § 144.

Note 1. A Roman, writing a letter, arranged the Tenses with reference to the time when it would be received; *res, cum haec scribebam, erat in extremum adducta discrimen, at the time I write, the affair is brought to a crisis*, C.

Note 2. Latin writers in prose and poetry have a subtle construction, by which verbs signifying *power, duty, fitness* (*possum, debeo, decet, licet, oportet* &c.) and phrases of similar force with the verb 'sum' (*aequum, melius, optimum, par, &c.*), including the Participles in -dus, -rus), use their past tenses in the Indicative, where the Conjunctive might be otherwise expected: thus Virgil has *poteras* (Ecl. i. 80), *potui* (Aen. iv. 19), *deceit* (xi. 117), et *vellem* et *fuerat melius* (xi. 303): and Cicero, *non Asiae nomen obiciendum Murenâ fuit* (Mur. 5).

### 3. The Forms of the Imperative Mood.

The Imperative is freely used to command or entreat in its (so called) Present forms: *i, sequere* Italiam: *fuge*, nate: *pergite*, adulescentes: *intuemini* res nostras: *ite*, capellae.

Obs. 1. Certain Imperatives, idiomatically joined with forms of other verbs, give to these, by periphrasis, an imperative sense. Such are, *fac, cura*, and others; (for prohibition) *cave, noli*, and in poetry, *fuge, mitte, parce*, and others; *cura ut quam primum venias; fac magnum animum habeas; armis concur-*

*rant arma caveat: nolite id velle quod fieri non potest: fuge suspicari: parcite, oves, nimium procedere, V.*

*Obs. 2.* Direct prohibition by 'ne' and Imperative is frequent in poetry; *ne quere doceri; equo ne credite, V.*; but in prose rare, 'ne' with Perfect Conjunctive being preferred (which poets may also use); *hoc ne feceris: misericordia commotus ne sis: ne respexeris; tu ne quacsieris &c.* See § 147.

*Obs. 3.* The -to -tor forms are ranked in § 28 &c. as Future: but many call them a second and stronger Imperative, drawn from old legislative formularies. In prose they occur chiefly in solemn documents, as treaties, proclamations &c. Cicero uses them either in speeches, when he wishes to be impressive, or in the familiarity of private letters: poets more freely; *esto: sunt: ipse venito: timor omnis abesto: contemplator.* See Liv. *xxiii. 11; xxxviii. 38.*

## II. THE CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Besides the Moods cited, the Latin Verb has a Thought-mood, properly termed *Conjunctive*, seeing that its use is to join with both the other Moods, and assist their power of expressing speech. It joins with the Indicative so as to state and question in a tone either contingent on a condition, or modified by mental reserve in the nature of a condition. It joins with the Imperative, so as to supply its deficient forms, and also to express the various shades of will-speech in modified tone. The Conjunctive Mood has four Tenses, called Present, Perfect, Imperfect, and Pluperfect, the powers and uses of which are best learnt from reading and practice. Though the Futures are wanting, all the Tenses are capable of referring to Future time, when required.

1. Pure Conjunctive of contingent or modified Statement (negation takes 'non,' or 'haud').
- A. When a condition is *formally* expressed:  
*eam si moneas (monueris); irem (issem) si moneres (monuisses): non eam nisi tu moneas (monueris): non irem (issem) nisi tu moneas (monuisses): tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias: improbe feceris, nisi monueris: si luxurie temperaret, avaritiam non timeres (timuisses): si redisset filius, pater ei veniam daret (dedisset), Ter.*
- B. When a condition is *informally* expressed:  
*eam (irem, issem) te monente (a te monitus): non eam (irem, issem) te invito (prohibitus a te): optanti divum promittere nemo audeat, V.: non illi quisquam se impune tulisset obviis armato, V.: Hadria divisus objecto remittas quaerere, Hor.*
- C. When a condition is *implied*:  
*migrantes cernas: Marte videres fervere Leucaten: (i. e. if you were present): pelago credas innare revulsas Cycladas; credes victos (i. e. if you saw them), Liv.: nec quisquam putet &c., V.*
- D. When the tone is modified to avoid positiveness or bluntness:  
*dubitem haud equidem: perfectum officium rectum, opinor, vocemus, C. Velim, nolim, vellem nollem, mallet* may be often so explained.

Forsitan or fortasse are often joined with the verb; *forsitan quæ-ratis*: vix verisimile *fortasse videatur*, C. The Perfect Conj. is especially used in modified tone; *dixerim*, *I venture to say*: *crediderim*, *I am inclined to believe*: *non te transierim*: *non ausim*: *forsitan quispiam dixerit*, C. (This and the next use of the Pure Conjunctive are often called Potential.)

2. E. Pure Conjunctive of the modified Question. (Negation with 'non'.)

A direct question, whether of doubt or of feeling, implies more of mental dubitation when used in the Conjunctive. As in the Indicative, it may be single or disjunctive: *faveas tu hosti? tibi ego irascerer? quis Trojæ nesciat urbem? quid facerem? quo fugerem? quid dem, quid non dem? quid faciam? roger anne rogem? eloquar an sileam? cur non confiteamur quod necesse est? iremusne annon? quare non iremus?*

3. Pure Conjunctive of modified Will-speech (Negation generally by 'ne').

F. Concessive use: allowing, granting &c.

*Luant peccata neque illos juveris auxilio*, V.: per me ista pedibus *trahantur*, C.: *tenebras et inertia furta ne timeant*, V.: *ne sit summum malum dolor, malum certe est*, C.: *fuert malus civis*, C.: *verum anceps pugnae fuerat fortuna; fuisset; quid metui moritura?* V.: *nemo is, inquires, umquam fuit; ne fuerit*, C.

G. Optative and Precative uses: wishing, praying &c.

[utinam, ut, o si, occur with Optative: the Precative is chiefly used in addressing superiors or sacred persons, as a deity, a prince &c.]

(1) *Di vertant bene*, Ter.: *valeant cives mei, sint incolumes, sint florentes, sint beati*, C.: *peream nisi vera loquor: ne sim salvus*, si aliter loquor ac sentio, C.: *ita me di ament: sollicitat, ita vivam, me tua valetudo*, C.: *fecissentque utinam: o mihi præteritos referat si Iuppiter annos*, V.: *utinam nimium ne sit mihi fertilis illa*, V. See Verg. Ecl. iv. 30, 31; x. 48, 49.

(2) *sis bonus o felixque tuis: adsis o placidusque juves et sidera caelo dextra feras*, V.: *doceas iter et sacra ostia pandas*, V.: *si certum est facere, facias, verum ne post culpam conferas in me*, Ter.: *adsit lætitiæ Bacchus dator*, V.

H. Hortative and Jussive uses: exhorting, commanding &c.

[The principal Hortative use is that which appears in the First Person Plural; the Jussive uses of the Third Persons contain a command more or less stringent. Thus 'naviget' (Aen. iv. 287) is a strong mandate: the instructions in the Georgics given in the Third Persons Conjunctive are precepts rightly called jussive: see G. iii. 300, 329.]

(1) *Eamus omnes: moriamur et in media arma ruamus*, V.: *ægritudinem depellamus: imitemur nostros Brutos, Camillos, Decios; amemus patriam, pareamus senatui, consulamus bonis*, C.: *si cui virtus, adsit et evinctis attollat brachia palmis*, V.

(2) *Ecferant* quæ secum huc attulerunt, Ter.: *vincat* utilitas reipublicæ: *sit* sermo lenis, *insit* in eo lepos, C.: vilicus *ne sit* ambulator, sobrius *sit* semper, ad cenam *ne* quo eat, familiam *exerceat*, *ne* plus *censeat* sapere se quam dominum, parasitum *ne* quem habeat, Cato.

*Obs.* 1. Although numerous instances of the Second Person are ascribed to the Precative use, there are some which more properly belong to the Jussive; postremus *loquaris*, primus *taceas*: *invenias* argentum &c.

*Obs.* 2. The most remarkable examples are those which convey this use of the Will-speech Conjunctive into past time by the Imperfect and Pluperfect tenses: *praediceres*, *you should have told me beforehand*: *rem tuam curares*, *you should have been minding your own business*: *dictis, Albane, maneres*, *you should have remained true to your word*, O Alban, V.: *restitisses*, *mortem oppetisses*, C.: *ne poposcisses*, *you ought not to have demanded*, C. This usage is not confined to the Second Person, but extends also to the rest: *animam ipse dedissem*, *atque hæc pompa domum me, non Pallanta, referret*, V. *Aen.* xi. 162; see iv. 678; x. 854.

*Obs.* 3. In treating of the Imperative, it has been said that direct prohibition (when not periphrastic with 'cave, noli &c.') is in good Latin prose expressed by 'ne' with Perf. Conj.: *quod dubitas ne feceris*: *ne passus sis* &c. 'Ne' with Pres. Conj. has been often improperly taken as prohibitive, where the meaning *lest* is that which truly belongs to the particle, as in Hor. *ne forte credas interitura* &c. and often.

*Note.* When the Conjunctive is subordinate in construction we call it the *Subjunctive*: *vellem adfuisses*: *cura ut valeas*. As such, its English rendering does not differ from that of the Indicative, except in an adverbial final clause: see p. 66.\*

### III. COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

1. *Oratio Recta* means any statement, command, or question directly put.

*Oratio Obliqua* means any statement, command, or question indirectly put, depending on some verb in *Oratio Recta*.

*Valeo*, *An valet?* *Vale*, are *Oratio Recta*: *Scin' me valere?* *Nescio an valeat*, *Cura ut valeas*, contain *Oratio Obliqua*; *me valere* depending on the *Oratio Recta* *scin'*; *an valeat* on *nescio*; *ut valeas* on *cura*.

\* The following lines on Latin Mood may be a help to some young learners:—

1. The *Fact-mood* is employed to mean  
IS, WAS, HAD, SHALL-BE, SHALL-HAVE-BEEN :
2. The *Thought-mood* aids it, when we mean  
MAY-, MIGHT-, or WOULD-BE, WOULD-HAVE-BEEN :
3. The *Will-mood* bids, DO-THOU, DO-YE  
(Old -to- forms add THEY-MUST and HE);  
But *Thought-mood* forms in aid supply  
LET-HIM, -THEM, -US, PRAY-DO, MAY-I.



2. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences connected together; of which one is the Principal, the others, which we call *Clauses*, either (A) Coordinate, or (B) Subordinate.

A. A *Coordinate Clause* is one which does not depend in construction upon the Principal Sentence. Coordinate Clauses are introduced by such particles as *et, que, nec; aut, vel; sed, autem; nam, enim; igitur, itaque; deinde, denique; &c.*: *Pygæ a nullo videbatur; ipse autem omnia videbat, C.*

B. A *Subordinate Clause* is one which depends in construction on the Principal Sentence.

Subordinate Clauses are of three kinds:—

(1) Substantival: (2) Adverbial: (3) Adjectival.

(1) A *Substantival Clause* is one which stands, like a Substantive, as Subject, Object, or in Apposition. Substantival Clauses belong to *Oratio Obliqua*, and are of three kinds: (a) Oblique Enuntiation: (b) Oblique Petition: (c) Oblique Interrogation.

(a) The Oblique (or Indirect) Enuntiation is formed generally by the *Infinitive Clause* (Accusative with Infinitive), dependent on verbs '*sentiendi aut declarandi*,' or by '*ut*' with Subjunctive, or '*quod*' with Indicative or Subjunctive.

*Amicitia, nisi inter bonos, esse non potest*, is a Direct Enuntiation: *Verum est, amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Direct Enuntiation, *Verum est*, and the Oblique Enuntiation, '*amicitiam, nisi inter bonos, esse non posse*,' which is Substantival, being the Subject of the Verb '*est*,' and having '*verum*' for its Complement.

*Invidia gloriæ comes est*, is a Direct Enuntiation; *Est hoc commune vitium, ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*, is a Compound Sentence, containing the Oblique Enuntiation, '*ut invidia gloriæ comes sit*,' in Apposition to '*hoc*,' the Subject of '*est*,' of which '*commune vitium*' is the Complement.

*Calet ignis*, is a Direct Enuntiation: *Sentimus calere ignem a Compound Sentence*, having the Direct Enuntiation '*sentimus*,' and the Oblique, '*calere ignem*,' which is the Object of '*sentimus*.'

(b) The Oblique Petition is formed by the Subjunctive Mood, with or without the Conjunction '*ut*' or '*ne*' (or by the Infinitive), dependent on Verbs of *desire, request, command, endeavour &c.* *Mane in sententiâ* is a Direct Petition, which may be expressed in a Compound Sentence by *Oro ut maneas in sententiâ*, *Oro maneas in sententiâ*, or *Oro te manere in sententiâ*.

(c) The Oblique Interrogation is formed by dependent Interrogatives, whether Pronouns or Particles, with Subjunctive Mood.

*Quis est?* is a Direct Interrogation: *Nescio quis sit*, *incertum est quis sit*, are Compound Sentences, containing the Oblique Interrogation, '*quis sit*,' which is the Object of '*nescio*,' and the Subject of '*est*.'

(2) An *Adverbial Clause* is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adverb, answering the questions, *how, why, when &c.*

Adverbial Clauses are formed by Conjunctions, and are: (a) Consecutive (*so that*); (b) Final (*in order that*); (c) Causal (*because, since*); (d) Temporal (*when, while, until &c.*); (e) Conditional (*if, unless*); (f) Concessive (*although, whereas*); (g) Comparative (*as if, as though &c.*).

- (3) An *Adjectival* or *Relative Clause* is one which qualifies the Principal Sentence like an Adjective. It is formed by the Relative Pronoun 'qui,' or by a Relative Particle.

The Relative Pronoun *qui quæ quod* (with its Particles) has great influence in Latin Construction. It is of all persons, and may be used compendiously as a substitute for the union of a Conjunction with a Personal Pronoun. Hence it forms Coordinate Clauses when used for *et ego, et tu, et is &c.*; for *ego autem, tu autem, is autem &c.*; for *ego igitur, tu igitur, is igitur &c.*; for *ego enim, tu enim, is enim &c.* And it forms Subordinate Clauses when used for *ut ego, ut tu, ut is &c.*; for *quia ego, quia tu, quia is &c.*; for *si ego, si tu, si is &c.*; for *etsi ego, etsi tu, etsi is &c.*

### 3. On the Mood of Finite Verbs subordinate to Oratio Obliqua.

- a. Subordinate Clauses may have others subordinate to them, in relation to which they are therefore primary Clauses. From what has been said of Substantival Clauses, it appears that such primary clauses of Oratio Obliqua are, mostly, either Infinitive or Subjunctive. Its subordinate Clauses, when finite, generally take the Subjunctive, forming what is called Suboblique construction, as may be seen in the subjoined example:—

Oratio Recta.—*Ars earum rerum est, quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnis actio opinionibus, non scientiâ continetur: nam et apud eos dicimus, qui nesciunt, et ea dicimus, quæ nescimus ipsi.*—Cic.

Oratio Obliqua.—(Antonius apud Ciceronem docet:) *Artem earum rerum esse quæ sciuntur; oratoris autem omnem actionem opinione, non scientiâ, contineri: quia et apud eos dicat, qui nesciant, et ipse dicat, quod nesciat.*—QUINT.

- β. Oratio Recta may be 'virtually oblique' (obliquæ potestatis), when the leading predication not merely states a fact, but also implies therein a thought or opinion: and so the clause depending on it becomes 'virtually suboblique.' Themistocles noctu *ambulabat*, quod somnum capere non *posset*, implies that Themistocles alleged inability to sleep as the reason why he walked by night. By writing 'poterat,' Cicero would have made the statement of cause his own. 'Posset' is therefore 'virtually suboblique.'

- γ. A finite Verb subordinate to a Conjunctive Verb usually becomes Subjunctive: *miraretur qui cerneret*, Liv.

Obs. 1. It may happen that a clause, which *seems* subordinate to Oratio Obliqua, is not so *really*, but is either a fact or a mere epithet; in such circumstances it need not take the Subjunctive.

Mood; Caesari exploratores missi referunt, apud Suevos silvam esse infinita magnitudine, quae *appellatur* Bacenis, Caes. B. G. vi. 40. Placet Stoicis eos anhelitus terrae, qui *frigidi sunt*, quum fluere coeperint, ventos esse, C. Div. ii. 19.\*

Obs. 2. On the exceptional idiom of *dum*, see § 152 (2).

#### EXCURSUS I. On some Terms in Latin Compound Construction.

Grammar, like other sciences, has its technical terms, most of which are of long date, and so fixed by use, that a writer cannot well displace them, inadequate as some may be. But in those departments of higher grammar, which within this century have been subjected to a more searching analysis than previously, agreement between grammarians has not yet been achieved as to the best terms for use,† and the best arrangement of matter.

The terms used in the Latin Primer are, for the most part, enumerated and explained in its glossary. With respect to some of them, a few words may be proper here, for the convenience of teachers rather than for the direct teaching of learners.

1. The term *Conjunctive Mood*, with its two-fold use as *Pure* and as *Subjunctive*.

On few points are grammarians so largely agreed as in using the term *Conjunctive* for the third Latin mood. After consulting from 30 to 40 Latin Grammars published in Germany, none has been found which does not employ this term to describe the Mood in question. In England and France we meet with a few dissidents. Key used the general term *Subjunctive* on the strength of a theory peculiar to himself, that the third Mood always depends on some principal verb, implied where not expressed. Thus he explained *Quid faciam* as representing *Quid vis faciam*? If this theory be not accepted (and we know not where to find its defenders), 'Subjunctive' falls to the ground, as a term manifestly unfit for the Mood in *principal construction*.‡ But, while this appropriate term, *Conjunctive Mood*, has been adopted by the universal consent of German Grammarians, as also by the authority of the experienced teachers who compiled the Primer, and of those in this country who have received it, unhappily German writers refrain from

\* The general principle of Mood in subordination to Oblique Oration, actual and virtual, may be thus stated:—The *Conjunctive* is the Mood of thought or conception: Oblique Oration expresses a conception: Virtual Oratio Obliqua implies a conception: the *Subjunctive Mood* (in a Finite Verb subordinate to either) means that the action or state of such Verb forms part of the conception: while Verbs not really included in that conception, though by their position seeming to be so, need not (Obs. 1.) be *Subjunctive*.

† While familiar English words should always be at hand to explain technical terms (as in 1.), it seems that for the laws of Grammar (as of Chemistry, Botany, and other Sciences), the technical terms themselves should be used. They serve the memory better, and are common to all nationalities.

‡ German grammarians call the Greek mood also *Conjunctive*. But, supposing it were called *Subjunctive*, this would not justify the exclusive use of the same term in Latin. The Greek *Conjunctive* is generally dependent, never independently predicative, except when asking a question. Indeed, the presence of two differently formed Thought-moods and of modal particles in Greek, widely severs the analogy of the sister languages in this part of Grammar.

using the term *Subjunctive* to represent the dependent *Conjunctive*, contenting themselves with the one term for both uses. Many indeed, as Krüger, wisely draw a sharp line of distinction between the independent (*unabhängig*) *Conjunctive* in a principal sentence (*Hauptsatz*) and the dependent (*abhängig*) in a subordinate sentence (*Nebensatz*, which we, for convenience, render *Clause*); and give names (as in 11.) to the various shades of the independent use: but they employ no general term to distinguish the dependent or subordinate use. This is one of the reasons why their teaching on compound construction is vague and unsettled. Holtze says justly (*Syntaxis Priscorum Scriptorum Latinorum*, II. p. 136), 'discernendus autem est conjunctivus *absolutus*, qui non pendet aliunde, ab eo conjunctivo, qui aliunde aptus est. Conjunctivi absoluti tria genera distinguere possunt, conj. *conditionalis*, *potentialis*, *imperatorius* &c.' His *absolute* is our *pure* *Conjunctive*; and his 'genera' are comprised in the divisions given in 11. But when in p. 147 he writes: 'alterum genus conjunctivi id est, quum aliunde aptus est,' his teaching would have been much improved if here too he had given his 'genus' a title by adding, 'quod subjunctivi nomine discernimus.' Holtze's '*Conjunctivus conditionalis*' corresponds to paragraphs A, B, C (in 11.); his '*potentialis*' to D, E; his '*imperatorius*' to F, G, H.

## 2. *Enuntiatio: Interrogatio: Petitio.*

These terms for the three forms of a Latin sentence are technical for the Engl. *statement*, *question*, *will-speech*; Germ. *Aussage*, *Frage*, *Heischesatz*. The first two need no defence, being the only Latin words for those meanings; but there are competing terms for the description of the *Conjunctive Will-speech*. Holtze gives '*imperatorius*;' Madvig (§ 346) '*optative*;' some English writers say '*the jussive*.' But '*optative*' is not well fitted to include commands or concessions, nor '*jussive*' to include anything but commands and exhortations. Among adjectives, the most appropriate would perhaps be '*voluntative*;' but, as a substantive, the word here given (*Petitio*) renders with sufficient exactness the often used German *Heischesatz*, and fairly combines the shades of will belonging to the use of the *Conjunctive* for the *Imperative*.

The accepted use in grammar of the terms *Oratio Recta*, *Oratio Obliqua*, carries with it the use of the terms *Enuntiatio Obliqua* (*indirect statement*), *Interrogatio Obliqua* (*indirect question*), *Petitio Obliqua* (*indirect will-speech*), as appropriately technical: and this implies the important truth, too often forgotten in grammatical teaching, that *Oblique* *Oration* comprises all these three forms of the dependent sentence, and not *statement* only. Hence it arises that in the *Oblique Narration*, especially of historians, but found in other writers also, these three forms of indirect speech are so frequently combined under the government of one principal verb '*declarandi*,' '*imperandi*,' or '*rogandi*.'

## 3. *Substantival, Adverbial, Adjectival Clauses.*

In Grammar it is of the first importance to note any difference which appears in likeness, and any likeness which occurs in difference.

Hence it is wrong to withhold the striking facts represented by the three terms now cited, and explained in chapter III. If a learner were asked to name the grammatical subject (nominative) of the verb in each of the three sentences—*Constat hostes abituros esse*—*Sequitur ut hostes abituri sint*—*Gratum est quod hostes abituri sunt*—he would have to answer—*Hostes abituros esse* is the subject of '*constat*'—*ut hostes abituri sint* of '*sequitur*'—*quod hostes abituri sunt* of '*est*:' thus acknowledging that each of the three subject clauses is in the nature of a substantive. Without pursuing exemplification to object clauses, the above examples are sufficient to indicate that the substantival *ut*-clause and *quod*-clause (though partaking, the one of a consecutive, the other of a causal nature) ought nevertheless to be classed distinctly from the adverbial consecutive and causal clauses, such as appear in the following sentences—*Inopia frumenti tanta est ut hostes abituri sint*—*Cives portas floribus coronant, quod hostes abituri sunt*. See also the construction of two clauses with '*tantum abest*' (Consecutive Clauses).

The distinction of Substantival, Adverbial, and Adjectival Clauses is practically recognised by many German scholars, as Krüger, Kühner, Feldbausch, Grieben, Dräger, and others.

#### 4. Suboblique Construction. Virtual Oratio Obliqua.

Suboblique means 'subordinate to Oratio Obliqua' expressed in a single word: this is its value and its *raison d'être*. As to the other term—in all those constructions of the Subjunctive after a Finite Verb, of which may be taken as a type, *Laudat Africanum Panaetius quod fuerit abstinent*—it seems manifest that the Mood depends on an implied Oratio Obliqua (in that place, '*se laudare ait*'), and that the term 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua' expresses better and more concisely than any other the principle of the construction.

*Note.* The propriety of referring this construction to the doctrine of Oratio Obliqua, of making its mood a corollary to the principle of mood in subordination to Oratio Obliqua, and therefore calling it 'Virtually Suboblique,' may be shown by comparison of a few examples.

- (1) *Reperio quattuor causas, cur senectus misera videatur: unam, quod avocet a rebus gerendis; alteram, quod corpus faciat infirmius; tertiam, quod privet omnibus fere voluptatibus; quartam, quod haud procul absit a morte.*—Cic. Cato M. 5.

Why are '*avocet*, '*faciat*, '*privet*, '*absit*,' subjunctive? Evidently (as appears from '*videatur*') because '*reperio quattuor causas*' = '*reperio quattuor causas adlatas*;' i.e. because it contains a 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua,' which here cannot be mistaken.

- (2) *Tum liquidas corvi presso ter gutture voces  
Aut quater ingeminant &c.  
Haud equidem credo, quia sit divinitus illis  
Ingenium &c.*—Verg. G. I. 410 &c.

Why is *sit* subjunctive? Evidently because with '*credo*' must be supplied '*corvos ingeminare*' &c.; i.e. on account of a 'Virtual Oratio Obliqua,' which here again is obvious.

- (3) Et quereris *quod* non, Cinna, *bibamus* idem.—Mart. xi. 37.

Why is *bibamus* subjunctive? Evidently because one who complains *says* that he does complain: 'quereris' = 'ais te queri.' Again the contained Oratio Obliqua is obvious.

- (4) Let a different instance be taken.

Mercatique solum, facti de nomine Byrsam,  
Taurino *quantum possent* circumdare tergo.—V. Aen. i. 367.

Why does the subjunctive *possent* stand here, when *poterant* could have been written grammatically? Because the poet refers the covenant to the mind and act of the purchasers contained in *mercati*. They purchased ground, 'pacti tantum fore,' *stipulating that it should be so much as* (quantum &c.) *they could surround by a bull's hide*. Here, and in many similar places, it is just to say that Oratio Obliqua (that is, an indirect expression of thought) is implied, and that its tenour can be certainly stated; not in the precise words, as in the former passages, but in such as convey the sense.

EXCURSUS II. The following remarks are subjoined as the result of long Latin studies and teaching experience.

1. Arrangement of topics in their just sequence, and a wise choice of terms, are points of signal importance in grammar.

*Obs.* It is often more really pedantic to avoid technical terms than to use them. Thus it is mere mischievous pedantry to substitute 'indirect speech' for the well-known term Oratio Obliqua.

2. Simple and compound construction should be kept apart in a Latin Grammar; but the use of Accusative Subject with Infinitive should be shortly noticed in the former division, while its full development is kept for the latter, in which it claims the first place as 'the Infinitive Clause.' See §§ 93, 94, 140: and above in III.
3. The doctrine of the Verb Infinite, and of Moods and Tenses, should be taught, as belonging to the Simple Sentence, before teaching the doctrine of Compound Construction, and Mood therein.

*Obs.* This principle has been ignored by many grammarians, especially by Madvig, to the great detriment of their usefulness as teachers of grammar.

4. The principles set forth in this Appendix, and defended in the first Excursus, have been practically tested during 35 years; and no attempt has ever been made to prove them unsound. As they belong to an abstruse subject, they cannot be mastered without some expense of time and thought. But this will deter no student who desires to know well what he professes to know at all. The styles of the greatest Latin authors require a knowledge of these principles for their just appreciation.

## IV. OUTLINE OF COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION.

## (A.) SUBSTANTIVAL CLAUSES.

## I. ENUNTIATIO OBLIQUA (indirect Statement).

## 1. Infinitive Clause (Infin. with Accus. Subject):

- (1) as Subject, with the copula 'est,' and with Verbs Impersonal or Passive (*fas est, fama est, verum est, necesse est &c., constat, placet, nuntiatur &c.*)
- (2) as Object, with 'Verba sentiendi et declarandi' (*audio, video, credo &c.; aio, dico, nego &c.*);
- (3) in Apposition to Nouns and Pronouns;
- (1) *Facinus est civem vinciri.*—*Certum est nivem frigrere.*—*Nuntiatum est Scipionem adesse.*—*Constat leges ad salutem civium inventas esse.*
- (2) *Audivimus Pompeios desedissee.*—*Aiunt consulem redituum esse.*—*Spero (polliceor) me tibi causam probaturum.*
- (3) *Illud moleste fero, me nihil habere tuarum litterarum.*
- (a) *Tene hoc, Atti, dicere?*—*Me non cum bonis esse?*

## 2. Ut-clause with Subjunctive (for Infin. Clause), chiefly as Subject.

*Reliquum est (restat) ut egomet mihi consulam.*—*Mos erat ut, pace facta, Jani templum clauderetur.*—*Extremum illud est, ut te obsecrem.*

- (a) *Te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut umquam te corrigas?*

## 3. Quod-clause (for Infin. Clause) with Indicative chiefly.

*Gratum est quod patriae civem dedisti.*—*Vitium est quod ad exempla vivimus.*—*Mitto quod invidiam subieris.*

## II. PETITIO OBLIQUA (indirect Will-speech).

1. Verbs of *permitting, wishing, praying, exhorting, commanding*, take Subjunctive with *ut, ne*, or omitting Conjunction.

- (1) As Subject. *Permisum est consuli ut scriberet duas legiones.*—*Postulatur ab amico ut sit sincerus.*—*Nuntiatum est Antonio ne Brutum obsideret; a Mutina discederet.*
- (2) As Object. *Sine te exorem.*—*Sivi ut animum expleret suum.*—*Vellem ipse pater spectator adesset.*—*Vin' experiamur?*—*Precor ut haec castra ne pollui sinatis.*—*Immortalia ne speres monet annus.*—*Hortantur socii Cretam proavosque petamus.*—*Jubeto ut certet Amyntas.*—*Jube maneat.*
- (3) In Apposition. *Vetus est lex illa, ut idem amici velint.*—*Hoc te rogo, ne demittas animum.*

2. Verbs of *caring, striving, doing, effecting* take the same constructions, forming elegant periphrases.

- (1) Videndum est *ut* re nostra bene *utamur*.—Mea magni interest te *ut videam*.—Curandum est *ut nequid desit*.—Potin' *ut* mihi molestus *ne sis*.—Fieri non potest, *ut* quis Romae *sit*, quum est Athenis.—Per fetiales fiebat *ut* justum conciperetur bellum. (2) Si fata fuissent *ut caderem* merui manu.—Vide *ne obsit* benignitas.—Cavit *ut* omnia in sua potestate *essent*.—Ego *nequid* nocere *possint* caverō.—Caveto disciplinam temere *contemnas*.—Curata fac *sint* omnia.—Pol me fecisse arbitror *ne* id mihi merito *eveniret*.—Vos effici posse sine Deo negatis, *ut* natura tot mundos *effectura sit, efficiat, effecerit*.—Potes efficere *ut* male moriar; *ne moriar* non potes.—Nolo committere *ut* in scribendo negligens fuisse *videar*. (3) Danda est opera, *ut effugiamus*.—Id agit vir, *ut se conservet*.

- (a) Predications of fearing take *ne*, *ne non*, and *ut* for *ne non*:  
Ea timet *ne deseras* se.—Verebimini *ne non* id *facerem*.—Metuo *ut credant*.—Id paves, *ne ducas* tu illam, tu autem *ut ducas*.
- (β) *Licet, necesse est, oportet*, omit Conjunction:  
*Ludas licet*.—Mihi patronus *sim* necesse est.—*Valeat* possessor *oportet*.
- (γ) Verbs of wishing (also *oportet*) may take Perf. Passive Infinitive:  
*Nollem factum*.—*Mansum* oportuit.—*Rempublicam defensam* volo.

### III. INTERROGATIO OBLIQUA (indirect Question) with Subjunctive after oblique Interrogative Pronouns and Particles.

- (1) As Subject. In beneficio videndum est *quando et cui et quemadmodum et quare demus*.
- (2) As Object. *Quid agas, ubi futurus sis, quales res nostras reliqueris, cura ut sciamus*.—*Ut placeat* juveni percunctare, *utque* cohorti.—*Nescio an venerit*.—*Nescio an non venerit*.
- (3) In Apposition. *Ipsē qui sit, utrum sit an non sit*, id quoque nescit. (See Verg. Ecl. vi.; G. i. 1 &c. Hor. Epist. 15, 1–25.)

#### (B) ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

##### I. Consecutive Clauses (*so that*).

*Et* (*so that*), *ut non*, *ut nihil*, *ut nullus*, *ut nemo* &c., take Subjunctive.

- (1) After Demonstratives *talīs, tantus, is, ita, tam, adeo* &c.  
*Quis tam demens est ut sua voluntate maereat?*—*Decorī vis ea est ut ab honesto non queat separari*.—*Titus ita facilis fuit ut nemini quicquam negaret*.
- (2) Omitting Demonstrative.  
*Arboribus consita Italia est, ut tota pomarium videatur*.
- (3) After Comparative and *quam*.  
*Isocrates majore ingenio est quam ut cum Lysia comparatur*.  
a. *Tantum* abest with two Clauses: (1) subst.; (2) adverbial.  
*Tantum abest ut id velim, ut nihil magis deprecet*.



II. Final Clauses (*ut*, *that*, *in order that*; *ne*, *lest*, *that not*).

*Ut, ne, nequis, nequando* &c., take Subjunctive.

*Ut scias*, latine jam loquar.—Laterem lavas, *ut ita dicam*.—Legum idcirco servi sumus, *ut liberi esse possimus*.—Scipio rus abiit, *ne ad causam dicendam adesset*.—Ulciscar, *ut ne impune in nos intuleris*.

(Particles of other classes often contain an idea of purpose: such are *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, *antequam*, *priusquam*, sometimes *si* &c.)

III. Causal Clauses (*because*, *since* &c.)

1. *Quod, quando, quia, quandoquidem, quoniam, quatenus, siquidem*, normally take Indic., but Subjunctive after Oratio Obliqua.

Adsumt propterea *quod* officium *sequuntur*; tacent *quia* periculum *metuunt*.—Dicite, *quandoquidem* in molli *consedimus* herba.—*Quoniam jam* nox est, discedit.

2. *Quum* (*since*, implying mental reflexion) with Subjunctive.

Quae *quum* ita *sint*, quid est quod de Archiae civitate dubitetis, praesertim *quum* in aliis quoque civitatibus *fuert* adscriptus?

- (a) For the same reason *non quod* usually requires Subjunctive.

Pugiles ingemiscunt, *non quod* doleant animo *succumbant*, sed quia profundenda voce corpus intenditur.

(*Postquam, dum, donec, si, siquidem*, may contain causal force.)

IV. Temporal Clauses (*when*, *as soon as*, *as often as* &c.).

1. *Quum, quando, quotiens, simul, ut, simul atque, ubi, postquam*, normally take Indic., but Subj. after Oratio Obliqua.

Tua res agitur, paries *quum* proximus ardet.—*Ut* vidi, ut perii!—Miserum est fodere, *ubi* sitis fauces *tenet*.—Horreo, *postquam* aspexi hanc.

- a. On *quum* with Subj. in narration, see Rule § 153 (1): *quum adesset, quum venisset* &c.

2. *Dum, donec, quoad* (*whilst, until*), *antequam, priusquam* (*before*), often take Indicative, but, when they contain a sense of purpose, or after Oratio Obliqua, they take Subjunctive.

- (1) *Dum coquitur*, interimpotabimus.—Manete *dum* redeo.—Haud desinam *donec* perfecero.—*Donec* eris felix, multos numerabis amicos.—*Donec* rediit Marcellus, de comitiis silentium fuit.—Cato, *quoad* vixit, virtutum laude crevit.—*Antequam* opprimit lux, erumpamus.

- (2) Expectate *dum* consul fiat Kaeso.—Dies praestituta est *quoad* referret.—Trepidabant, *donec* timor quietem *fecisset*.—Hannibal omnia erat expertus *priusquam* excederet pugna.—Tragoedi, *antequam* pronuntient, vocem excitant.

V. Conditional Clauses (*if, unless, provided that &c.*).

1. *Si, nisi* have three chief forms; with Indicative chiefly\* in the first, Conjunctive in the second and third forms.

(1) *Si vis potes.*—*Faciam si potero.*—*Bonus si esse vis, bene erit tibi.*—*Siquid erit, fac sciam.*—*Siquod erat grande vas, adferebant.*—*Peream si falsa loquor.*—*Ne vivam ni vera loquor.*—*Animus rediit si mecum servatur fides.*—*Sincerum est nisi vas, quodcumque infundis, acescit.*—*Hanc redde, nisi si mavis vi eripi.*—*Mirum ni illa salva est et ego perii.*—*Faciet, nisi caveo.*

(2) *Si di curent, bene bonis sit, male malis.*—*Sescenta sunt quae memorem si sit otium.*—*Si monstret, gratiam ineat.*—*Si scieris, improbe feceris, nisi monueris.*—*Non negem, si noverim.*—*Quid si taceas?*—*Redeam? non, si me obsecret.*—*Si a corona relictus sim, non queam dicere.*—*Faciat nisi caveam (caverim).*

(3) *Valerem, si hic maneres.*—*Non possem vivere, nisi in litteris viverem.*—*Si acum, credo, quaereres, acum invenisses, si appareret.*—*Si id scissem, numquam huc tetulissem pedem.*—*Si ante voluisses, esses.*—*Ni nossem causam, crederem vera hunc loqui.*—*Faceret nisi caverem (cavissem).*

- (a) In sentences of form (3), when *nisi* is used, the principal verb is sometimes Indicative, as an idiom or for the sake of emphasis.

*Nec veni, nisi fata locum sedemque dedissent.*—*Me truncus inlapsus cerebro sustulerat, nisi Faunus ictum dextra levasset.*—*Angoribus eram confectus, nisi eis restitidissem.*—*Prohibere non poterat, nisi proelio decertare vellet.*—*Labebat longius, nisi me retinuisses.*

- (β) *Si* is used to imply *purpose, wish*:

*Si fallere possit amorem.*—*Si nunc se . . . ramus ostendat.*  
Verg.

(Temporal and Conditional Sentences require large exemplification in order to be thoroughly known.)

2. *Dum, modo, dummodo, tantum, tantummodo, modo ut, dum ne, modo ne &c.* (*provided that &c.*) take Subjunctive:

*Oderint dum metuant.*—*Scies, modo ut tacere possis.*—*Gallia belli patitur injurias, dummodo repellat servitutem.*—*Sed patiari licet, dum ne contempta relinquar.*—*Velis tantummodo, expugnabis.*

\* In these Compound Sentences the Clause containing the condition (*si, nisi*) is called *Protasis*, its answer in the Principal Sentence *Apodosis*. Of their three chief forms, that which has Indicative in the Protasis has been called by some grammarians 'Sumptio Dati,' because it suggests neither probability nor improbability: the second (Conjunctive Pres. or Perf. answered by Conjunctive), 'Sumptio Dandi,' as suggesting a probable or, at least, possible case: the third (Conjunctive Imperf. or Plup., answered by one of the two), *Sumptio Ficti*, as suggesting a case of a purely imaginary and unreal kind. See MANUAL.

VI. Concessive Clauses (*although, whereas*).(The demonstrative *tamen* often accompanies.)

- 1.
- Etsi, tametsi, etiamsi*
- , as they contain
- si*
- , mainly follow its rules.

*Tamen etsi res bene gesta est, corde suo trepidat.*—*Memini, tametsi nullus moneas.*

- 2.
- Quamquam, utut*
- , prefer Indicative :

*Quamquam festinas, non est mora longa.*—*Utut erga me est meritis, mihi cordi est tamen.*

- 3.
- Licet, quum, ut*
- (meaning
- although*
- ), take Subjunctive. Also
- quamvis*
- usually, but not when it contains a matter of fact.

*Quod turpe est, quamvis occultetur, tamen honestum non fit.*—*Ut desint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas.*—*Phocion fuit pauper, quum divitissimus esse posset.*—*Polio amat nostram, quamvis est rustica, musam.*VII. Comparative Clauses (*as if; as though*).*Tamquam, ceu, velut, quasi, tamquam si, ut si, ac si, quam si* &c., require Subjunctive :*Parvi primo ortu jacent, tamquam sine animo sint.*—*Natura cornua dedit arietum generi, ceu caestus daret.*—*Hujus rem ut tueare, aequae a te peto, ac si mea negotia essent.*—*Sic Plancius quaestor est factus, quam si esset summo loco natus.*—*Stultum est in luctu capillum sibi evellere, quasi calvitio maeror levetur.*

## Note 1. Conjunctions are often suppressed :

*Decies centena dedisses huic parco, paucis contento, quinque diebus nil erat in loculis.*—*Partem opere in tanto, sineret dolor, Icare, haberes.*—*Naturam expellas furca, tamen usque recurret.*Also in Comparative Sentences, when *tamquam, ceu, velut* are used alone, *si* must be understood ; and when *si* is used (as in *ac si, quam si* &c.), its true apodosis is suppressed. 'Aequae a te peto *ac si* mea negotia essent' means 'aequae a te peto *ac peterem, si* mea negotia essent ;' just as in Virgil (*Aen. ii. 522*), '*non si ipse meus nunc adforet Hector*' means '*non egeret si*' &c.Note 2. Many of the Particles cited (*nisi, etsi, quamquam, quamvis, tamquam, ceu, velut, quasi*) can be used, like *ut (as)*, with annexive power, without affecting mood.*Labienus juravit se, nisi victorem, in castra non rediturum.*—*Etsi non iniquum, certe tamen triste senatusconsultum factum est.*—*Haec, mira quamquam, credebantur.*—*Res bello gesserat, quamvis reipublicae calamitosas, attamen magnas.*—*Nostine hominem ? Tamquam te.*—*Litteras graecas sic avidae arripui, quasi diuturnam sitim explere cupiens.*—*Demosthenis orationes converti, non ut interpretes, sed ut orator.*

## (C) ADJECTIVAL CLAUSES.

*Qui quae quod*, as a mere Relative (when not suboblique), takes Indicative: *bis dat, qui cito dat*. See p. 156.

## I. It is largely used as Consecutive, with Subjunctive Verb.

(1) After a Demonstrative *talīs*, *is* &c.

(2) Omitting Demonstrative, after words of various kinds: Comparative and *quam*; *dignus*, *indignus* &c.; *est*, *sunt*, *invenio*, *reperio*, *habeo*, and many more verbs; *aliquis*, *pauci*, *multi*, *solus*, with indefinite sense; *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil* &c., and Interrogatives: in short, wherever it implies *talīs ut*, of such kind that.

(1) Non is sum *qui* his rebus delecter.—Nihil tanti est *quo* vendamus libertatem.

(2) *Majora deliquerant quam quibus ignosci posset*.—*Dignus est qui imperet*. *Est qui vinci possit*.—*Inventus est qui flammis imponeret manum*.—*Habes qui adsideat, fomenta parat*. *Est aliquid quod non oporteat, etiamsi licet*.—*Solus es, Gai Caesar, in cuius victoria nemo ceciderit nisi armatus*. *Nihil est quod tam deceat quam constantia*.\*

a. *Quod sciam, so far as I know: quod meminerim*.

II. *Qui*, with Final Sense, takes Subjunctive:

*Litteras misi, quibus et placarem eum et monerem*.

a. Thus *quo* for *ut eo*, especially with Comparatives:  
*Ager noratur, quo meliores fructus edat*.

β. Hence the use of *quominus*. See below.

III. *Qui*, with Causal Sense, like *quum*, takes Subjunctive:

*Miseret tui me, qui hunc facias inimicum tibi*.

*Multaque se incusat, qui non acceperit ultro*  
*Dardanium Aenean, generumque adsciverit urbi*.

a. So *ut qui, quippe qui*. The latter rarely has Indic.

β. Observe *non quod, non quo*: also *non quin* for *non quia non*.

*Appellantur insignia, non quod sola ornent sed quod excellant*.  
The mood of *excellant* arises from Virtual Oratio Obliqua in *appellantur*. See (D). 2; (B). III. a.

IV. *Qui*, with Concessive Sense, like *quum*, takes Subjunctive:

*Egomet, qui leviter graecas litteras attigissem, tamen Athenis commoratus sum*.

V. Relative Particles, *quo, qua, quomodo, ubi, quare, cur, quatenus, unde*, are used with Mood on the same principles as *qui*:

*Perge quo coepisti*. *Digna res est ubi nervos intendas*.—*Erat nihil cur properato opus esset*.—*Est quatenus amicitiae dari venia possit*.—*Dum est unde jus civile discatur, adulescentes in disciplinam tradite*.

\* *Is qui, est qui, sunt qui*, take Indic., when *qui* is definite, not implying *talīs ut*. See Hor. C. i. 1, 12.

NOTE. The Conjunctions *quominus*, *quin*.

1. *Quominus*, after predications of *hindrance*, takes Subjunctive:

Senectus non impedit *quominus* litteris *utamur*.—Non recusat *quominus* poenam *subiret*. Per Afranium stetit *quominus* *dimicaretur*.

- a. *Ne* after such Verbs *forbids* or *hinders* the action:

Pontus erat vetitus *ne mergeret* aequore terram.—Sulpicius intercesserat *ne exsules reducerentur*.

2. *Quin* (1), for *qui non*, after Negative and Interrogative words, follows the rules of *qui* consecutive:

Nihil est *quin* male narrando *possit* depravari.—Nullum intermisi diem *quin scriberem*.—Quis fundum colit *quin sues habeat*?

- (2) For *qui non*, *ut non*, after a negation or question of *doubt*, *stoppage*, *cause* &c.:

Non dubito *quin fuerint* ante Homerum poetae.—Nec requies *quin* mox pomis *exuberet* annus.—Facere non possum *quin* cotidie ad te *mittam*.—Prorsus nihil abest *quin sim* miserrimus.—*Quin* ad diem *decedam* nulla causa est.—Quis dubitet *quin* in virtute divitiarum *positas sint*? Quid est causae *quin* decemviri coloniam in Janiculum *possint* deducere?

#### (D) SUBOBLIQUE CONSTRUCTION.

1. If a Finite Verb is really subordinated to Oratio Obliqua by any Conjunction or Relative, it will assume the Subjunctive, as the Mood of Thought.

- (1) Ais, *quoniam sit* natura mortalis, *immortalem* etiam esse oportere.—Scito me, *postquam* in urbem *venerim*, *redisse* cum libris in gratiam.—Omnes intellegunt, *si salvi* esse *velint*, necessitati esse parendum.—Simile veri est, non ex eisdem semper populis exercitus scriptos, *quamquam* eadem semper gens bellum *intulerit*.—Caesar ad me scripsit, gratis sibi esse *quod quieverim*.—Epicurum arbitror omnia tradidisse, *quae pertinerent* ad bene beateque vivendum.—Sapientissimum esse dicunt eum, *cui, quod opus sit, ipsi veniat* in mentem; prope accedere illum, *qui alterius bene inventis obtemperet*.—Ariovistus respondit: *siquid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; siquid ille a se velit, illum ad se venire oportere*.

- (2) Illud omnes pro certo habent, ut, *quemadmodum* ratione recte fiat, sic ratione peccetur.—Caesar hortatus est milites, ne ea, *quae accidissent, graviter ferrent*.

- (3) Solon, quum interrogaretur, cur nullum supplicium constituisset in eum *qui parentem necasset*, respondit, se id neminem facturum putasse.

- (a) If the Finite Clause does not really form a part of the Oratio Obliqua, but is interposed or added by a writer or speaker

for explanation or as a mere epithet, it need not **assume** the Subjunctive; for it suggests fact, not thought.

Atticum gloriantem audiui, se numquam cum sorore fuisse in similitate, *quam* prope aequalem *habebat*.—Xerxem litteris certior feci, id agi ut pons, *quem* in Hellesponto *fecerat*, dissolveretur.—Eloquendi vis efficit ut ea, *quae* *ignoramus*, discere, et ea, *quae* *scimus*, alios docere possimus.

(β) On the idiom of *dum* see § 153 (2).

Quanto laudabilius periturum Pisonem, *dum* rempublicam amplectitur, *dum* auxilia libertati *invocat*!

2. When a Principal Verb, by its own meaning (as *accusare*, *laudare*, *queri*, *vituperare*), or by its context, *implies a statement or thought* on the part of its Subject (that is, implies Oratio Obliqua), the Finite Verb subordinated to it by a Conjunction or Relative will be Subjunctive, as Virtually Suboblique.

(1) Laudat Africanum Panaetius, *quod fuerit* abstinens.—Phalereus Demetrius Periclem vituperat, *quod tantam pecuniam in praeclara illa propylaea conjecerit*.—Falso queritur de natura sua genus humanum, *quod imbecilla atque aevi brevis forte potius quam virtute regatur*.—Socrates accusatus est *quod corrumpere* juventutem.—Sapiens non dubitat, *si ita melius sit*, migrare de vita.—Nemo umquam oratorem, *quod latine loqueretur*, admiratus est.—Recte Socrates exsecrari eum solebat, *qui primus utilitatem ab honestate sejunxisset*.

(2) Darius ejus pontis, *dum ipse abesset*, custodes reliquit.—Caesar ab Helvetiis pacem petentibus servos, *qui ad eos perfugissent*, poposcit.—Volsi, *quia* nondum ab Aequis *venissent* auxilia, dimicare non ausi.—Alium rogantes regem misere ad Jovem, *inutilis quoniam esset* qui fuerat datus.—At enim memoria minuitur. Credo, *nisi eam exerceas*.—Cotta liberos mihi lega vit, *quos frater suus reliquisset*.—Prorogatum veteribus imperatoribus est imperium cum exercitibus *quos haberent*.—Fit Beroe... *cui* genus et quondam nomen natique fuissent, V. Aen. v. 620. Comp. ix. 289, where 'quod nequeam' is subordinate to the Or. Obl. implied in 'testis' (me hanc insalutatam linquere).

(α) A Verb which implies Oratio Obliqua, when used in the Third Person, does not necessarily imply it when used in the First. Thus, 'laudo te *quod paruisti*' is strictly right. But a Verb in the First Person may imply Oratio Obliqua, as 'credo' in Ex. 5 of (2), and in Virgil, G. i. 415.

(β) By a Latin idiom, 'Verba sentiendi et declarandi,' when subordinate to the Indicative, often assume the Subjunctive.

Ab Atheniensibus, locum sepulturae intra urbem ut darent, impetrare non potui, *quod religione se impediri dicerent*.—Qui e Gallia veniunt, superbiam tuam accusant, *quod negent* te percunctantibus respondere.

3. A Finite Verb subordinate to a Subjunctive is usually Subjunctive.

Erat in Hortensio memoria tanta, ut, *quae* secum *commentatus esset*, ea sine scripto verbis eisdem redderet, *quibus cogitavisset*.

4. By the peculiar Ellipsis called Zeugma, one Verb takes various constructions, to all which it is not alike suitable.

Sociis tunc arma capessant  
Edico et dira bellum cum gente gerendum.

V. Aen. iii. 234 (see iv. 288-294).

The three constructions of Oratio Obliqua (statement, will-speech, and question) are thus often blended by historians (especially by Caesar, Livy, Tacitus) when they report speeches in that indirect form, which is called Oblique Narration.

- (1) Thrasybulus, quum exercitus triginta tyrannorum fugeret, magna voce exclamat: *Cur se victorem fugiant?* Civium illam meminerint aciem, non hostium esse: triginta se dominis, non civitati, bellum inferre. Just. v. 10.
- (2) Bomilcar Jugurtham monet atque lacrimans obtestatur, *uti aliquando sibi liberisque et genti Numidarum optime merenti provideat; omnibus proeliis sese victos, agrum vastatum, multos mortales captos aut occisos, regni opes comminutas esse, satis saepe jam et virtutem militum et fortunam tentatam: caveat ne illo cunctante Numidae sibi consulant.* Sall. Jug. 62.
- (3) Consules scripta ad Caesarem mandata remittunt, quorum haec erat summa: Caesar in Galliam reverteretur, Arimino excederet, exercitus dimitteret; quae si fecisset, Pompeium in Hispanias iturum. Caes. B. C. i. 10.
- (4) Caesar centuriones vementer in cusavit, primum, *quod* aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent: *Ariovistum, se* consule, cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse; *cur* hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? *Sibi* quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta, eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, *quid* tandem vererentur, aut *cur* de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Caes. B. G. i. 40.
- (α) Historians in Oblique Narration sometimes place an indirect question in the Infinitive Clause; sometimes they use the Infinitive Clause in dependence on a Conjunction.  
Plebs fremit: *'Quid se vivere, quid in parte civium censi, si, quod duorum hominum virtute partum sit, id obtinere universi non possint.'* Liv. vii. 18 (see i. 50).  
Tribuni aiebant: fugere senatum testes, tabulas publicas, census cujusque; *quum interim obaeratam plebem objectari aliis atque aliis hostibus.* Liv. vi. 27.

#### SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.

##### I. On the Latin Infinitive (p. 140).

###### 1. As a Verb-noun:

Subject (a) of the Impersonal Verbs oportet &c. (p. 145);

(b) Of *est* with Adjectives and Substantives (meum, tuum, nostrum, impium, miserum, utile, aequum &c.) *est*; (sapientis,

insipientis &c.) est; (animus, consilium, copia, fas, nefas, fatum, mos, operae pretium, potestas, religio, sententia, studium, tempus &c.) est; (cordi, curae, moris &c.) est.

## 2. Prolatively:

### (a) With Participles and Adjectives (chiefly in poetry):

Paratus, peritus, avidus, certus, dignus, felix, nescius, solers &c. &c.

### (b) With Passive Verbs of copulative nature (arguor, colligor, comperior, credor, demonstror, dicor, existimor, feror, fingor, indicor, insimulor, intellegor, invenior, judicor, jubeor, memoror, narror, negor, nuntior, ostendor, perhibeor, praedicor, probor, prohibeor, putor, reperior, sinor, trador, vetor, and especially videor). See p. 140.

### (c) With a large body of extensible Verbs:

(1) Intransitive of *power, skill, will, custom; effort, plan, design; haste, delay; beginning, proceeding, ceasing; fearing; scorning; joy, sorrow* (possum, nequeo, scio, nescio &c.; volo, nolo, studeo, audeo &c.; soleo, adsuesco &c.; cogito, memini, meditor, conor, incumbo, insto, laboro, molior, contendo, tendo; paro, peto, quaero; decerno, statuo &c.; consilium capio, festino &c.; propero &c.; cesso, cunctor, dubito, moror &c.; coepi, incipio &c.; pergo &c.; absisto, desisto, desino, mitto &c.; metuo, timeo, vereor, horreo, paveo, trepido &c.; aspernor, dedignor, caveo, fugio, gravor &c.; gaudeo, laetor, doleo &c.

(2) Transitive and trajective Verbs of *allowing, denying, hindering; wishing, praying, advising, teaching, exhorting, commanding, forbidding* &c. which may have an Object noun with an Infinitive (permitto, do, sino, recuso &c.; cupio, opto, oro &c.; hortor &c.; moneo &c.; suadeo, persuadeo &c.; adigo, subigo, impello, ago, cogo, stimulo &c.; jubeo, impero &c.; prohibeo &c.; veto).

## II. On Enuntiatio Obliqua (indirect Statement), p. 161.

Indirect Statement by the Infinitive Clause (Accus. with Inf.) may accompany most predications of *perception, feeling, opinion, or assertion*.

### 1. As Subject, with the Impersonals shown p. 145, b. 2, and some others: with *est* joined to many Adjectives, Substantives, and Adverbs: such as, certum, credibile, decorum, falsum, mirum, miserum, non dubium, perspicuum, probabile, usitatum, verum, veri simile &c. &c.; fama, fas, jus, nuntius, rumor, suspicio, tempus, testis &c. &c.; aegre, palam, satis &c.

### 2. As Object, with

(1) Accipio, audio, agnosco, animadverto, comperio, intellego, sentio, video &c.; cogito, memini, recordor &c.; arbitror, censeo (*deem*), credo, duco, existimo, judico, opinor, puto, reor, suspicor



&c.; confido, diffido, dubito &c.; gaudeo, laetor, angor, doleo, aegre (moleste) fero &c.; indignor, miror, queror, and others. (On 'spero' see below.)

- (2) Dico, praedico, aio, addo, respondeo, clamo, memoro, nuntio, perhibeo, fero (*report*), narro, prodo, trado, cano &c.; fateor, confiteor, ostendo, gratulor &c.; affirmo, confirmo, arguo, contendo, dissero, doceo (*inform*) &c.; nego, infitior, infitias eo, diffiteor &c.; glorior, mentior, fingo, facio (= fingo), simulo, dissimulo &c.; pono (*propose*), probro, colligo, concludo, efficio (*prove*), teneo (*maintain*), and others.
- (3) Spero, despero &c.; polliceor, promitto, recipio &c.; juro &c.; minor, minitor &c. regularly take Fut. Inf., but are found with Pres. Inf.; spero often with posse.
- (4) The Infin. Clause may stand with many of the Will-verbs, which take other constructions also: permitto, patior, sino &c.; moneo, persuadeo, postulo &c.; cogo, jubeo, impero, mando, praecipio &c.; prohibeo, veto, impedio (rare) &c.
- (a) On the Infin. Clause without preceding verb, used to express indignant surprise:—on the suppression of an indefinite or pronoun subject in the clause:—on Greek idioms occurring in Latin:—on the convenient substitution of Passive for Active Clause:—and on the construction of Copulative Verbs Passive personally with Simple Infin. (p. 140), see *MANUAL OF COMPOUND CONSTRUCTION*, § 15, 6–10, with the examples.
- (β) On the *Ut*-clause and the *Quod*-clause (for Infin. Clause), see *MANUAL*, §§ 16, 17.

### III. On Petitio Obliqua (indirect Will-speech), p. 162.

The chief Will-speech Verbs are:

- (1) Permitto, concedo, patior, sino, do, recuso &c.; cupio, opto, volo, malo, nolo &c.; oro, rogo, peto, posco, postulo, flagito, precor, quaeso, contendo, obsecro, obtestor, veneror &c.; hortor, moneo, moveo, persuadeo, suadeo, cogo, impello, induco, auctor sum &c.; censeo, decerno, edico, jubeo, impero, mando, praecipio &c.; sancio &c.; dico, mitto, nuntio, respondeo, scribo &c., implying command; prohibeo, veto, impedio &c.; with some compounds of these, and other forms, *lex est*, *placet*, *visum est*, *licet*, *necesse est*, *oportet* &c.
- (2) Caveo, curo, studeo, video, provideo, id ago, operam do, enitor &c.; facio, efficio, perficio, committo, consequor, adipiscor, assequor, impetro, pervinco &c.; with other forms, *fit*, *feri potest*, *potis est* &c. All the constructions of Verbs (1) (2) are of Final nature.
- (a) See *MANUAL* (§§ 18–25) for examples of these Verbs, and of those which express Fear, Caution, Desire: of Impersonal predications, and of elegant periphrases with *facio*, *committo* &c.

### IV. On Interrogatio Obliqua (indirect Question), p. 162.

Indirect Questions contain a Subjunctive introduced by an Interrogative Pronoun or Particle dependent on various predications.

The pronouns and particles are :

Quis, qualis, quot, quantus, uter, quotus, unde, ubi, quando, cur, quare, quo, qua, quam, quomodo, num, ne, ut, an, utrum, with some others.

The leading predication are those of *stating, hearing, knowing, remembering, forgetting, inquiring, doubting, wondering, caring, considering, determining, concerning*, and the like. Most of the Latin Verbs forming such predication are included in the lists already given; others will be easily recognised in the course of reading, and need not be specified here.

*Obs.* The Subjunctive in an indirect question is (like the Mood with *ut, so that*) an idiom of classical Latin, differing from Greek and from English usage. Greek has *οἶδα ὃ τι βούλει*, English, *I know what you want*, where Latin says, *scio quid velis*. The oldest Latin writers often used the Indicative in this construction.

(α) The Latin Verbs in these classes ought to be well studied. Most of them take various constructions: on which see *MANUAL*, § 27.

#### V. On the Consecution of Tenses.

The Law of the Consecution of Tenses (§ 155), that Primary Tenses are followed by Primary, Historic by Historic, is illustrated by all the foregoing examples, especially by those of *Petitio* and *Interrogatio Obliqua*, Consecutive and Final Clauses. The following scheme shows it simply :

|                     |   |                                            |
|---------------------|---|--------------------------------------------|
| P. Rogo             | } | quid agas, egeris, acturus                 |
| Oportet me scire    |   | sis.                                       |
| Rogabo              |   | quid agatur, actum sit, agendum sit.       |
| Oportebit me scire  | } |                                            |
| H. Rogabam          |   | quid ageres, egresses, acturus esses.      |
| Oportebat me scire  |   | quid ageretur, actum esset, agendum esset. |
| Rogavi              | } |                                            |
| Oportuit me scire   |   |                                            |
| Rogaveram           |   |                                            |
| Oportuerat me scire | } |                                            |

(α) A Present-Past *rogavi* (*I have inquired*) is strictly a Primary Tense, and should have Primary Consecution: but Cicero generally gives it Historic Consecution.

(β) A Historic Present is often used with Historic Consecution: but not necessarily.

(γ) The Infinitive acquires conditional power by means of the Future Participle :

Scio eum venturum esse si possit,  
*I know that he will come if he can.*

Sciebam eum venturum esse si posset,  
*I knew that he would come if he could.*

Sciebam eum venturum fuisse si potuisset,  
*I knew that he would have come if he could.*

This subject, with the use of Reflexive Pronouns in Clauses, is fully treated in the *MANUAL*, §§ 59 &c.

## GLOSSARIUM GRAMMATICUM.



[N. E., Notes on Etymology. N. S., Notes on Syntax. N. P., Notes on Prosody. An Asterisk marks the new terms adopted in this Book.]

### A.

*Ablativus* (auferre, to take away), the Ablative Case, so called from one of its uses (Departure). §§ 110–125. See *Case*.

*Absolutus Ablativus* (absolvere, to release), the Ablative Absolute, because it stands released, as it were, from government. § 125.

*Accident*, any change happening (accidens) to a word. § 11 (3).

*Accusativus* (accusare, to accuse), the Accusative Case, because the accused is the *Object* of prosecution. Gr. αἰτιατικὴ πρῶσις. § 95.

*Activa vox* (agere, to do), the Active Voice of Verbs, expresses 'doing.'

*Adjectivum*, Adjective (quod adjicitur Substantivo). Gr. ἐπιθετον, epithet. §§ 32, 87, 89.

*Adverbial and Adjectival Clauses*. N. S. Appendix ii. pp. 158, 162, 166.

*Adverbium*, Adverb, 'quia ad Verbum est' Gr. ἐπίρρημα. §§ 9, 37, 82.

*Alphabet*, the Letters of a language, from Alpha, Beta (A, B), the two first letters in Greek, § 1.

\* *Annexive Relation*, that by which one word is annexed to another, so as to take the same construction. § 146.

*Anomala*, Irregular Words, Gr. ἀνώμαλα (ἀ, not; ὁμαλος, even). §§ 25, 78.

*Apodosis* (ἀποδιδόναι, to render back), a Principal Sentence limited by a Clause called Protasis (προτείνειν, to stretch before). N. S. p. 164.

*Appositum* (apponere, to place beside), an Appositive, or Substantive placed beside another in Qualitative relation. §§ 87, 90. See *Attributum*.

*Asyndeton* (ἀ, not; συνδέειν, to bind together), the annexing of words without a conjunction.

*Attractio* (attrahere, to draw to), a Figure of Syntax. § 159 N. S. i. E. 2.

*Attributum* (attribuere, to assign), Attribute; an Adjective assigned to qualify a Substantive. §§ 87, 89. The Qualitative relation of an Attribute or Appositive to the words they qualify may be

(1) Epithetic: Croesus dives; Croesus rex.

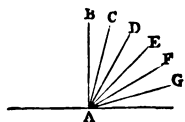
(2) Attributively Enthetic (see *Enthesis*): Croesus, regum ditissimus, vincitur; Croesus, rex Lydorum, vincitur.

(3) Adverbially Enthetic: Croesus non dives interiit; Croesus non rex interiit.

(4) Complemental: Croesus fuit dives; Croesus fit rex. § 87.

## C.

*Casus* (cadere, to fall), Case. Gr. πᾶσις. A. By Case is meant the form given to a Noun or Pronoun in order to show the relation in which it stands to some other word in the sentence. Case (casus, from cado)



is, literally, a falling. Grammarians represented that form which a Noun takes when it is the Subject of a sentence, by an upright line, as AB, and likened the other forms to lines falling away from the perpendicular at various angles; as, AC, AD, AE, AF, &c. These they called *Cases*; and their series, the *declension*, *declining*, or *sloping*

down, of the word. Afterwards, the Nominative or Subject case was called (with evident impropriety) *Casus Rectus*, the *Upright Case*, and the others (except the Vocative) *Casus Obliqui*, *Oblique Cases*; whereas the *Stem* (or *Crude-form*) of the word is more properly the upright line, and the several Cases, including the Nominative and Vocative, are branches deflecting from it. So, from the Stem *nuc-* (walnut-tree) the Cases are: N.V. *nuc-s* (= *nux*), Acc. *nuc-em*, G. *nuc-is*, D. *nuc-i*, Ab. *nuc-e*.

B. The Relations which Cases fail to express are supplied by Prepositions; and in the languages of modern Europe the use of Prepositions prevails, and Declension is comparatively rare. Thus the languages derived from Latin (Italian, French, Spanish, and Portuguese) have only one Case-form in each Number for Nouns; English, two; German, four; but the Possessive Case in English is of limited use, and German Declension is freely developed only in the Articles. Of the ancient Aryan tongues, Sanskrit had the six Latin Cases and two more, the Instrumental and the Locative. Greek had only five cases in use, discarding the Ablative, the functions of which it divides between the Genitive and the Dative; but it retains traces of the Instrumental and the Locative. Latin retains many fragments of the Locative Case, as shown here and there in this Grammar; while the Pronominal forms, *mihi*, *tibi*, *sibi*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *ubi*, *ibi*, together with the Cases in *-bus*, appear to spring out of the primitive Instrumental Case, though in meaning they have lost all connection with it.

C. The primary force of the Cases is a much debated and still undecided question. Modern Grammarians have been inclined generally to explain it by relations of place and extent; and there is much speciousness in the theory which, taking the Nominative as the moving agent, regards the Ablative as the point which motion leaves, the Accusative as that to which it extends, and the Dative as the point of rest. But this theory fails to account for the Sanskrit and Latin Genitive; and against it may be urged that it assigns to the Ablative a place which in Greek is taken by the Genitive, and also that the Latin Ablative includes uses hardly consistent with that which is here stated to be its distinctive use. In this book classical usage has been followed, but without prejudice (it is hoped) to the future study of philosophical grammar.

*Causalis Clausula*, a Causal Clause; an Adverbial Clause introduced by *quod*, *quia*, *quum*, &c. § 152. Appendix II. p. 163.

*Character* (χαρακτήρ, an impressed mark), usually means the last letter of the Stem of an inflected word. § 11.

*Circumstantive Relation*, the relation in which a Word or Phrase stands to the Verb when it modifies it adverbially. Such is that of Adverbs, Prepositions with their Cases, the Ablative Case always, the Accusative Case often.

*Clausula* (claudere, to inclose), a Clause. This term is used to express any Subordinate Sentence. Co-ordinate Sentences are also called Clauses, but are not discussed in elementary Grammar. See *Enthesis*.

*Collectiva* (colligere, to gather together), Collective Nouns or Nouns of Multitude. N. S. I. E. 3.

*Comparativa Clausula*, a Comparative Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by quasi, tamquam, ut si, &c. P. 165.

\* *Complementum* (complere, to complete), the Complement, that which completes the construction of a Simple Sentence, when its Verb is Copulative (or Factive). §§ 87, 93, 99. N. S. II. See *Predicate*.

\* *Compositum Subjectum*, a Composite Subject. § 92. N. S. I. F.

*Concessiva Clausula* (concedere, to grant), a Concessive Clause, an Adverbial Clause introduced by etsi, quamvis, &c. P. 165.

*Conditionalis Clausula* (conditio, a condition), the Protasis of a Conditional Sentence. P. 164.

*Congruentia* (congruere, to agree), Agreement. §§ 88-92.

*Conjugatio* (conjugare, to yoke together), the Flexion of Verbs. §§ 11 48.

*Conjunctio* (conjungere, to unite), Conjunction. Gr. σύνδεσμος. §§ 85 152.

*Conjunctivus Modus*, Conjunctive Mood; the Thought-mood in Latin, used purely or subjunctively. §§ 42, 65, 148. Pp. 152, 157.

*Consecutio Temporum* (consequi, to ensue), Consecution of Tenses. § 155. P. 172.

*Consecutiva Clausula*, a Consecutive Clause; an Adverbial Clause denoting consequence, introduced by ut, so that. P. 162.

*Consonantes Litterae* (consonare, to sound with), Consonants. § 3.

## SCHEME OF THE CONSONANTS.

|                              | MUTES       |      | LIQUIDS |        |       | SPIRANTS |      |       |           | DOUBLE |
|------------------------------|-------------|------|---------|--------|-------|----------|------|-------|-----------|--------|
|                              | Hard        | Soft | Rauque  | Smooth | Nasal | Sibilant | Pure | Mixed | Semivowel |        |
| GUTTURAL, or Throat sounds } | o<br>(k, q) | g    | ..      | ..     | ..    | ..       | h    | ..    | ..        | x      |
| DENTAL, or Teeth sounds }    | t           | d    | r       | l      | n     | s        | ..   | ..    | j         | z      |
| LABIAL, or Lip sounds }      | p           | b    | ..      | ..     | m     | ..       | ..   | f     | v         |        |

*Contractio* (contrahere, to draw together), the fusion of two vowels into one long one; as, fidei, fide.

*Copulativa Verba* (copulare, to couple), Copulative Verbs. § 87. N. S. II.

Besides *Sum*, they comprise the Verbs—

forem, *might be*  
fio, *become*  
appareo, *appear*  
existo, *stand forth*  
evado, *turn out*

audio, *am called*  
maneo, *remain*  
nascor, *am born*  
videor, *seem*

with some others: also, many Passives of a class of Verbs called *Facitive* (facere), because they contain the idea of *making*, by deed, thought, or word; such Passives are—

efficio, *am made*  
creor, *am created*  
designor, *am marked out*  
legor, *am chosen*  
eligor, *am elected*  
declaror, *am declared*  
renuntior, *am proclaimed*  
nominor, nuncupor, *am named*  
salutor, *am saluted*  
appellor, vocor, *am called*  
inscribor, *am entitled*  
aestimator, *am esteemed*  
numerator, *am reckoned*

credor, *am believed*  
existimor, putor, *am thought*  
ducor, *am deemed*  
habeor, *am held*  
censeor, *am counted*  
agnoscor, *am acknowledged*  
dicor, *am said*  
narror, *am related*  
feror, perhibeor, trador, *am reported*  
invenior, reperior, *am found*  
deprehendor, *am discovered*  
arguor, probor, *am proved*.

*Correlativa*, Pronouns and Particles which mutually correspond in their several classes. § 38. N. E. III.

## D.

*Dativus Casus* (dare, to give; Gr. δοτική πᾶσις), the Dative (Receptive) Case. §§ 104–109. N. S. IV.

*Declinatio* (declinare, to slope down), the Flexion of Nouns. § 12. See Case.

*Defectiva* (deficere, to fail), Words wanting some forms. §§ 25, 74.

*Deminutiva* (deminuere, to lessen). N. E. I. D. 2.

*Deponens Verbum*, a Deponent Verb, so called because it lays aside (deponit) Active form, having Active sense. § 40.

## E.

*Ellipsis* (ἐλλείπειν, to leave out), a Figure of Syntax. § 158. N. S. I. E. 1.

*Enclitica*, (ἐγκλίναι, to lean on), words which throw back their accent on the word before them: as, -quē, -vē, -ně.

\**Enthesis* (ἐντιθέναι, to place in), a group of words, sometimes one word, forming an abbreviated Adjectival or Adverbial Clause. An Ablative Absolute is usually an Adverbial Enthesis of Time, Cause, or Condition. See *Attributum*.

*Enuntiatio* (enuntiare, to state), a statement; the first and principal of the three forms of a Simple Sentence. P. 155.

*Enuntiatio Obliqua*, Oblique Enuntiation (indirect statement), the first and principal of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Its chief form is the Infinitive Clause (Accusative-and-Infinitive). Pp. 155, 158, 161.

*Epithet* (ἐπιθετον), an Adjective simply qualifying a Noun: vir bonus, a good man. § 87. See *Attributum*.

## F.

*Factiva Verba* (facere, to make), Factive Verbs. § 99. N. S. III. D.

*Figura, Figure* (figere, to fashion), a term used in Grammar for a 'Fashion' which departs from ordinary use. Figures are either of Etymology (as Contraction), of Syntax (as Ellipsis), of Prosody (as Synaloepha), or of Rhetoric (as Metaphora).

*Finalis Clausula* (finis, end), Final Clause; an Adverbial Clause, expressing purpose: introduced by *ut, in order that; ne, lest, &c.* P. 163.

*Finitum Verbum*, Finite Verb; a term comprising the three moods of a Verb, which have limits (fines), especially of Person, from which the other forms (hence called Verbum Infinitum) are free. § 42.

*Flexio* (flectere, to bend), Flexion; also called Inflection. § 11.

## G.

*Genetivus* (γενική πτώσις), the Genitive (Proprietary) Case. § 126-136. N. S. VI.

*Genus* (kind), Gender; the distinction of Nouns, as Masculine (m.), Feminine (f.), or Neuter (n.), that is, neither of the two former.

*Gerundium: Gerundivum* (gerere, to perform). The Gerundive is the Latin Participle in *dus*, and the Gerund is probably its Neuter Singular, declined as a Substantive, and attached to the Infinitive Verb-noun. The Gerundive seems to have been originally a Present Participle (*oriundus, volvenda dies*, etc.), but whether Active or Passive is disputed. § 140. N. S. VII.

*Graecismus*, Graecism; the imitation of a Greek idiom in Latin.

## H.

*Historic Infinitive*, the Infinitive used in direct predication for a Finite Verb. § 140, 2. N. S. VII. A.

## I.

*Imperativus Modus* (imperare, to command), the Will-mood in Verbs, which commands or entreats. § 42. Pp. 150, 151.

*Impersonalia Verba* (in, not, persona, person), Impersonal Verbs, which cannot take a Personal Pronoun as Subject. §§ 75, 145. N. S. IX. F.

*Indicativus Modus* (indicare, to show), the Fact-mood in Verbs. § 42. P. 150.

*Infinitiva Clausula*, the Infinitive Clause: the Substantival Clause called Accusative and Infinitive. See *Enuntiatio Obliqua*.

*Infinitivum* (Nomen), the Verb-noun Infinitive. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII.

*Infinitivum Verbum*. §§ 45, 140. N. S. VII. See *Finitum Verbum*.

*Interjectio* (interjicere, to throw between). §§ 86, 137.

*Interrogatio Infinitiva*, the Infinitive Clause used as an indignant question. P. 161.

*Interrogatio Obliqua*, Oblique Interrogation. As Direct Interrogation is one of the three forms which a Simple Sentence may assume, so Oblique or Indirect Interrogation is one of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. § 149. Pp. 155, 158, 162.

*Intransitiva Verba*, Intransitive Verbs; Verbs which do not regularly take an Accusative of the Object. N. S. III. D. See *Transitiva*.

## K

*Kalendarium*, the Calendar or plan of the days of the Roman month; so called from *Kalendae*, the *Calends*, or first day in it. N. E. IV. C.

## L.

*Locativus* (locus, *place*), Locative Case; a case existing in Sanskrit, of which fragments remain in Greek and Latin. § 121. N. S. V. G. 2

## M.

*Mobilia Substantiva* (mobilis, *moveable*). Substantives which have a Feminine corresponding to a Masculine form. N. E. I. D. 1.

*Modus* (manner), Mood; that Accident of a Verb which shows the manner in which its action or state is conceived of. § 42. P. 150.

## N.

*Negativae Particulæ* (negare, *to deny*), Negatives. § 82. N. S. IX. A.

*Nomina* (Gr. ὀνόμα, *a name*), Nouns comprise Substantives, Adjectives, and Pronouns; but the term is often used when Substantives alone are meant. § 9.

*Nominativus Casus* (nominare, *to name*. Gr. ὀνομαστική πτῶσις). §§ 87, 88, 93. See *Case*.

\**Noun-term*, a Substantive, or what may stand for a Substantive; as Adjective, Pronoun, Verb-noun or Substantival Clause. § 87. N. S. I. C.

*Numeralia*, words representing Number. N. E. IV. A.

*Nummaria Res*, Roman money. N. E. IV. D.

## O.

*Objective Relation*, that of the Accusative of the Nearer Object to a Transitive Verb. N. S. III.

*Objectum* (objicere, *to cast in the way*), Object; that which is affected by action: if directly affected it is called Nearer Object (Accusative); if indirectly, Remoter Object (Dative). N. S. III. IV.

*Obliqua Oratio* (Oblique Discourse), any statement, command, or question expressed in indirect construction. This term includes the three Substantival Clauses: Oblique Enuntiation, Petition, and Interrogation, though sometimes used with special reference to the construction of Accusative-and-Infinitive (Infinitive Clause), which is the chief form of Oblique Enuntiation. Pp. 154, 156, 167, &c.



*Oblique Subject*, the Accusative Subject of an Infinitive. § 94.

*Oblique Complement*, the Accusative Complement of an Oblique Copulative Clause. § 94. N. S. II. A., III. D.

## P.

*Participium* (partem capere, *to take a share*), an Adjectival Verb-form which shares the functions of Adjective and Verb. §§ 45, 142. N. S. IX. D.

*Partes Orationis*, Parts of Speech, or Words. § 9.

*Particulæ*, Particles, or small Parts of Speech; a name given to the four undeclined Parts, and also including some which are only used in compound words; as, ambi-, re-, se-, in-, dis-. § 82, &c.

*Partitiva Vocabula* (partiri, *to divide*). N. S. VI. B.

*Passiva Vox* (pati, *to suffer*), the Passive Voice, or form used in Verbs to show that something is acted upon, and so '*suffers*.' This Voice is proper to Transitive Verbs only; but many Intransitive Verbs use it in Impersonal construction. § 76. A Passive Verb is often Reflexive; as, vertor, *I turn myself*. For *Passive Construction* see N. S. IX. E.

*Patronymicum* (πατήρ, *father*; ὄνομα, *name*), Patronymic, a title expressing descent from a father or ancestor.

*Perfectum* (perficere, *to complete*) *Tempus*, the Perfect Tense, which in Latin has a double use. § 48. Pp. 151, 171.

*Perfect-stem*. §§ 46, 48.

*Periphrastic Conjugation* (περιφράζειν, *to speak circuitously*). § 64.

*Petitio Obliqua*. As *Petition* (command or entreaty) is the second of the three forms of Simple Sentences, so *Oblique Petition* is the second of the three kinds of Substantival Clauses. Pp. 155, 161, 171.

*Phrasis* (φράσις), a Phrase; a combination of words, or a single word idiomatically used, containing a notion, but not forming a Clause or an Enthesis; as, multae artis, ruri, Preposition with Case, etc.

*Position* (situs), a term in Prosody to express that a vowel is short, long, or doubtful, by standing before other letters. § 162.

*Predicate* (praedicare, *to declare*), that member of a Sentence, by which something is declared of the Subject. Writers on Logic resolve every proposition into Subject, Copula, and Predicate. But in Grammar this would only mislead, for it is not in such form that authors write. Neither sum, nor any other Copulative Verb, exactly corresponds to the logical Copula; nor is the word, which any such Verb links to the Subject, in every instance identical with a logical Predicate. For these reasons (while Madvig and most other Grammarians are followed in allowing the term Predicate in Grammar to a Finite Verb) the term Complement is used to express the word or phrase linked by a Copulative Verb to the Subject, and so completing a Simple Sentence. P. 75.

*Praepositio* (praeponere, *to place before*), Gr. πρόθεσις. §§ 9, 83, 103, 122. N. S. IX. C.

*Predicative Relation*, the Relation existing between Subject and Verb of the Simple Sentence.

*Present-Stem*. §§ 11, 46. The Present-Stem of many Verbs differs from the True Stem. The chief variations are these:

1. *N* is inserted before the Consonant-character: as, *fi-n-do*, *fra-n-go*, &c. Before a labial this *n* becomes *m*: as, *la-m-bo*, *ru-m-po*.
2. *N* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, *si-n-o*, *li-n-o*; (*b*) to a Liquid-character: as, *tem-n-o*, *cer-n-o*, *sper-n-o*, *ster-n-o*. So *po-n-o* for *pos-n-o*.
3. *Sc* is suffixed (*a*) to a Vowel-character: as, *pa-sc-o*, *ira-sc-or*, *cre-sc-o*, &c.; (*b*) to a Consonant-character with *t*: as, *ulc-isc-or*. So *di-sc-o* for *dic-sc-o*; *na-n-c-isc-or* for *nac-or*.
4. *L* is doubled: as, *pel-l-o*, *tol-l-o*.
5. *T* is suffixed to Gutturals-character: as, *flec-t-o*, *pec-t-o*, *nec-t-o*.
6. A Guttural is cast out: as, *stru-o* for *stru-c-o*, *vivo* for *vi-g-uo*.
7. The Stem is re-duplicated: as, *gi-g-no* for *gen-o*, *si-sto* for *sto*.

**\*Prolative Relation** (*proferre, to extend*), that in which Predication is extended by an Infinitive (therefore called *Prolative*), joined to Verbs, Participles, and, poetically, Adjectives. § 140. N. S. VII. *B*. Attentive consideration shows that this use of the Infinitive is really distinct from its Objective use, constituting a special relation in grammar, and requiring a distinctive appellation.

**Pronomen** (Gr. *ἄντωνυμία*), an inflected Part of Speech, ranking among Nouns, and so called because it is a substitute for a name. § 38.

**Propria Nomina**, Proper Names; Nouns *peculiar* to Person or Place.

**Proprietary Relation**, that of the Genitive to the word proper to it. § 126.

**Prosodia** (*προσῳδία, to sing in accord*), Prosody; that division of Grammar which treats of Quantity of Syllables and of Rhythm. The Laws of Metre are usually comprised in it. § 161. Notes.

**Protasis**. See *Apodosis*.

## Q.

**Qualitative Relation**. See *Attributum*.

## R.

**Receptive Relation** (*recipere, to receive*), that of the Dative, as *Case* of the Recipient, to the governing word. § 104-109. N. S. IV.

**Recta Oratio**, Direct Discourse, in a Principal Sentence, as distinguished from *Oratio Obliqua*. Pp. 155, 156.

**Reduplicatio** (*reduplicare, to redouble*), Reduplication; a peculiar mutation of form, by which the sense of words is varied, in Greek, Latin, and other languages. In Latin, its chief use is in forming the Perfect-stem of Verbs. See §§ 48, 81 II. (5), III. 9.

**Reflexiva Pronomina** (*reflectere, to bend back*), Reflexive Pronouns: *se*, with its Possessive *suus*; so called, because they 'bend back' their relation to the principal noun preceding; generally (but not always) the Subject of the Principal Sentence. § 145. N. S. VIII.

**Relation**. The Relations of Construction existing between the words of a Simple Sentence are eight in number: (1) Predicative; (2) Qualitative; (3) Objective; (4) Receptive; (5) Circumstantive; (6) Proprietary; (7) Prolative; (8) Annexive. See these Words.

**Relativum Pronomen** (*referre, to refer*), the Relative Pronoun *qui*, so called because *referred* to an Antecedent Noun-term. See § 91,

**N. S. 1.** From this root are derived the Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, and the Particles connected with them.

*Root*, the common part of kindred words. § 11.

## S.

*Scansio* (scandere, to climb), the measurement of feet in a verse.

*Sententia* (sentire, to express thought), a Sentence. § 87. Sentences are Simple or Compound. A Simple Sentence is either a statement (enuntiatio), a command or request (petitio), or a question (interrogatio). A Compound Sentence consists of two or more Simple Sentences, one being the Principal, the rest either Co-ordinate (not dependent) or Subordinate (dependent in construction); which two kinds are called Clauses. Pp. 155, &c.

*Stem*, the crude form of a Word without the Endings: as, mensa-, mone-. A Vowel-stem stripped of its vowel is called a Clipt Stem: as, mon- for mon-e-.

*Subiectum* (subjicere, to place under), Subject. §§ 87, 88, 93, 94. N. S. i. ii.

\**Subobliqua Clausula*, a Suboblique Clause, subordinate to Oratio Obliqua. If Oratio Obliqua is contained in the sense only, not in form, the Clause is said to be 'Subobliquae potestatis,' of Suboblique power, or 'virtually Suboblique.' Pp. 156, 159, 168, &c.

*Substantival Clauses*, the three forms of a Simple Sentence (statement, command, question) in Oblique Construction. See *Oratio Obliqua*.

*Substantivum* (substare, to stand beneath), a Substantive, the first of the inflected Parts of Speech. §§ 9 I. (1), 12, 16, etc.

*Superlative Gradus* (superferre, to carry above), the highest Degree of a Compared Adjective or Adverb. §§ 35-37.

*Supine-Stem*. § 47.

*Supinum*, Supine, an unmeaning term, applied to the two Cases of the Verb-noun which end in *um* and *u* severally. §§ 45, 141 (5) (6).

*Syllaba* (συλλαβάνειν, to take together), a Syllable; that is, one or more letters pronounced in a breath. § 5.

*Syncope* (συνκόπτειν, to cut short), the shortening of a word by casting out an inner vowel: as, patri for pateri.

*Synesis* (σύνεσις, meaning), a Figure of Syntax. § 160. N. S. i. E. 3.

*Syntaxis* (συντάσσειν, to arrange together), that division of Grammar which treats of the construction of sentences.

## T.

*Temporalis Clausula*, a Temporal Clause: an Adverbial Clause introduced by a Conjunction of Time. P. 163.

*Tempus* (time), Tense; that which marks the time of action in Verbs. §§ 43, 48.

\**Trajectiva* (trajicere, to throw over); Verbs and Adjectives, which by their meaning suggest a Recipient. Pure Trajective Verbs have a Dative alone (Cui-Verbs): Trajective Verbs Transitive (Cui-quid Verbs) have Accusative and Dative. § 104. N. S. iv.

*Transitiva Verba* (transire, to pass over), Verbs which pass over to an Accusative of the nearer Object. § 96 N. S. iii.

## V.

*Verb of Being* (sum, esse). Gr. *ῥῆμα ὑπαρκτικόν*. This has been translated by Latin Grammarians, 'Verbum Substantivum'; a term not true to the Greek, and confusing to learners. Sum is the Verb of Being, essential to the expression of thought. Hence we find its root widely spread throughout the languages of the world. §§ 49, 87. N.S. II.

*Verbum* (Gr. *ῥῆμα*, the word), Verb; an inflected Part of Speech, so called, as the Word which effects discourse. §§ 9, 39, etc.

\**Verb-Noun*. All the parts of the Verb Infinite are Verb-Nouns Substantival or Adjectival, uniting functions of the Verb with functions of the Noun. §§ 45, 140, etc. N.S. I. C.

*Vocales* (vox, voice), Vowels. § 2. Their relations are shown in the following scheme, in which the sign † represents the vowel wavering between *i* and *u* (optĭmus, optŭmus), which the Emperor Claudius brought for a time into public use:

Standard vowel

a

Sharp medial e o Flat medial

Sharp semiconsonant i † u Flat semiconsonant

Medial

*J* and *u* did not exist anciently. *J* represents the consonant power of *i* (i-consonans); *u* the vowel-power of *v* (v-vocalis).

*Vocativus Casus* (vocare, to call), the Case of one addressed, which stands out of the Sentence. §§ 14, 87, 137.

*Vowel-change*, the weakening or strengthening of Vowels, which occurs in Flexion, Derivation and Composition. §§ 81, 84. N.E. II.

*Vox*, Voice; that form, by which Verbs are shown as *doing* or *suffering*. § 39.

*Note*.—How the Romans spoke Latin can never be known with precision. Some sounds are lost: as those of *f*, *ch*, *th*, *ph*, *rh*, *ei*, *eu*. Others are matter of conjecture: as that *ae*=*ai* in French *Mai*, *oe*=*oy* in *boy*, *au*=*ow* in *cow*; *y*-vowel=Greek *v*. It is probable that *c*=*k* always, never being soft as in *cell*, *city*; that *g* also was hard always, as in *get*, *gird*, never soft, as in *gentle*, *origin*; that *v*=Engl. *w* nearly, and *i*-consonans (*j*)=English *y*-consonant.

As to vowels, in the Grammar the following line is given to express the long and short sounds of each: the first four words being sounded as in French, the last as in Italian:

Quīnīne, dēmēsne, pāpā, prōpōse, Zūlū.

. If four sounds are allowed to each vowel, and shown as 1. Italic: 2. with short mark ◡: 3. Roman: 4. with long mark —; we may take the following words as containing them: a, ād-a-mān-dās; e, rē-vell-e-rēs; i, in-scrib-i-tīs; o, de nōv-ō corp-o-re; u, fulg-u-ra mū-tū-a.

The learner must take care never to sound a as in *bāse* (which is the long e-sound); never to sound e as in *thēse* (which is the long i-sound); nor i as in *ice*; nor u as in *ūse*; these being diphthong sounds. See 'Public School Latin Grammar,' Append. B.

WHITE'S GRAMMAR-SCHOOL TEXTS.

In course of publication, in 32mo. cloth,

GRAMMAR-SCHOOL TEXTS,  
WITH ENGLISH VOCABULARIES.

EDITED BY JOHN T. WHITE, D.D. OXON.

GREEK TEXTS:—

FABLES from **ÆSOP** and MYTHS  
from **PALÆPHATUS**. Price 1s.

**HOMER**, First Book of the *Iliad*. 1s.

**HOMER**, First Book of the *Odyssey*.  
Price 1s.

**LUCIAN**, Select Dialogues. 1s.

**XENOPHON**, First Book of the  
*Anabasis*. 1s. 6d.

**XENOPHON**, Second Book of the  
*Anabasis*. 1s.

**XENOPHON**, Third Book of the  
*Anabasis*. 1s. 6d.

**XENOPHON**, Fourth Book of the  
*Anabasis*. 1s. 6d.

**XENOPHON'S ANABASIS**, Book I. Text only. Price 3d. sewed.

**XENOPHON**, Fifth Book of the  
*Anabasis*. 1s. 6d.

**XENOPHON**, Sixth Book of the  
*Anabasis*. 1s. 6d.

**XENOPHON**, Seventh Book of the  
*Anabasis*. [In the press.]

**St. MATTHEW'S GOSPEL**.  
Price 2s. 6d.

**St. MARK'S GOSPEL**. 1s. 6d.

**St. LUKE'S GOSPEL**. 2s. 6d.

**St. JOHN'S GOSPEL**. 1s. 6d.

**The ACTS of the APOSTLES**.  
Price 2s. 6d.

**St. PAUL'S EPISTLE to the  
ROMANS**. 1s. 6d.

LATIN TEXTS:—

**CÆSAR**, First Book of the *Gallic  
War*. Price 1s.

**CÆSAR**, Second Book of the *Gallic  
War*. 1s.

**CÆSAR**, Third Book of the *Gallic War*.  
Price 9d.

**CÆSAR**, Fourth Book of the *Gallic  
War*. 9d.

**CÆSAR**, Fifth Book of the *Gallic War*.  
Price 1s.

**CÆSAR**, Sixth Book of the *Gallic War*.  
Price 1s.

**CÆSAR**, Seventh Book of the *Gallic  
War*. 1s. 6d.

**CICERO**, *Cato Major*. 1s. 6d.

**CICERO**, *Lælius*. 1s. 6d.

**EUTROPIUS**, Books I. and II. of  
*Roman History*. 1s.

**EUTROPIUS**, Books III. and IV. of  
*Roman History*. 1s.

**HORACE**, First Book of the *Odes*.  
Price 1s.

**HORACE**, Second Book of the *Odes*.  
Price 1s.

**HORACE**, Third Book of the *Odes*.  
Price 1s. 6d.

**HORACE**, Fourth Book of the *Odes*.  
Price 1s.

**CÆSAR'S GALLIC WAR**, Book I. Text only. Price 3d. sewed.

**VIRGIL'S ÆNEID**, Book I. Text only. Price 3d.

**NEPOS**, *Miltiades*, *Cimon*, *Pausanias*,  
and *Aristides*. 9d.

**OVID**, Selections from the *Epistles* and  
*Fasts*. 1s.

**OVID**, Select Myths from the *Metamor-  
phoses*. 9d.

**PHÆDRUS**, Select Fables. 9d.

**PHÆDRUS**, First and Second Books  
of Fables. 1s.

**SALLUST**, *Bellum Catilinarium*.  
Price 1s. 6d.

**VIRGIL**, Fourth Book of the *Georgics*.  
Price 1s.

**VIRGIL**, First Book of the *Æneid*. 1s.

**VIRGIL**, Second Book of the *Æneid*.  
Price 1s.

**VIRGIL**, Third Book of the *Æneid*.  
Price 1s.

**VIRGIL**, Fourth Book of the *Æneid*.  
Price 1s.

**VIRGIL**, Fifth Book of the *Æneid*.  
Price 1s.

**VIRGIL**, Sixth Book of the *Æneid*.  
Price 1s.

**VIRGIL**, Eighth Book of the *Æneid*.  
Price 1s. 6d.

**VIRGIL**, Tenth Book of the *Æneid*.  
Price 1s. 6d.

London LONGMANS & CO.

# WHITE'S SCHOOL AND COLLEGE LATIN DICTIONARIES.

The Seventh Edition, carefully revised, and complete in One Volume. Quarto, price 21s. bound in cloth and lettered.

## A LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

(THE PARENT WORK).

By the Rev. J. T. WHITE, D.D. of Corpus Christi College, Oxford; and the Rev. J. E. RIDDLE, M.A. of St. Edmund Hall, Oxford.

(Founded on the larger Dictionary of FREUND, as last revised by the Author.)

'This new edition differs from recent editions in a return to the original form in one volume, and in a reduction of price. The first of these changes is, we think, a wise one; the second change, to a lower price, needs no words of ours to recommend it. To those who are unacquainted with the book, a word or two upon its general merits may be acceptable. The German original had marked an advance in Latin lexicography by a more systematic classification of the meanings of words, and by attention paid to the fragments of early Latin laws and inscriptions, and the Latinity of such writers as LUCRETIUS and VARRO. Dr. WHITE's dictionary exhibits a further improvement

upon FREUND and ANDREWS in the correction of many errors of reference and other inconsistencies, and the transcription is full of quotations. It also deals more fully than any other Latin dictionary known to us with ecclesiastical or patristic Latin; witness the articles on *confessio ecclesie*, *martyr*, and similar words. We notice, too, in occasional references to Greek and Sanskrit forms, an endeavour to bring the work up to the standard of modern philological research, which is at least a step in the right direction. On the whole, this appears to us one of the best dictionaries available to the English student of the Latin language.'

GUARDIAN.

The Fourth Edition, carefully revised, in One Volume, royal 8vo. price 12s. bound in cloth and lettered,

## WHITE'S CONCISE LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

For the Use of Advanced Scholars and University Students.

By J. T. WHITE, D.D. Oxon.

New Edition, revised. Square 12mo. price 7s. 6d.

## A SCHOOL LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY

For the Use of Junior Students, abridged from the larger Dictionaries of White and Riddle.

By J. T. WHITE, D.D. Oxon.

Square 12mo. price 5s. 6d.

## WHITE'S NEW ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

For the Use of Schools, founded on White and Riddle's large Latin-English Dictionary

By J. T. WHITE, D.D. Oxon.

New Edition, revised. Square 12mo. price 12s.

WHITE'S

## JUNIOR STUDENT'S COMPLETE LATIN-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY.

(The Two School Dictionaries bound in One Volume.)

Square fop. 8vo. price 3s.

## WHITE'S LATIN-ENGLISH DICTIONARY.

Adapted for the Use of Middle-Class Schools. (Abridged from the Junior Student Latin-English Dictionary.)

London, LONGMANS & CO.

# SELECT GENERAL LISTS OF SCHOOL-BOOKS

PUBLISHED BY

MESSRS. LONGMANS AND CO.

The School-Books, Atlases, Maps, &c. comprised in this Catalogue may be inspected in the Educational Department of Messrs. LONGMANS and Co. 39 Paternoster Row, E.C. London, where also all other works published by them may be seen.

## English Reading-Lesson Books.

### Illustrated Readers in Longmans' Modern Series:—

|                                                                        |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Primer, pp. 66, with numerous Woodcuts, fcp. 8vo. 3d. sewed, 4d. cloth | 6d.     |
| Book I. pp. 90, with numerous Woodcuts, fcp. 8vo. cloth                | 8d.     |
| Book II. pp. 128, with numerous Woodcuts, fcp. 8vo. cloth              | 1s.     |
| Book III. pp. 192, with numerous Woodcuts, fcp. 8vo. cloth             | 1s. 6d. |
| Book IV. pp. 256, with numerous Woodcuts, fcp. 8vo. cloth              | 1s. 6d. |
| Book V. nearly ready.                                                  |         |

|                                                                        |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Bilton's Infant Primer for School and Home use, 18mo.                  | 2d.     |
| — Infant Reader, Narratives and Fables in Monosyllables, 18mo.         | 4d.     |
| — First Reading Book, for Standard I, 18mo.                            | 6d.     |
| — Second Reading Book, for Standard II, 18mo.                          | 6d.     |
| — Third Reading Book, Boys' Edition and Girls' Edition, fcp. 9d. each  |         |
| — Fourth Reading Book, Boys' Edition and Girls' Edition, fcp. 1s. each |         |
| — Fifth Reading Book, or Poetical Reader, fcp.                         | 1s. 3d. |

|                                                       |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Isbister's First Steps in Reading and Learning, 18mo. | 1s. 6d. |
|-------------------------------------------------------|---------|

### Laurie & Morell's Graduated Series of Reading-Lesson Books:—

|                                                                        |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Morell's Elementary Reading Book or Primer, 18mo.                      | 2d.     |
| Book I. pp. 144                                                        | 8d.     |
| Book II. pp. 254                                                       | 1s. 3d. |
| Book III. pp. 315                                                      | 1s. 6d. |
| Book IV. pp. 440                                                       | 2s.     |
| Book V. comprehending Readings in the best English Literature, pp. 496 | 2s. 6d. |

|                                                                  |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| M'Leod's Reading Lessons for Infant Schools, 20 Broadside Sheets | 2s. |
| — First School-Book to teach Reading and Writing, 18mo.          | 6d. |
| — Second School-Book to teach Spelling and Reading, 18mo.        | 9d. |

### Stevens's Domestic Economy Series for Girls:—

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Book I. for Girls' Fourth Standard, crown 8vo.  | 2s. |
| Book II. for Girls' Fifth Standard, crown 8vo.  | 2s. |
| Book III. for Girls' Sixth Standard, crown 8vo. | 2s. |

|                                                       |     |
|-------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Stevens & Hole's Introductory Lesson-Book, 18mo.      | 6d. |
| Stevens & Hole's Grade Lesson-Book Primer, crown 8vo. | 8d. |

### Stevens & Hole's Grade Lesson Books, in Six Standards, 12mo.:—

|                              |     |                              |         |
|------------------------------|-----|------------------------------|---------|
| The First Standard, pp. 128  | 9d. | The Fourth Standard, pp. 224 | 1s. 3d. |
| The Second Standard, pp. 160 | 9d. | The Fifth Standard, pp. 224  | 1s. 3d. |
| The Third Standard, pp. 160  | 9d. | The Sixth Standard, pp. 260  | 1s. 6d. |

Answers to the Arithmetical Exercises in Standards I. II. and III. price 4d. in Standard IV. price 4d. in Standards V. and VI. 4d. or complete, price 1s. 3d.

### Stevens & Hole's Useful Knowledge Reading Books:—

|                             |         |                              |         |
|-----------------------------|---------|------------------------------|---------|
| Boys' First Standard, 12mo. | 6d.     | Girls' First Standard, 12mo. | 6d.     |
| — Second Standard, 12mo.    | 8d.     | — Second Standard, 12mo.     | 8d.     |
| — Third Standard, 12mo.     | 9d.     | — Third Standard, 12mo.      | 9d.     |
| — Fourth Standard, 12mo.    | 1s.     | — Fourth Standard, 12mo.     | 1s.     |
| — Fifth Standard, 12mo.     | 1s.     | — Fifth Standard, 12mo.      | 1s.     |
| — Sixth Standard, 12mo.     | 1s. 2d. | — Sixth Standard, 12mo.      | 1s. 2d. |

London, LONGMANS & CO.

|                                                                      |          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Jones's Secular Early Lesson-Book, 18mo.                             | 6d.      |
| — Secular Early Lesson-Book, Part II, Proverbs                       | 4d.      |
| — Advanced Reading-Book; Lessons in English History, 18mo.           | 18d.     |
| Marcet's Seasons, or Stories for Young Children, 4 vols. 18mo.       | each 2s. |
| Sullivan's Literary Class-Book; Readings in English Literature, fcp. | 2s. 6d.  |

### Writing Books.

|                                                                                                                                    |          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Combes, Stevens, and Hole's Complete Writer; a Set of 18 Graduated Copy-Books, on Fine Paper, price 4s. 6d. per Dozen to Teachers. |          |
| Isbister's Three Engraved Account Books, oblong 4to.                                                                               | each 1s. |
| Johnston's Civil Service Specimens of Copying MSS. folio                                                                           | 2s. 6d.  |
| M'Leod's Graduated Series of Nine Copy-Books                                                                                       | each 8d. |
| Milhauser's Writing Books, 2s. 3d. per Dozen to Teachers.                                                                          |          |
| The Ready Writer, a Course of 18 Graduated Copy Books                                                                              | each 2d. |
| Books I. to VIII. of the READY WRITER are printed in Pencil-ink.                                                                   |          |
| Tidmarsh's Copy-Books in Longmans' Modern Series, the Set of Twelve Copy-Books, price                                              | each 2d. |

### School Poetry Books.

|                                                                                                                         |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Booth's Poetical Reader in Longmans' Modern Series, fcp. 8vo. with numerous Woodcuts, 1s. 6d. cloth, or with gilt edges | 2s.     |
| Bilton's Poetical Reader for all Classes of Schools, fcp.                                                               | 1s. 2d. |
| Byron's Child Harold, annotated by W. Hiley, M.A. fcp. 8vo.                                                             | 1s. 6d. |
| Coleridge's Ancient Mariner, by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 4d. sewed, 6d. cloth.                                            |         |
| Cook's First Book of Poetry for Elementary Schools, 18mo.                                                               | 9d.     |
| Cowper's Task, <i>The Sofa</i> , by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 9d. sewed, 1s. cloth.                                        |         |
| Goldsmith's Deserted Village, by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 4d. sewed or 6d. cloth.                                         |         |
| — Traveller, by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 8vo. 9d. sewed or 1s. cloth.                                                     |         |
| Gray's Elegy, edited by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 4d. sewed, 6d. cloth.                                                    |         |
| Hughes' Select Specimens of English Poetry, 12mo.                                                                       | 2s. 6d. |
| Hunter's 36 Plays of Shakespeare, with Explanatory Notes, each Play 1s.                                                 | 1'      |

All's Well that ends  
Well.  
Antony and Cleopatra.  
As You Like it.  
Comedy of Errors.  
Coriolanus.  
Cymbeline.  
Hamlet.  
Henry IV. 2 Parts.  
Henry V.  
Henry VI. 3 Parts.  
Henry VIII.

Julius Caesar.  
King John.  
King Lear.  
Love's Labour's Lost.  
Macbeth.  
Measure for Measure.  
Merchant of Venice.  
Merry Wives of Windsor.  
Midsummer Night's Dream.  
Much ado about Nothing.

Othello.  
Richard II.  
Richard III.  
Romeo and Juliet.  
Taming of the Shrew.  
The Tempest.  
Timon of Athens.  
Troilus and Cressida.  
Twelfth-Night.  
Two Gentlemen of Verona.  
Winter's Tale.

|                                                                                                                                                        |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Macaulay's Lays of Ancient Rome, with <i>Ivry</i> and <i>The Armada</i> , fcp. 8vo. 1s. sewed, 1s. 6d. cloth, or 2s. 6d. cloth extra, with gilt edges. |         |
| M'Leod's First Poetical Reading Book, fcp. 8vo.                                                                                                        | 9d.     |
| — Second Poetical Reading Book, fcp. 8vo.                                                                                                              | 1s. 8d. |
| M'Leod's Goldsmith's Deserted Village, and Traveller, each Poem, 18mo.                                                                                 | 1s. 6d. |
| Milton's Lycidas, by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 4d. sewed, or 6d. cloth.                                                                                   |         |
| — Samson Agonistes and Lycidas, by Hunter, 12mo.                                                                                                       | 1s. 6d. |
| — L'Allegro, by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 4d. sewed or 6d. cloth.                                                                                         |         |
| — Il Penseroso, by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 4d. sewed or 6d. cloth.                                                                                      |         |
| — Comus, L'Allegro and Il Penseroso, by Hunter, 12mo.                                                                                                  | 1s. 6d. |
| — Paradise Lost, by Hunter, I. & II. 1s. 6d. each; III. to V. 1s. each.                                                                                |         |
| — Paradise Regained, annotated by Jerram, fcp. 8vo.                                                                                                    | 2s. 6d. |
| Pope's Select Poems, annotated by Arnold, fcp. 8vo.                                                                                                    | 2s. 6d. |
| Booth's Lady of the Lake, Canto I. by Stevens & Morris, fcp. 9d. sewed, 1s. cloth.                                                                     |         |
| Twells' Poetry for Repetition, comprising 200 short pieces, 18mo.                                                                                      | 2s. 6d. |

### English Spelling-Books.

|                                                                     |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Johnson's Civil Service Spelling Book, fcp.                         | 1s. 2d. |
| Sewall's Dictation Exercises, First Series, 18mo. 1s. Second Series | 2s. 6d. |
| Sullivan's Spelling-Book Superseded, 18mo.                          | 1s. 4d. |
| — Words Spelled in Two or More Ways, 18mo.                          | 18d.    |

London, LONGMANS & CO.



*Grammar and the English Language.*

|                                                                                   |                     |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Arnold's English Poetry & Prose, crown 8vo. ....                                  | 6s.                 |
| — Manual of English Literature, crown 8vo. ....                                   | 7s. 6d.             |
| Bain's First or Introductory English Grammar, 18mo. ....                          | 1s. 4d.             |
| — Higher English Grammar, fcp. 8vo. ....                                          | 2s. 6d.             |
| — Companion to English Grammar, crown 8vo. ....                                   | 2s. 6d.             |
| Brewer's Guide to English Composition, fcp. 8vo. ....                             | 5s. 6d.             |
| Conway's Treatise on Versification, crown 8vo. ....                               | 4s. 6d.             |
| Edwards's History of the English Language, with Specimens, 18mo. ....             | 9d.                 |
| Farrar's Language and Languages, crown 8vo. ....                                  | 6s.                 |
| Ferrar's Comparative Grammar, Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Vol. I. 8vo. ....           | 12s.                |
| Fleming's Analysis of the English Language, crown 8vo. ....                       | 5s.                 |
| Graham's English, or the Art of Composition Explained, fcp. 8vo. ....             | 5s.                 |
| Hiley's Child's First English Grammar, 18mo. ....                                 | 1s.                 |
| Abridgment of Hiley's English Grammar, 18mo. ....                                 | 1s. 9d.             |
| Hiley's English Grammar and Style, 18mo. ....                                     | 3s. 6d.             |
| — Exercises adapted to his English Grammar, 18mo. ....                            | 2s. 6d. Key 4s. 6d. |
| — Practical English Composition, Part I. 18mo. ....                               | 1s. 6d. Key 2s. 6d. |
| — — — — — Part II. 18mo. ....                                                     | 2s. Key 4s.         |
| Hunter's Text-Book of English Grammar, 18mo. ....                                 | 2s. 6d.             |
| — Manual of School Letter-Writing, 18mo. ....                                     | 1s. 6d.             |
| Ishister's English Grammar and Composition, 18mo. ....                            | 1s. 6d.             |
| — First Book of Grammar, Geography, and History, 18mo. ....                       | 6d.                 |
| Johnston's English Composition and Essay-Writing, post 8vo. ....                  | 3s. 6d.             |
| Latham's Handbook of the English Language, crown 8vo. ....                        | 6s.                 |
| — Elementary English Grammar, crown 8vo. ....                                     | 3s. 6d.             |
| — English Grammar for Classical Schools, fcp. 8vo. ....                           | 2s. 6d.             |
| Lowres's Grammar of English Grammars, 18mo. ....                                  | 2s. 6d.             |
| — Companion to English Grammar, 18mo. ....                                        | 2s. 6d.             |
| M'Leod's Explanatory English Grammar for Beginners, 18mo. ....                    | 9d.                 |
| — English Grammatical Definitions, for Home Study, 18mo. ....                     | 1d.                 |
| Marcot's Willy's Grammar for the use of Boys, 18mo. ....                          | 2s. 6d.             |
| — Mary's Grammar, intended for the use of Girls, 18mo. ....                       | 2s.                 |
| Morell's Essentials of English Grammar and Analysis, fcp. 8vo. ....               | 8d.                 |
| Morgan's Learner's Companion to the same, post 8vo. ....                          | 6d.                 |
| Morell's Grammar of the English Language, post 8vo. 2s. or with Exercises 2s. 6d. |                     |
| — Graduated English Exercises, post 8vo. 8d. sewed or 9d. cloth. ....             |                     |
| Morgan's Key to Morell's Graduated Exercises, 18mo. ....                          | 4s.                 |
| Müller's (Max) Lectures on the Science of Language, 2 vols. crown 8vo. ....       | 16s.                |
| Murison's First Work in English, fcp. 8vo. ....                                   | 3s. 6d.             |
| Boget's Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases, crown 8vo. ....                   | 10s. 6d.            |
| The Stepping-Stone to English Grammar, 18mo. ....                                 | 1s.                 |
| Sullivan's Manual of Etymology, or First Steps to English, 18mo. ....             | 10d.                |
| — Attempt to Simplify English Grammar, 18mo. ....                                 | 1s.                 |
| Wadham's English Versification, crown 8vo. ....                                   | 4s. 6d.             |
| Weymouth's Answers to Questions on the English Language, fcp. 8vo. ....           | 2s. 6d.             |
| Yonge's Short English Grammar, crown 8vo. ....                                    | 2s. 6d.             |

*Paraphrasing, Parsing, and Analysis.*

|                                                               |                     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| Hunter's Indexing & Précis of Correspondence, 12mo. ....      | 3s. 6d.             |
| — Introduction to Précis-Writing, 18mo. ....                  | 2s.                 |
| — Paraphrasing and Analysis of Sentences, 12mo. ....          | 1s. 3d. Key 1s. 3d. |
| — Progressive Exercises in English Parsing, 12mo. ....        | 6d.                 |
| — Questions on Paradise Lost, Books I. & II. 12mo. ....       | 1s.                 |
| — Questions on the Merchant of Venice, 12mo. ....             | 1s.                 |
| Johnston on Digesting Returns into Summaries, crown 8vo. .... | 1s. 3d.             |
| — Civil Service Précis, 12mo. ....                            | 2s. 6d.             |

London, LONGMANS &amp; CO.

|                                                                           |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Lowren's System of English Parsing and Derivation, 18mo.....              | 1s. |
| Morell's Analysis of Sentences Explained and Systematised, 18mo.....      | 2s. |
| Morgan's Training Examiner, First Course, 4d. Key, 1s. Second Course, 1s. |     |

### Dictionaries and Manuals of Etymology.

|                                                                               |      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|
| Graham's English Synonyms, Classified and Explained, fcp. 8vo. ....           | 6s.  |
| Latham's English Dictionary, founded on Dr. Johnson's, 4 vols. 4to. price 87. |      |
| — Abridged English Dictionary, 1 vol. medium 8vo.....                         | 24s. |
| Maunder's Scientific and Literary Treasury, fcp. 8vo. ....                    | 6s.  |
| — Treasury of Knowledge and Library of Reference, fcp. 8vo.....               | 6s.  |
| Sullivan's Dictionary of the English Language, 18mo.....                      | 2s.  |
| — Dictionary of Derivations, or Introduction to Etymology, fcp....            | 2s.  |
| Whately's English Synonyms, fcp. 8vo. ....                                    | 2s.  |

### Elocution.

|                                                                           |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Hilton's Repetition and Reading Book, crown 8vo. ....                     | 2s. 6d. |
| Hughes's Select Specimens of English Poetry, 12mo. ....                   | 2s. 6d. |
| Isabister's Illustrated Public School Speaker and Reader, 12mo.....       | 2s. 6d. |
| — Lessons in Elocution, for Girls, 12mo. ....                             | 1s. 6d. |
| — Outlines of Elocution, for Boys, 12mo. ....                             | 1s. 6d. |
| Millard's Grammar of Elocution, fcp. 8vo. ....                            | 3s. 6d. |
| Bewton's Debater, or Art of Public Speaking, fcp. 8vo. ....               | 6s.     |
| Smart's Practice of Elocution, 12mo. ....                                 | 6s.     |
| Twells's Poetry for Repetition, 200 short Pieces and Extracts, 18mo. .... | 2s. 6d. |

### The London Series of English Classics.

|                                                                      |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Bacon's Essays, annotated by E. A. Abbott, D.D., 2 vols. fcp. ....   | 6s.     |
| — The same, Text and Index only, without Notes, 1 vol. ....          | 2s. 6d. |
| Ben Jonson's Every Man in his Humour, by H. B. Wheatley, F.S.A. .... | 2s. 6d. |
| Macaulay's Essay on Lord Olive, annotated by H. C. Bowen, M.A. ....  | 2s. 6d. |
| Marlowe's Dr. Faustus, annotated by Wilhelm Wagner, Ph.D. ....       | 2s.     |
| Milton's Paradise Regained, annotated by C. S. Jerram, M.A. ....     | 2s. 6d. |
| Selections from Pope's Poems, annotated by T. Arnold, M.A. ....      | 2s. 6d. |

### Arithmetic.

#### Arithmetic in Seven Standards, in Longmans' Modern Series:—

STANDARD I. 1d. paper, 2d. cloth; STANDARDS II. III. V. each 2d. paper, 3d. cloth; STANDARD IV. 3d. paper, 4d. cloth. STANDARDS VI. VII. in preparation.

#### Quarterly Arithmetical Test-Cards in Longmans' Modern Series:—

STANDARDS II. to VI. Packets of 24 Cards, 1s. each packet, in paper, or in cloth ..... each 1s. 2d.

Anderson's Arithmetic for the Army, 18mo. .... 1s.

Calder's Familiar Arithmetic, 12mo. 4s. 6d. or with Answers, 5s. 6d. the Answers separately, 1s. the Questions in Part II. separately..... 1s.

Calder's Smaller Arithmetic for Schools, 18mo..... 2s. 6d.

Colenso's Arithmetic designed for the use of Schools, 12mo. .... 4s. 6d.

Key to Colenso's Arithmetic for Schools, by Rev. J. Hunter, M.A. 18mo. .... 5s.

Colenso's Shilling Elementary Arithmetic, 18mo. 1s. with Answers ..... 1s. 6d.

— Arithmetic for National, Adult, and Commercial Schools:—

1. Text-Book, 18mo. .... 6d. | 3. Examples, Part II. Compound Arithmetic 4d.

2. Examples, Part I. Simple | 4. Examples, Part III. Fractions, Decimals

Arithmetic ..... 4d. | Duodecimals ..... 4d.

3. Answers to Examples, with Solutions of the difficult Questions ... 1s.

Colenso's Arithmetical Tables, on a Card ..... 1d.

Combes and Hines' Standard Arithmetical Copy-Books, Nine Books, 4d. each.

Combes and Hines' Complete Arithmetical Copy-Books; in Nine Books, on

Fine Paper, 4d. to 6d. each. Price 4s. 6d. per dozen to Teachers.

Harris's Graduated Exercises in Arithmetic and Mensuration, crown 8vo.

2s. 6d. or with Answers, 3s. the Answers separately, 2d. .... Full Key 6s.

Hiley's Recapitulatory Examples in Arithmetic, 12mo. .... 1s.

Hunter's Modern Arithmetic for School Work or Private Study, 12mo. 3s. 6d. Key, 5s.

London, LONGMANS & CO.

|                                                                                                                                          |          |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| Hunter's New Shilling Arithmetic, 18mo.....                                                                                              | 1s.      | Key 2s. |
| — Standard Arithmetic, Three Parts, 2d. each, and Key .....                                                                              | 6d.      |         |
| Ishister's Unitary Arithmetic, 12mo, 1s. or with Answers .....                                                                           | 1s. 6d.  |         |
| Johnston's Civil Service Arithmetic, 12mo.....                                                                                           | 2s. 6d.  | Key 4s. |
| — Civil Service Totals, with Answers and Cross-Tots .....                                                                                | 1s.      |         |
| Liddell's Arithmetic, 18mo, 1s.—or Two Parts .....                                                                                       | each 6d. |         |
| Lupton's Arithmetic for Schools and Candidates for Examination, 12mo.<br>2s. 6d. or with Answers, 3s. 6d. the Answers separately 1s..... | Key 6s.  |         |
| — Examination-Papers in Arithmetic, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                      | 1s.      |         |
| M'Leod's Manual of Arithmetic, containing 1,750 Questions, 18mo.....                                                                     | 9d.      |         |
| — Mental Arithmetic, I. Whole Numbers, II. Fractions .....                                                                               | each 1s. |         |
| — Extended Multiplication and Pence Tables, 18mo .....                                                                                   | 2d.      |         |
| Merrifield's Technical Arithmetic and Mensuration, small 8vo. 2s. 6d. Key 2s. 6d.                                                        |          |         |
| Moffatt's Mental Arithmetic, 12mo, 1s. or with Key, 1s. 6d.                                                                              |          |         |
| Tate's First Principles of Arithmetic, 12mo. ....                                                                                        | 1s. 6d.  |         |
| Thomson's Arithmetic, 72d Edit. by the Author's Sons, 12mo. 3s. 6d. Key 5s.                                                              |          |         |

*Book-keeping and Banking.*

|                                                                          |                 |             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|-------------|
| Hunter's Exercises in Book-keeping by Double Entry, 18mo. ....           | 1s. 6d.         | Key 2s. 6d. |
| — Examination-Questions in Book-keeping by Double Entry, 12mo. ....      | 2s. 6d.         |             |
| — Examination-Questions &c. as above, separate from the Answers 1s.      |                 |             |
| — Ruled Paper for Forms of Account Books, 5 sorts ... per quire, 1s. 6d. |                 |             |
| — Self-Instruction in Book-keeping, 12mo.....                            | 2s.             |             |
| — Studies in Double Entry, crown 8vo.....                                | 2s.             |             |
| Ishister's Book-keeping by Single and Double Entry, 18mo.....            | 9d.             |             |
| — Set of Eight Account Books to the above .....                          | each 6d.        |             |
| Macleod's Economics for Beginners, small crown 8vo. ....                 | 2s. 6d.         |             |
| — Elements of Banking, Fourth Edition, crown 8vo. ....                   | 5s.             |             |
| — Elements of Economics, 2 vols. crown 8vo.....                          | VOL. I. 7s. 6d. |             |

*Mensuration.*

|                                                                              |         |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---------|
| Bowcher's Mensuration, Plane and Solid, 18mo.....                            | 3s.     |         |
| Hiley's Explanatory Mensuration, 18mo.....                                   | 2s. 6d. |         |
| Hunter's Elements of Mensuration, 18mo.....                                  | 1s.     | Key 1s. |
| Merrifield's Technical Arithmetic & Mensuration, small 8vo. ....             | 3s. 6   |         |
| Newbit's Treatise on Practical Mensuration, by Hunter, 12mo. 2s. 6d. Key 5s. |         |         |

*Algebra.*

|                                                                             |          |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------|
| Burnside & Panton's Theory of Equations, 8vo. ....                          | 10s. 6d. |             |
| Coleenso's Algebra, for National and Adult Schools, 18mo.....               | 1s. 6d.  | Key 2s. 6d. |
| — Algebra, for the use of Schools, Part I. 12mo .....                       | 4s. 6d.  | Key 5s.     |
| — Elements of Algebra, for the use of Schools, Part II. 12mo. 6s.           | Key 5s.  |             |
| — Examples and Equation Papers, with the Answers, 12mo. ....                | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| — Student's Algebra, crown 8vo. ....                                        | 6s.      | Key 6s.     |
| Griffin's Algebra and Trigonometry, small 8vo.....                          | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| — Notes on Algebra and Trigonometry, small 8vo. ....                        | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| Lund's Short and Easy Course of Algebra, crown 8vo.....                     | 2s. 6d.  | Key 2s. 6d. |
| Lupton's Algebra for Army, &c. Examinations, 18mo. ....                     | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| M'Coll's Algebraical Exercises, with Elliptical Solutions, 12mo. ....       | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| Potts's Elementary Algebra, 8vo. 6s. 6d. or in 12 Sections, 6d. each.       |          |             |
| Reynolds's Elementary Algebra for Beginners, 18mo. 9d. Answers, 3d. Key 1s. |          |             |
| Tate's Algebra made Easy, 12mo.....                                         | 2s.      | Key 3s. 6d. |
| Wood's Algebra, modernised by Lund, crown 8vo. ....                         | 7s. 6d.  |             |
| — — Companion to, by Lund, crown 8vo.....                                   | 7s. 6d.  |             |

*Geometry and Trigonometry.*

|                                                                               |         |  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|--|
| Booth's New Geometrical Methods, 2 vols. 8vo. ....                            | 26s.    |  |
| Casey's Sequel to Euclid, fcp. 8vo. ....                                      | 2s. 6d. |  |
| Coleenso's Elements of Euclid, 18mo. 4s. 6d. or with Key to the Exercises ... | 6s. 6d. |  |
| — Geometrical Exercises and Key.....                                          | 3s. 6d. |  |
| — Geometrical Exercises, separately, 18mo.....                                | 1s.     |  |
| — Trigonometry, 12mo, Part I. 3s. 6d. Key 3s. 6d. Part II. 2s. 6d. Key 5s.    |         |  |
| Griffin's Parabola, Ellipse, and Hyperbola, post 8vo. ....                    |         |  |

London, LONGMANS &amp; CO.

|                                                                                                                     |                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Harvey's Euclid for Beginners, Books I. & II., 12mo. ....                                                           | 2s. 6d.           |
| Hawtreys' Introduction to Euclid .....                                                                              | fop. 8vo. 2s. 6d. |
| Hunter's Plane Trigonometry, for Beginners, 18mo. ....                                                              | 1s. Key 9d.       |
| — Treatise on Logarithms, 18mo. ....                                                                                | 1s. Key 9d.       |
| Ishister's School Euclid, 12mo. Book I. price 1s. Books I. & II. price 1s. 6d.<br>Books I. to IV. price 2s. 6d.     |                   |
| Jeans's Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, 12mo. Part I. 5s., Part II. 4s.<br>or the 2 Parts in 1 vol. price 8s. 6d. |                   |
| Potts's Euclid, University Edition, 8vo. ....                                                                       | 10s.              |
| — — Intermediate Edition, Books I. to IV. 3s. Books I. to III. 2s. 6d.<br>Books I. II. 1s. 6d. Book I. 1s.          | 6d.               |
| — Enunciations of Euclid, 12mo. ....                                                                                | 12s.              |
| Salmon on Conic Sections, 6th Edition, 8vo. ....                                                                    | 9d.               |
| Tate's First Three Books of Euclid, 18mo. ....                                                                      | 1s.               |
| — Practical Geometry, with 261 Woodcuts, 18mo. ....                                                                 | 2s. 6d.           |
| — Geometry, Mensuration, Trigonometry, &c. 12mo. ....                                                               | 5s.               |
| Thomson's Euclid, Books I. to VI. and XI. & XII. 12mo. ....                                                         | 4s. 6d.           |
| — Plane and Spherical Trigonometry, 8vo. ....                                                                       | 5s. 6d.           |
| — Differential and Integral Calculus, 12mo. ....                                                                    | 2s. 6d.           |
| Watson's Plane and Solid Geometry, small 8vo. ....                                                                  | 10s. 6d.          |
| Williamson on Differential Calculus, crown 8vo. ....                                                                | 10s. 6d.          |
| — on Integral Calculus, crown 8vo. ....                                                                             | 10s. 6d.          |
| Wright's Elements of Plane Geometry, crown 8vo. ....                                                                | 5s.               |

### *Land Surveying, Drawing, and Practical Mathematics.*

|                                                                                                                                       |                 |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Binns's Orthographic Projection and Isometrical Drawing, 18mo. ....                                                                   | 1s.             |
| Geometrical Drawing in Longmans' Modern Series .....                                                                                  | In preparation. |
| Hulme's Worked Questions in Geometrical Drawing, royal 8vo. ....                                                                      | 7s. 6d.         |
| Hunter's Worked Examples in Geometrical Drawing, 16mo. ....                                                                           | 2s.             |
| Kimber's Graduation Mathematics, 8vo. 2s. or with Solutions, 6s. 6d.<br>— Mathematical Course for the University of London, 8vo. .... | 13s.            |
| To be had in Two Parts, 1s. 6d. each. Key, in 2 Parts, 5s. each.                                                                      |                 |
| Milburn's Mathematical Formulae for Candidates, post 8vo. ....                                                                        | 2s. 6d.         |
| Nesbit's Practical Land Surveying, 8vo. ....                                                                                          | 12s.            |
| Salmon's Treatise on Conic Sections, 8vo. ....                                                                                        | 12s.            |
| Winter's Mathematical Exercises, post 8vo. ....                                                                                       | 6s. 6d.         |
| Winter's Elementary Geometrical Drawing, Part I. post 8vo. 2s. 6d. Part II. 6s. 6d.                                                   |                 |
| Wright's Lessons on Form, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                             | 2s. 6d.         |
| Wrigley's Examples in Pure and Mixed Mathematics, 8vo. ....                                                                           | 8s. 6d.         |

### *Musical Works by John Hullah, LL.D.*

|                                                                                                             |                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Hullah's Method of Teaching Singing, crown 8vo. ....                                                        | 2s. 6d.        |
| — Exercises and Figures in the same, crown 8vo. 1s. or 2 Parts, 6d. each.                                   |                |
| Chromatic Scale, with the Inflected Syllables, on Large Sheet .....                                         | 1s. 6d.        |
| Card of Chromatic Scale, price 1d.                                                                          |                |
| Grammar of Musical Harmony, royal 8vo. Two Parts .....                                                      | each 1s. 6d.   |
| Exercises to Grammar of Musical Harmony .....                                                               | 1s.            |
| Grammar of Counterpoint. Part I. super-royal 8vo. ....                                                      | 2s. 6d.        |
| Wilhem's Manual of Singing. Parts I. & II. 2s. 6d. or together .....                                        | 5s.            |
| Exercises and Figures contained in Parts I. & II. Books I. & II. ....                                       | each 8d.       |
| Large Sheets, containing the Figures in Part I. Nos. 1 to 8 in a Parcel. ....                               | 6s.            |
| Large Sheets, containing the Exercises in Part I. Nos. 9 to 40, in Four<br>Parcels of Eight Nos. each ..... | per Parcel 6s. |
| Large Sheets, the Figures in Part II. Nos. 41 to 53 in a Parcel .....                                       | 9s.            |
| Hymns for the Young, set to Music, royal 8vo. ....                                                          | 8d.            |
| Infant School Songs .....                                                                                   | 6d.            |
| Notation, the Musical Alphabet, crown 8vo. ....                                                             | 6d.            |
| Old English Songs for Schools, Harmonised .....                                                             | 2s.            |
| Rudiments of Musical Grammar, royal 8vo. ....                                                               | 6d.            |
| School Songs for 2 and 3 Voices. 2 Books, 8vo. ....                                                         | each 6d.       |

London LONGMANS & CO.

*Political and Historical Geography.*

- Brassey's (Lady) Voyage in the Sunbeam, School Edition, fcp. 8vo. 2s.  
 School-Prize Edition, with gilt edges, 3s.  
 Burbury's Mary's Geography, 18mo. 2s. 6d. Questions 1s.  
 Butler's Ancient and Modern Geography, post 8vo. 7s. 6d.  
 — Sketch of Modern Geography, post 8vo. 4s.  
 — Sketch of Ancient Geography, post 8vo. 4s.  
 Freeman's Historical Geography of Europe, 2 vols. 8vo. 31s. 6d.  
 Hiley's Child's First Geography, 18mo. 9d.  
 — Elementary Geography for Beginners, 18mo. 1s. 6d.  
 Hughes's Child's First Book of Geography, 18mo. 9d.  
 — Geography of the British Empire, for Beginners, 18mo. 9d.  
 — General Geography, for Beginners, 18mo. 9d. Questions, 9d.  
 Hughes's Geography of British History, fcp. 8vo. 5s.  
 — Manual of Geography, with Six Coloured Maps, fcp. 8vo. 7s. 6d.  
 Or in Two Parts:—I. Europe, 3s. 6d. II. Asia, Africa, America, &c. 4s.  
 Hughes's Manual of British Geography, fcp. 8vo. 2s.  
 Johnston's Competitive Geography of the World, post 8vo. 5s.  
 — British Isles, post 8vo. 1s. 6d.  
 — Elementary Geography, fcp. 8vo. 1s. 8d.  
 Keith Johnston's Gazetteer, or Geographical Dictionary, 8vo. 42s.  
 Lupton's Examination-Papers in Geography, crown 8vo. 1s.  
 — Geography for Schools and Candidates, crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.  
 McLeod's Geography of Palestine or the Holy Land, 12mo. 1s. 6d.  
 Maunder's Treasury of Geography, fcp. 8vo. 6s.  
 The Stepping-Stone to Geography, 18mo. 1s.  
 Sullivan's Geography Generalised, fcp. 2s. or with Maps, 2s. 6d.  
 — Introduction to Ancient and Modern Geography, 18mo. 1s.

*Physical Geography and Geology.*

- Cotta's Rocks Classified and Described, by Lawrence, post 8vo. 14s.  
 Haughton's Six Lectures on Physical Geography, 8vo. 15s.  
 Hughes's (E.) Outlines of Physical Geography, 12mo. 3s. 6d. Questions, 6d.  
 — (W.) Physical Geography for Beginners, 18mo. 1s.  
 Keith's Treatise on the Use of the Globes, 12mo. 6s. 6d. Key 2s. 6d.  
 Maury's Physical Geography for Schools and General Readers, fcp. 8vo. 2s. 6d.  
 Nicols's Puzzle of Life (Elementary Geology), crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.  
 Proctor's Elementary Physical Geography, fcp. 8vo. 1s. 6d.  
 Woodward's Geology of England and Wales, crown 8vo. 14s.

*School Atlases and Maps.*

- Butler's Atlas of Modern Geography, royal 8vo. 10s. 6d.  
 — Junior Modern Atlas, comprising 12 Maps, royal 8vo. 4s. 6d.  
 — Atlas of Ancient Geography, royal 8vo. 12s.  
 — Junior Ancient Atlas, comprising 12 Maps, royal 8vo. 4s. 6d.  
 — General Atlas, Modern & Ancient, royal 4to. 22s.  
 Public Schools Atlas of Ancient Geography, 25 entirely New Coloured Maps, imperial 8vo. or imperial 4to. 7s. 6d. cloth.  
 Public Schools Atlas of Modern Geography, 31 entirely New Coloured Maps, imperial 8vo. or imperial 4to. 5s. cloth.

*Natural History and Botany.*

- Edmonds's Elementary Botany, fcp. 8vo. 12s.  
 Landley and Moore's Treasury of Botany, Two Parts, fcp. 8vo. 12s.  
 Macalister's Systematic Zoology of Vertebrates, 8vo. 10s. 6d.  
 Maunder's Treasury of Natural History, revised by Holdsworth, fcp. 8vo. 6s.  
 Owen's Natural History for Beginners, 18mo. Two Parts 9d. each, or 1 vol. 2s.

London, LONGMANS & CO.

|                                                                                      |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Owen's Stepping-Stone to Natural History, 18mo. ....                                 | 2s. 6d. |
| Or in Two Parts.—I. <i>Mammals</i> , 1s. II. <i>Birds, Reptiles, and Fishes</i> .... | 1s.     |
| Wood's Bible Animals, 8vo. ....                                                      | 14s.    |
| — Homes without Hands, 8vo. ....                                                     | 14s.    |
| — Insects at Home, 8vo. ....                                                         | 14s.    |
| — Insects Abroad, 8vo. ....                                                          | 14s.    |
| — Out of Doors, crown 8vo. ....                                                      | 7s. 6d. |
| — Strange Dwellings, crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. Popular Edition, 4to. ....                   | 6d.     |

### *Chemistry and Telegraphy.*

|                                                                               |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Armstrong's Organic Chemistry, small 8vo. ....                                | 2s. 6d. |
| Culley's Practical Telegraphy, 8vo. ....                                      | 14s.    |
| Jago's Inorganic Chemistry, Theoretical and Practical, fcp. 8vo. ....         | 2s.     |
| Miller's Elements of Chemistry, Theoretical and Practical, 8vo.               |         |
| Part I.—Chemical Physics, Sixth Edition, 16s.                                 |         |
| Part II.—Inorganic Chemistry, Sixth Edition, 24s.                             |         |
| Part III.—Organic Chemistry, Fifth Edition, 81s. 6d.                          |         |
| — Introduction to Inorganic Chemistry, small 8vo. ....                        | 2s. 6d. |
| Odling's Course of Practical Chemistry, for Medical Students, crown 8vo. .... | 6s.     |
| Preece and Sivewright's Telegraphy, crown 8vo. ....                           | 2s. 6d. |
| Reynolds's Experimental Chemistry, PART I. 1s. 6d.; PART II. 2s. 6d.          |         |
| Tate's Outlines of Experimental Chemistry, 18mo. ....                         | 9d.     |
| Thorpe's Quantitative Chemical Analysis, small 8vo. ....                      | 4s. 6d. |
| Thorpe and Muir's Qualitative Chemical Analysis, small 8vo. ....              | 2s. 6d. |
| Tilden's Chemical Philosophy, small 8vo. ....                                 | 2s. 6d. |
| — Practical Chemistry, Principles of Qualitative Analysis, fcp. 8vo. 1s. 6d.  |         |

### *Natural Philosophy and Natural Science.*

|                                                                         |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Bloxam's Metals, their Properties and Treatment, small 8vo. ....        | 2s. 6d. |
| Day's Numerical Examples in Heat, crown 8vo. ....                       | 1s. 6d. |
| — Electrical & Magnetic Measurement, 18mo. ....                         | 2s. 6d. |
| Downing's Practical Hydraulics, Part I. 8vo. ....                       | 8s. 6d. |
| Everett's Vibratory Motion and Sound, 8vo. ....                         | 7s. 6d. |
| Ganot's Physics, translated by Prof. B. Atkinson, large crown 8vo. .... | 15s.    |
| — Natural Philosophy, translated by the same, crown 8vo. ....           | 7s. 6d. |
| Gore's Art of Scientific Discovery, crown 8vo. ....                     | 15s.    |
| Helmholtz' Lectures on Scientific Subjects. 2 Series, 7s. 6d. each.     |         |
| Irving's Short Manual of Heat, small 8vo. ....                          | 2s. 6d. |
| Jenkin's Electricity & Magnetism, small 8vo. ....                       | 2s. 6d. |
| Maxwell's Theory of Heat, small 8vo. ....                               | 2s. 6d. |
| Tate's Light & Heat, for the use of Beginners, 18mo. ....               | 9d.     |
| — Hydrostatics, Hydraulics & Pneumatics, 18mo. ....                     | 9d.     |
| — Electricity, explained for the use of Beginners, 18mo. ....           | 9d.     |
| — Magnetism, Voltaic Electricity & Electro-Dynamics, 18mo. ....         | 9d.     |
| Tyndall's Lesson in Electricity, with 58 Woodcuts, crown 8vo. ....      | 2s. 6d. |
| — Notes of Lectures on Electricity, 1s. sewed, 1s. 6d. cloth.           |         |
| — Notes of Lectures on Light, 1s. sewed, 1s. 6d. cloth.                 |         |

### *Text-Books of Science, Mechanical and Physical.*

|                                                   |         |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Abney's Treatise on Photography, small 8vo. ....  | 2s. 6d. |
| Anderson's (Sir John) Strength of Materials. .... | 2s. 6d. |
| Armstrong's Organic Chemistry. ....               | 2s. 6d. |
| Ball's Elements of Astronomy. ....                | 6s.     |
| Barry's Railway Appliances. ....                  | 2s. 6d. |
| Bauerman's Systematic Mineralogy. ....            | 6s.     |
| Bloxam's Metals. ....                             | 3s. 6d. |
| Goodeve's Principles of Mechanics. ....           | 3s. 6d. |
| Gore's Art of Electro-Metallurgy. ....            | 6s.     |

London, LONGMANS & CO.

|                                                         |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Griffin's Algebra and Trigonometry .....                | 2s. 6d. |
| Jenkin's Electricity and Magnetism .....                | 2s. 6d. |
| Maxwell's Theory of Heat .....                          | 2s. 6d. |
| Merrifield's Technical Arithmetic and Mensuration ..... | 2s. 6d. |
| Miller's Inorganic Chemistry .....                      | 2s. 6d. |
| Preece & Sivewright's Telegraphy .....                  | 2s. 6d. |
| Rutley's Study of Rocks, a Text-Book of Petrology ..... | 4s. 6d. |
| Shelley's Workshop Appliances .....                     | 2s. 6d. |
| Thorne's Structural and Physiological Botany .....      | 6s.     |
| Thorpe's Quantitative Chemical Analysis .....           | 4s. 6d. |
| Thorpe & Muir's Qualitative Analysis .....              | 2s. 6d. |
| Tilden's Chemical Philosophy .....                      | 2s. 6d. |
| Unwin's Elements of Machine Design .....                | 2s. 6d. |
| Watson's Plane and Solid Geometry .....                 | 2s. 6d. |

### *The London Science Class-Books, Elementary Series.*

|                                                                              |         |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Astronomy, by R. S. Ball, LL.D. F.R.S. ....                                  | 1s. 6d. |
| Botany, Morphology and Physiology, by W. R. McNab, M.D. ....                 | 1s. 6d. |
| — the Classification of Plants, by W. R. McNab, M.D. ....                    | 1s. 6d. |
| Geometry, Congruent Figures, by O. Henrici, F.R.S. ....                      | 1s. 6d. |
| Hydrostatics and Pneumatics, by P. Magnus, B.Sc. 1s. 6d. or with Answers 2s. |         |
| Laws of Health, by W. H. Corfield, M.A. M.D. ....                            | 1s. 6d. |
| Mechanics, by R. S. Ball, LL.D. F.R.S. ....                                  | 1s. 6d. |
| Practical Physics: Molecular Physics & Sound, by F. Guthrie, F.R.S. ....     | 1s. 6d. |
| Thermodynamics, by R. Wormell, M.A. D.Sc. ....                               | 1s. 6d. |
| Zoology of Vertebrate Animals, by A. McAlister, M.D. ....                    | 1s. 6d. |
| Zoology of Invertebrate Animals, by A. McAlister, M.D. ....                  | 1s. 6d. |

### *Mechanics & Mechanism.*

|                                                                  |                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|
| Barry's Railway Appliances, small 8vo. Woodcuts .....            | 2s. 6d.         |
| Goodeve's Elements of Mechanism, crown 8vo. ....                 | 6s.             |
| — Principles of Mechanics, small 8vo. ....                       | 2s. 6d.         |
| Haughton's Animal Mechanics, 8vo. ....                           | 21s.            |
| Magnus's Lessons in Elementary Mechanics, small 8vo. ....        | 2s. 6d.         |
| Shelley's Workshop Appliances, small 8vo. Woodcuts .....         | 2s. 6d.         |
| Tate's Exercises on Mechanics and Natural Philosophy, 12mo. .... | 2s. Key 3s. 6d. |
| — Mechanics and the Steam-Engine, for Beginners, 18mo. ....      | 9d.             |
| Twisden's Introduction to Practical Mechanics, crown 8vo. ....   | 10s. 6d.        |
| — First Lessons in Theoretical Mechanics, crown 8vo. ....        | 8s. 6d.         |

### *Engineering, Architecture, &c.*

|                                                                                   |          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Anderson (Sir J.) on the Strength of Materials and Structures, small 8vo. 2s. 6d. |          |
| Barry & Bramwell on Railways and Locomotives, 8vo. ....                           | 21s.     |
| Bourne's Treatise on the Steam-Engine, 4to. ....                                  | 42s.     |
| — Catechism of the Steam-Engine, fop. 8vo. ....                                   | 6s.      |
| — Recent Improvements in the Steam-Engine, fop. 8vo. ....                         | 6s.      |
| — Handbook of the Steam-Engine, fop. 8vo. ....                                    | 9s.      |
| Downing's Elements of Practical Construction, PART I. 8vo. Plates .....           | 14s.     |
| Fairbairn's Useful Information for Engineers. 3 vols. crown 8vo. ....             | 31s. 6d. |
| Gwilt's Encyclopedia of Architecture, 8vo. ....                                   | 54s. 6d. |
| Main and Brown's Marine Steam-Engine, 8vo. ....                                   | 12s. 6d. |
| — Indicator & Dynamometer, 8vo. ....                                              | 4s. 6d.  |
| — Questions on the Steam-Engine, 8vo. ....                                        | 5s. 6d.  |
| Mitchell's Stepping-Stone to Architecture, 18mo. Woodcuts .....                   | 1s.      |
| Seunett's Marine Steam Engine, 8vo. ....                                          | 21s.     |

London, LONGMANS & CO.

*Popular Astronomy & Navigation.*

|                                                                                                                                                         |          |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Ball's Elements of Astronomy, small 8vo. ....                                                                                                           | 6s.      |
| Brinkley's Astronomy, by Stubbs & Brünnow, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                              | 6s.      |
| Evers's Navigation & Great Circle Sailing, 18mo. ....                                                                                                   | 1s.      |
| Herschel's Outlines of Astronomy, Twelfth Edition, square crown 8vo. ....                                                                               | 12s.     |
| Jeans's Handbook for the Stars, royal 8vo. ....                                                                                                         | 4s. 6d.  |
| — Navigation and Nautical Astronomy, royal 8vo. <i>Practical</i> , 7s. 6d.<br>Part II. <i>Theoretical</i> , 7s. 6d. or the 2 Parts in 1 vol. price 14s. |          |
| Laughton's Nautical Surveying, small 8vo. ....                                                                                                          | 6s.      |
| Merrifield's Magnetism & Deviation of the Compass, 18mo. ....                                                                                           | 1s. 6d.  |
| Proctor's Lessons in Elementary Astronomy, fcp. 8vo. ....                                                                                               | 1s. 6d.  |
| — Library Star Atlas, folio. ....                                                                                                                       | 15s.     |
| — New Star Atlas for Schools, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                                           | 6s.      |
| — Handbook for the Stars, square fcp. 8vo. ....                                                                                                         | s.       |
| — Treatise on the Cycloid, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                                              | 10s. 6d. |
| The Stepping-Stone to Astronomy, 18mo. ....                                                                                                             | 1s.      |
| Tate's Astronomy and the use of the Globes, for Beginners, 18mo. ....                                                                                   | 9d.      |
| Webb's Celestial Objects for Common Telescopes, cr. 8vo. ....                                                                                           | 9s.      |

*Animal Physiology & Preservation of Health.*

|                                                                         |                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| Bray's Education of the Feelings, crown 8vo. ....                       | 2s. 6d.          |
| — Physiology and the Laws of Health, 11th Thousand, fcp. 8vo. ....      | 1s. 6d.          |
| — Diagrams for Class Teaching. ....                                     | per pair 6s. 6d. |
| Buckton's Food and Home Cookery, crown 8vo. ....                        |                  |
| Health in the House, crown 8vo. ....                                    | 2s.              |
| Corfield's Laws of Health, fcp. 8vo. ....                               | 1s. 6d.          |
| House I Live In ; Structure and Functions of the Human Body, 18mo. .... | 2s. 6d.          |
| Mapother's Animal Physiology, 18mo. ....                                | 1s.              |

*General Knowledge and Chronology.*

|                                                                          |         |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Crook's Events of England in Rhyme, square 16mo. ....                    | 1s.     |
| Slater's <i>Sententia Chronologica</i> , the Original Work, 12mo. ....   | 1s. 6d. |
| — — — improved by Miss Sewell, 12mo. ....                                | 2s. 6d. |
| Stepping-Stone (The) to Knowledge, 18mo. ....                            | 1s.     |
| Second Series of the Stepping-Stone to General Knowledge, 18mo. ....     | 1s.     |
| Sterne's Questions on Generalities, Two Series, each 2s. Keys ..... each | 4s.     |

*Mythology & Antiquities.*

|                                                                               |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Becker's <i>Gallus</i> , Roman Scenes of the Time of Augustus, post 8vo. .... | 7s. 6d.  |
| — <i>Charities</i> , illustrating the Private Life of the Ancient Greeks ...  | 7s. 6d.  |
| Ewald's Antiquities of Israel, translated by Solly, 8vo. ....                 | 12s. 6d. |
| Hort's New Pantheon, 18mo. with 17 Plates. ....                               | 2s. 6d.  |
| Rich's Illustrated Dictionary of Roman and Greek Antiquities, post 8vo. ....  | 7s. 6d.  |

*Biography.*

|                                                                             |         |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Glad's Life of the Duke of Wellington, crown 8vo. ....                      | 6s.     |
| Jones's Life of Sir Martin Froisher, crown 8vo. ....                        | 6s.     |
| Macaulay's Olive, annotated by H. O. Bowen, M.A. fcp. 8vo. ....             | 2s. 6d. |
| Mauder's Biographical Treasury, re-written by W. L. R. Oates, fcp. 8vo. 6s. |         |
| Stepping-Stone (The) to Biography, 18mo. ....                               | 1s.     |

*English History Reading Books.*

|                                                                         |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Powell's Stories from English History, fcp. 8vo. ....                   |         |
| — Alfred the Great and William the Conqueror, fcp. 8vo. ....            | 8d.     |
| Armitage's Richard I. and Edward I., fcp. 8vo. ....                     | 9d.     |
| Gardiner's Outlines, First Period. a.c. 55 to a.d. 1302, fcp. 8vo. .... | 1s.     |
| — — — Second Period, 1602 to 1880, fcp. 8vo. ....                       | 1s. 6d. |
| — English Parliamentary Government, fcp. 8vo. ....                      |         |
| Cox's British Rule in India, fcp. 8vo. ....                             | 2s.     |

London, LONGMANS &amp; CO.



*Epochs of Modern History.*

|                                                                               |                        |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| Church's Beginning of the Middle Ages, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                    | 2s. 6d.                |
| Cordery's French Revolution to the Battle of Waterloo .....                   | <i>In the press.</i>   |
| Cox's Crusades, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....                                          | 1s. 6d.                |
| Oreighton's Age of Elizabeth, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                             | 2s. 6d.                |
| Gairdner's Houses of Lancaster & York, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                    | 2s. 6d.                |
| Gardiner's Thirty Years' War, 1618-1648, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....                 | 2s. 6d.                |
| Gardiner's First Two Stuarts and the Puritan Revolution, fcp. 8vo. Maps ..... | 2s. 6d.                |
| Hale's Fall of the Stuarts, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....                              | 2s. 6d.                |
| Johnson's Normans in Europe, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                              | 2s. 6d.                |
| Longman's Frederick the Great and the Seven Years' War, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....  | 2s. 6d.                |
| Ludlow's War of American Independence, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                    | 2s. 6d.                |
| McCarthy's Epoch of Reform, 1830-1850 .....                                   | 2s. 6d.                |
| Moberly's Early Tudors .....                                                  | <i>In preparation.</i> |
| Morris's Age of Anne, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....                                    | 2s. 6d.                |
| — Early Hanoverians.....                                                      | <i>In preparation</i>  |
| Seeborn's Protestant Revolution, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....                         | 2s. 6d.                |
| Stubbs's Early Plantagenets, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....                             | 2s. 6d.                |
| — Empire under the House of Hohenstaufen .....                                | <i>In preparation.</i> |
| Warburton's Edward the Third, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....                            | 2s. 6d.                |

*Epochs of English History.*

|                                                                                 |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Oreighton's Shilling History of England, Introductory, fcp. 8vo.....            | 1s. |
| Browning's Modern History, from 1820 to 1876.....                               | 9d. |
| Cordery's Struggle against Absolute Monarchy, 1603-1688, fcp. Maps .....        | 9d. |
| Oreighton's England a Continental Power, 1066-1216, fcp. Maps. ....             | 9d. |
| — Tudors and the Reformation, 1485-1603, fcp. 8vo. Maps. ....                   | 9d. |
| Powell's Early England up to the Norman Conquest, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....           | 1s. |
| Rowley's Rise of the People and Growth of Parliament, 1215-1485, fcp. Maps. 9d. |     |
| — Settlement of the Constitution, 1688-1778, fcp. Maps .....                    | 9d. |
| Tancock's England during the Revolutionary Wars, 1778-1830. ....                | 9d. |
| Epochs of English History, complete in 1 vol. fcp. 8vo. ....                    | 5s. |

*British History.*

|                                                                           |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Armitage's Childhood of the English Nation, fcp. 8vo. ....                | 2s. 6d. |
| Cantlay's English History Analysed, fcp. 8vo. ....                        | 2s.     |
| Catechism of English History, edited by Miss Sewell, 18mo. ....           | 1s. 6d. |
| Epochs of English History, edited by Oreighton, fcp. 8vo. ....            | 5s.     |
| Gardiner's Outlines of English History, fcp. 8vo. ....                    | 2s. 6d. |
| Gleig's First Book of History—England, 18mo. 2s. or 2 Parts, 9d. each.    |         |
| — British Colonies, or Second Book of History, 18mo.....                  | 1s.     |
| — British India, or Third Book of History, 18mo.....                      | 9d.     |
| — Historical Questions on the above Three Histories, 18mo.....            | 9d.     |
| Littlewood's Essentials of English History, fcp. 8vo. ....                | 3s.     |
| Lupton's Examination-Papers in History, crown 8vo.....                    | 1s.     |
| — English History, revised, crown 8vo.....                                | 7s. 6d. |
| — Introductory Précis of History of England, fcp. 8vo.....                | 1s.     |
| Macaulay's History of England, Student's Edition, 2 vols. crown 8vo. .... | 12s.    |
| Morris's Class-Book History of England, fcp. 8vo.....                     | 3s. 6d. |
| The Stepping-Stone to English History, 18mo. ....                         | 1s.     |
| The Stepping-Stone to Irish History, 18mo. ....                           | 1s.     |
| Turner's Analysis of English and French History, fcp. 8vo. ....           | 2s. 6d. |

*Epochs of Ancient History.*

|                                                          |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Beesly's Gracchi, Marius and Sulla, fcp. 8vo. Maps ..... | 2s. 6d. |
| Cape's Age of the Antonines, fcp. 8vo. Maps .....        | 2s. 6d. |

London, LONGMANS &amp; CO.

|                                                                |         |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Capes's Early Roman Empire, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                | 2s. 6d. |
| Cox's Athenian Empire, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                     | 2s. 6d. |
| — Greeks & Persians, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....                       | 2s. 6d. |
| Curtius's Rise of the Macedonian Empire, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....   | 2s. 6d. |
| Ihne's Rome to its Capture by the Gauls, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....   | 2s. 6d. |
| Merivale's Roman Triumvirates, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....             | 2s. 6d. |
| Sankey's Spartan and Theban Supremacies, fcp. 8vo. Maps.....   | 2s. 6d. |
| Smith's Rome and Carthage, the Punic Wars, fcp. 8vo. Maps..... | 2s. 6d. |

### *History, Ancient & Modern.*

|                                                                          |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Browne's History of Greece, for Beginners, 18mo.....                     | 9d.      |
| — History of Rome, for Beginners, 18mo.....                              | 9d.      |
| Browning's Modern France, 1814—1879, fcp. 8vo.....                       | 1s.      |
| Gleig's History of France, 18mo.....                                     | 1s.      |
| Ihne's Roman History, 5 vols. 8vo.....                                   | 77s.     |
| Mangnall's Historical and Miscellaneous Questions, 12mo.....             | 4s. 6d.  |
| Maunder's Historical Treasury, with Index, fcp. 8vo.....                 | 6s.      |
| Merivale's History of the Romans under the Empire, 8 vols. post 8vo..... | 48s.     |
| — Fall of the Roman Republic, 12mo.....                                  | 7s. 6d.  |
| — General History of Rome, crown 8vo. Maps.....                          | 7s. 6d.  |
| Puller's School History of Rome, abridged from Merivale, fcp. Maps.....  | 3s. 6d.  |
| Rawlinson's Ancient Egypt, 2 vols. 8vo. Illustrations.....               | 63s.     |
| — Seventh Oriental Monarchy (the Sassanians) 8vo. Maps &c.....           | 28s.     |
| Sewell's Ancient History of Egypt, Assyria, and Babylonia, fcp. 8vo..... | 6s.      |
| — Catechism of Grecian History, 18mo.....                                | 1s. 6d.  |
| — Child's First History of Rome, fcp. 8vo.....                           | 2s. 6d.  |
| — First History of Greece, fcp. 8vo.....                                 | 3s. 6d.  |
| — Popular History of France, crown 8vo. Maps.....                        | 7s. 6d.  |
| Smith's Carthage and the Carthaginians, crown 8vo.....                   | 10s. 6d. |
| The Stepping-Stone to Grecian History, 18mo.....                         | 1s.      |
| The Stepping-Stone to Roman History, 18mo.....                           | 1s.      |
| Taylor's Student's Manual of Ancient History, crown 8vo.....             | 7s. 6d.  |
| — Student's Manual of Modern History, crown 8vo.....                     | 7s. 6d.  |
| — Student's Manual of the History of India, crown 8vo.....               | 7s. 6d.  |
| Turner's Analysis of the History of Greece, fcp. 8vo.....                | 2s. 6d.  |
| — Analysis of Roman History, fcp. 8vo.....                               | 2s. 6d.  |

### *Scripture History, Moral & Religious Works.*

|                                                                               |          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Ayre's Treasury of Bible Knowledge, fcp. 8vo.....                             | 6s.      |
| Boulbee's Commentary on the Thirty-Nine Articles, crown 8vo.....              | 6s.      |
| Bray's (Mrs.) Elements of Morality, fcp. 8vo.....                             | 2s. 6d.  |
| Browne's Exposition of the Thirty-Nine Articles, 8vo.....                     | 16s.     |
| Examination Questions on the above, fcp. 8vo.....                             | 3s. 6d.  |
| Corder's Handbook to the Bible, post 8vo. Maps, &c.....                       | 7s. 6d.  |
| Conybeare and Howson's Life and Epistles of St. Paul, 1 vol. crown 8vo....    | 7s. 6d.  |
| Davidson's Introduction to Study of the New Testament, 2 vols. 8vo.....       | 30s.     |
| Gleig's Sacred History, or Fourth Book of History, 18mo. 2s. or 2 Parts, each | 9d.      |
| Norris's Catechist's Manual, 18mo.....                                        | 1s. 3d.  |
| Potts's Paley's Evidences and Horæ Paulinæ, 8vo.....                          | 19s. 6d. |
| Pullblank's Teacher's Handbook of the Bible, crown 8vo.....                   | 5s. 6d.  |
| Riddle's Manual of Scripture History, fcp. 8vo 4s. Outlines of ditto, .....   | 2s. 6d.  |
| Rogers's School and Children's Bible, crown 8vo.....                          | 2s.      |
| Bothschild's History and Literature of the Israelites, 2 vols. crown 8vo.     |          |
| 12s. 6d. or in 1 vol. fcp. 8vo.....                                           | 3s. 6d.  |
| Sewell's Preparation for the Holy Communion, 32mo.....                        | 3s.      |
| — Private Devotions for Young Persons, 18mo.....                              | 2s.      |
| The Stepping-Stone to Bible Knowledge, 18mo.....                              | 1s.      |
| Whately's Introductory Lessons on Christian Evidences, 18mo.....              | 6d.      |
| — Auden's Analysis, 6d. Joly's Questions, 2d.                                 |          |

London, LONGMANS & CO.

*Mental & Moral Philosophy, & Civil Law.*

|                                                                        |          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Amos's Fifty Years of the British Constitution, crown 8vo.....         | 10s. 6d. |
| — Science of Jurisprudence, 8vo.....                                   | 1bs.     |
| Amos's Primer of English Constitution and Government, crown 8vo.....   | 6s.      |
| Bacon's Essays, with Annotations by Archbishop Whately, 8vo.....       | 10s. 6d. |
| — — annotated by Hunter, crown 8vo.....                                | 3s. 6d.  |
| — — annotated by Abbott, 2 vols. fcp. 8vo.....                         | 6s.      |
| Bain's Rhetoric and English Composition, crown 8vo.....                | 4s.      |
| — Mental and Moral Science, crown 8vo.....                             | 10s. 6d. |
| Hume's Treatise on Human Nature, by Green and Grose, 2 vols. 8vo.....  | 28s.     |
| — Essays, by the same Editors, 2 vols. 8vo.....                        | 28s.     |
| Killick's Student's Handbook of Mill's System of Logic, crown 8vo..... | 3s. 6d.  |
| Lewes's History of Philosophy from Thales to Comte, 2 vols. 8vo.....   | 32s.     |
| Lewis's Influence of Authority in Matters of Opinion, 8vo.....         | 14s.     |
| Mill's System of Logic, Ratiocinative and Inductive, 2 vols. 8vo.....  | 25s.     |
| Morell's Handbook of Logic, for Schools and Teachers, fcp. 8vo.....    | 2s.      |
| Rannie's Historical Outline of the English Constitution, fcp. 8vo..... | 2s. 6d.  |
| Sanders's Institutes of Justinian, 8vo.....                            | 18s.     |
| Stebbing's Analysis of Mill's Logic, 12mo.....                         | 3s. 6d.  |
| Swinburne's Picture Logic, crown 8vo.....                              | 5s.      |
| Thomson's Outline of the Necessary Laws of Thought, post 8vo.....      | 6s.      |
| Whately's Elements of Logic, 8vo. 10s. 6d. crown 8vo.....              | 4s. 6d.  |
| — Elements of Rhetoric, 8vo. 10s. 6d. crown 8vo.....                   | 4s. 6d.  |
| — Lessons on Reasoning, fcp. 8vo.....                                  | 1s. 6d.  |

*Principles of Teaching, &c.*

|                                                                          |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Crawley's Handbook of Competitive Examinations for 1882, crown 8vo. ...  | 2s. 6d.  |
| Gill's Text-Book of Education, Method and School Management, fcp. 8vo.   | 3s.      |
| — Systems of Education, fcp. 8vo.....                                    | 2s. 6d.  |
| — Art of Religious Instruction, fcp. 8vo.....                            | 2s.      |
| — Art of Teaching to Observe and Think, fcp. 8vo.....                    | 2s.      |
| — Loeke's Principles of Education, fcp. 8vo.....                         | 1s.      |
| Johnston's (Miss) Ladies' College and School Examiner, fcp. 1s. 6d. Key  | 2s. 6d.  |
| Johnston's (R.) Civil Service Guide, crown 8vo.....                      | 2s. 6d.  |
| — Guide to Candidates for the Excise, 18mo.....                          | 1s. 6d.  |
| — Guide to Candidates for the Customs, 18mo.....                         | 1s.      |
| Lake's Book of Oral Object Lessons on Common Things, 18mo.....           | 1s. 6d.  |
| Potts's Account of Cambridge Scholarships and Exhibitions, fcp. 8vo..... | 1s. 6d.  |
| Robinson's Manual of Method and Organisation, fcp. 8vo.....              | 2s. 6d.  |
| Sewall's Principles of Education, 2 vols. fcp. 8vo.....                  | 12s. 6d. |
| Sullivan's Papers on Education and School-Keeping, 12mo.....             | 2s.      |

*The Greek Language.*

|                                                                         |         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| Bloomfield's College and School Greek Testament, fcp. 8vo.....          | 5s.     |
| Bolland & Lang's Politics of Aristotle, post 8vo.....                   | 7s. 6d. |
| Bullinger's Lexicon and Concordance to Greek Testament, medium 8vo..... | 30s.    |
| Collis's Chief Tenses of the Greek Irregular Verbs, 8vo.....            | 1s.     |
| — Pontes Græci, Stepping Stone to Greek Grammar, 12mo.....              | 3s. 6d. |
| — Praxis Græca, Etymology, 12mo.....                                    | 2s. 6d. |
| — Greek Verse-Book, Praxis Iambica, 12mo.....                           | 6s. 6d. |
| Donaldson's Pindar's Epitaphian or Triumphal Odes, 8vo.....             | 16s.    |
| Farrar's Brief Greek Syntax and Accidence, 12mo.....                    | 4s. 6d. |
| — Greek Grammar Rules for Harrow School, 12mo.....                      | 1s. 6d. |
| Fowler's Short and Easy Greek Book, 12mo.....                           | 2s. 6d. |
| — Eton Greek Reading-Book, 12mo.....                                    | 1s. 6d. |
| — First Easy Greek Reading-Book, 12mo.....                              | 5s.     |

London, LONGMANS &amp; CO.

- Fowle's First Book of Homer's Iliad, 12mo. .... 2s.  
 Grant's Ethics of Aristotle, with Essays and Notes, 2 vols. 8vo. .... 52s.  
 Hewitt's Greek Examination-Papers, 12mo. .... 1s. 6d.  
 Isbister's Xenophon's Anabasis, Books I. to III. with Notes, 12mo. .... 3s. 6d.  
 Jerram's Graece Reddenda, crown 8vo. .... 1s. 6d.  
 Kennedy's Greek Grammar, 12mo. .... 4s. 6d.  
 Liddell & Scott's English Greek Lexicon, crown 4to. 36s. Square 12mo. .... 7s. 6d.  
 Liddell's Sophocles, Greek Text, Latin Notes, 4th Edition, 8vo. .... 16s.  
 — Theban Trilogy of Sophocles literally explained, crown 8vo. .... 7s. 6d.  
 Mahaffy's Classical Greek Literature, cr. 8vo. Poets, 7s. 6d. Prose Writers 7s. 6d.  
 Morris's Greek Lessons, square 18mo. .... Part I. 2s. 6d. Part II. 1s.  
 Parry's Elementary Greek Grammar, 12mo. .... 3s. 6d.  
 Plato's Parmenides, by Maguire, 8vo. .... 7s. 6d.  
 Sheppard and Evans's Notes on Thucydides, crown 8vo. .... 7s. 6d.  
 Thucydides' Peloponnesian War, translated by Crawley, 8vo. .... 10s. 6d.  
 Valpy's Greek Delectus, Improved by White, 12mo. 2s. 6d. .... Key 2s. 6d.  
 White's Xenophon's Expedition of Cyrus, with English Notes, 12mo. .... 7s. 6d.  
 Wilkins's Manual of Greek Prose Composition, crown 8vo. .... 7s. 6d. Key 5s.  
 — Exercises in Greek Prose Composition, crown 8vo. .... 4s. 6d. Key 2s. 6d.  
 — New Greek Delectus, crown 8vo. .... 3s. 6d. Key 1s. 6d.  
 — Progressive Greek Delectus, 12mo. .... 4s. Key 2s. 6d.  
 — Progressive Greek Anthology, 12mo. .... 5s.  
 — Scriptores Attici, Excerpts with English Notes, crown 8vo. .... 7s. 6d.  
 — Speeches from Thucydides translated, post 8vo. .... 6s.  
 Williams's Nicomachean Ethics of Aristotle translated, crown 8vo. .... 7s. 6d.  
 Yonge's English-Greek Lexicon .... 4to. 21s. Square 12mo. 8s. 6d.  
 Zeller's Plato and the Older Academy, by Alleyne & Goodwin, cr. 8vo. .... 18s.  
 — Pre-Socratic Schools, translated by Alleyne, 2 vols., crown 8vo. .... 30s.  
 — Socrates, translated by Reichel, crown 8vo. .... 10s. 6d.  
 — Stoics, Epicureans, and Sceptics, by Reichel, crown 8vo. .... 15s.

### White's Grammar-School Greek Texts.

- |                                                                                                                   |                                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Æsop (Fables) and Palsephatus (Myths), 32mo. .... Price 1s.                                                       | St. Matthew's and St. Luke's Gospels, 2s. 6d. each |
| Homer, Iliad, Book I. .... 1s.                                                                                    | St. Mark's and St. John's Gospels, 1s. 6d. each.   |
| — Odyssey, Book I. .... 1s.                                                                                       | The Acts of the Apostles ..... 2s. 6d.             |
| Lucian, Select Dialogues ..... 1s.                                                                                | St. Paul's Epistle to the Romans ..... 1s. 6d.     |
| Xenophon, Anabasis, Books I. III. IV. V. & VI. 1s. 6d. each; Book II. 1s.                                         |                                                    |
| Book I. without Vocabulary, 3d.                                                                                   |                                                    |
| The Four Gospels in Greek, with Greek-English Lexicon. Edited by John T. White, D.D. Oxon. Square 32mo. price 5s. |                                                    |

### White's Grammar-School Latin Texts.

- |                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                               |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cæsar, Gallic War, Books I. & II. V. & VI. 1s. each. Book I. without Vocabulary, 3d.                                                                                                             | Horace, Odes, Book III. .... 1s. 6d.                          |
| Cæsar, Gallic War, Books III. & IV. 9d. each.                                                                                                                                                    | Nepos, Miltiades, Cimon, Pausanias, Aristides ..... Price 9d. |
| Cæsar Gallic War, Book VII. .... 1s. 6d.                                                                                                                                                         | Ovid, Selections from Epistles and Fasti ..... 1s.            |
| Cicero, Cato Major ..... 1s. 6d.                                                                                                                                                                 | Ovid, Select Myths from Metamorphoses ..... 9d.               |
| Cicero, Lælius ..... 1s. 6d.                                                                                                                                                                     | Phædrus, Select Easy Fables ... 9d.                           |
| Eutropius, Roman History. Books I. & II. 1s. Books III. & IV. 1s.                                                                                                                                | Phædrus, Fables, Book I. & II. 1s.                            |
| Horace, Odes, Book I. II. & IV. 1s. each.                                                                                                                                                        | Sallust, Bellum Catilinæ ..... 1s. 6d.                        |
| Livy, Books XXII. and XXIII. The Latin Text with English Explanatory and Grammatical Notes, and a Vocabulary of Proper Names. Edited by John T. White, D.D. Oxon. 12mo. price 2s. 6d. each Book, | Virgil, Georgics, Book IV. .... 1s.                           |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Virgil, Æneid, Books I. to VI. 1s. each.                      |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Book I. without Vocabulary ... 3d.                            |
|                                                                                                                                                                                                  | Virgil, Æneid, Book X. .... 1s. 6d.                           |

London, LONGMANS & CO.

*The Latin Language.*

|                                                                                                                                      |          |             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------|-------------|
| Bradley's Latin Prose Exercises, 12mo. ....                                                                                          | 3s. 6d.  | Key 5s.     |
| — Continuous Lessons in Latin Prose, 12mo. ....                                                                                      | 5s.      | Key 5s. 6d. |
| — Cornelius Nepos, improved by White, 12mo. ....                                                                                     | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| — Ovid's Metamorphoses, improved by White, 12mo. ....                                                                                | 4s. 6d.  |             |
| — Select Fables of Phædrus, improved by White, 12mo. ....                                                                            | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| — Eutropius, improved by White, 12mo. ....                                                                                           | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| Collis's Chief Tenses of Latin Irregular Verbs, 8vo. ....                                                                            | 1s.      |             |
| — Pontes Latini, Stepping Stone to Latin Grammar, 12mo. ....                                                                         | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| Fowle's Short and Easy Latin Book, 12mo. ....                                                                                        | 1s. 6d.  |             |
| — First Easy Latin Reading-Book, 12mo. ....                                                                                          | 8s. 6d.  |             |
| — Second Easy Latin Reading-Book, 12mo. ....                                                                                         | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| — & Whitaker's Third Latin Reading-Book, 12mo. ....                                                                                  | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| Hewitt's Latin Examination-Papers, 12mo. ....                                                                                        | 1s. 6d.  |             |
| Isabister's Cæsar, Books I.—VII. 12mo. 4s. or with Reading Lessons ....                                                              | 4s. 6d.  |             |
| — Cæsar's Commentaries, Books I.—V. 12mo. ....                                                                                       | 8s. 6d.  |             |
| — First Book of Cæsar's Gallic War, 12mo. ....                                                                                       | 1s. 6d.  |             |
| Jerram's Latine Reddenda, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                            | 1s.      |             |
| Kennedy's Child's Latin Primer, or First Latin Lessons, 12mo. ....                                                                   | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| — Child's Latin Accidence, 12mo. ....                                                                                                | 1s.      |             |
| — Elementary Latin Grammar, 12mo. ....                                                                                               | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| — Elementary Latin Reading-Book, or Trocinum Latinum, 12mo. ....                                                                     | 2s.      |             |
| — Latin Prose, Palestra Stili Latini, 12mo. ....                                                                                     | 6s.      |             |
| — Subsidia Primaria, Exercise Books to the Public School Latin Primer, 1. Accidence and Simple Construction, 2s. 6d. II. Syntax .... | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| Key to the Exercises in Subsidia Primaria, Parts I. & II. price 5s.                                                                  |          |             |
| Kennedy's Subsidia Primaria, III, the Latin Compound Sentence, 12mo. ....                                                            | 1s.      |             |
| — Curriculum Stili Latini, 12mo. 4s. 6d. Key, 7s. 6d.                                                                                |          |             |
| — Palestra Latina, or Second Latin Reading-Book, 12mo. ....                                                                          | 5s.      |             |
| Kenny's Cæsar's Commentaries, Book I. 18mo. 1s. Books II. & III. ....                                                                | 1s.      |             |
| — Virgil's Æneid, Books I. II. III. & V. 18mo. .... each Book 1s.                                                                    |          |             |
| Moody's Eton Latin Grammar, 12mo. 2s. 6d. The Accidence separately ....                                                              | 1s.      |             |
| Parry's Origines Romane, from Livy, with English Notes, crown 8vo. ....                                                              | 4s.      |             |
| The Public School Latin Primer, 12mo. ....                                                                                           | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| — Grammar, by Rev. Dr. Kennedy, post 8vo. ....                                                                                       | 7s. 6d.  |             |
| Prendergast's Mastery Series, Manual of Latin, 12mo. ....                                                                            | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| Rapier's Introduction to Composition of Latin Verse, 12mo. ....                                                                      | 3s. 6d.  | Key 2s. 6d. |
| Riddle's Young Scholar's Lat.-Eng. & Eng.-Lat. Dictionary, square 12mo. ....                                                         | 10s. 6d. |             |
| Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, 6s.                                                                                       |          |             |
| { The English-Latin Dictionary, 6s.                                                                                                  |          |             |
| Riddle and Arnold's English-Latin Lexicon, 8vo. ....                                                                                 | 21s.     |             |
| Sheppard and Turner's Aids to Classical Study, 12mo. ....                                                                            | 5s.      | Key 6s.     |
| Valpy's Latin Delectus, improved by White, 12mo. ....                                                                                | 2s. 6d.  |             |
| Virgil's Æneid, translated into English Verse by Conington cr. 8vo. ....                                                             | 9s.      |             |
| — Works, edited by Kennedy, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                          | 10s. 6d. |             |
| — translated into English Prose by Conington, cr. 8vo. ....                                                                          | 9s.      |             |
| Walford's Progressive Exercises in Latin Elegiac Verse, 12mo. 2s. 6d. Key 5s.                                                        |          |             |
| White and Riddle's Large Latin-English Dictionary, 1 vol. 4to. ....                                                                  | 21s.     |             |
| White's Concise Latin-English Dictionary for Univ. Students, royal 8vo. 12s.                                                         |          |             |
| White's Junior Student's Eng.-Lat. & Lat.-Eng. Dictionary, sq. 12mo. ....                                                            | 12s.     |             |
| Separately { The Latin-English Dictionary, price 7s. 6d.                                                                             |          |             |
| { The English-Latin Dictionary, price 6s. 6d.                                                                                        |          |             |
| — Middle-Class Latin Dictionary, square fop. 8vo. ....                                                                               | 3s.      |             |
| — Cicero's Orationes, or Orationes, 12mo. ....                                                                                       | 3s. 6d.  |             |
| Wilkins's Progressive Latin Delectus, 12mo. ....                                                                                     | 2s.      |             |
| — Easy Latin Prose Exercises, crown 8vo. 2s. 6d. Key 2s. 6d.                                                                         |          |             |
| — Manual of Latin Prose Composition, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                 | 5s. 6d.  | Key 2s. 6d. |
| — Latin Prose Exercises, crown 8vo. ....                                                                                             | 4s. 6d.  | Key 5s.     |
| — Rules of Latin Syntax, 8vo. ....                                                                                                   | 2s.      |             |
| — Notes for Latin Lyrics (in use in Harrow, &c.) 12mo. ....                                                                          | 4s. 6d.  |             |
| — Latin Anthology, for the Junior Classes, 12mo. ....                                                                                | 4s. 6d.  |             |
| Yonge's Odes and Epodes of Horace, School Edition, 12mo. ....                                                                        | 1s. 6d.  |             |
| — Satires and Epistles of Horace, School Edition, 12mo. ....                                                                         | 5s.      |             |
| — Library Edition of the Works of Horace, 8vo. ....                                                                                  | 21s.     |             |
| — Latin Gradus, post 8vo. 9s. or with Appendix ....                                                                                  | 12s.     |             |

London, LONGMANS &amp; CO.

*The French Language.*

|                                                                                    |                                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Albites' How to Speak French, fcp. 8vo.....                                        | 5s. 6d.                           |
| — Instantaneous French Exercises, fcp. 2s. Key, 2s.                                |                                   |
| Cassal's French Genders, crown 8vo.....                                            | 3s. 6d.                           |
| Cassal & Karcher's Graduated French Translation Book, PART I. 3s. 6d. PART II. 5s. |                                   |
| Key to Part I. by Professor Cassal, price 5s.                                      |                                   |
| Contanseau's Practical French and English Dictionary, post 8vo.....                | 7s. 6d.                           |
| — Pocket French and English Dictionary, square 18mo.....                           | 3s. 6d.                           |
| — Premières Lectures, 12mo. ....                                                   | 2s. 6d.                           |
| — First Step in French, 12mo.....                                                  | 2s. 6d. Key 3s.                   |
| — French Grammar, 12mo. ....                                                       | 4s. Key 3s.                       |
| Contanseau's Middle-Class French Course, fcp. 8vo.                                 |                                   |
| — Accidence, 8d.                                                                   | French Translation-Book, 8d.      |
| — Syntax, 8d.                                                                      | Easy French Delectus, 8d.         |
| — French Conversation-Book, 8d.                                                    | First French Reader, 8d.          |
| — First French Exercise-Book, 8d.                                                  | Second French Reader, 8d.         |
| — Second French Exercise-Book, 8d.                                                 | French and English Dialogues, 8d. |
| Contanseau's Guide to French Translation, 12mo.....                                | 3s. 6d. Key 3s. 6d.               |
| — Prosateurs et Poètes Français, 12mo. ....                                        | 5s.                               |
| — Précis de la Littérature Française, 12mo. ....                                   | 3s. 6d.                           |
| — Abrégé de l'Histoire de France, 12mo.....                                        | 3s. 6d.                           |
| Merlet's French Grammar, fcp. 8vo.....                                             | 5s. 6d.                           |
| — French Pronunciation and Accidence, fcp. 3s. 6d. ....                            | } Key, price 3s. 6d.              |
| — Syntax of the French Grammar, fcp. 3s. 6d. ....                                  |                                   |
| — Le Traducteur, fcp. 8vo. ....                                                    | 5s. 6d.                           |
| — Stories for French Writers, fcp. 8vo.....                                        | 2s.                               |
| — Aperçu de la Littérature Française, fcp. 8vo. ....                               | 2s. 6d.                           |
| — Exercises in French Composition, fcp. 8vo. ....                                  | 3s. 6d.                           |
| — French Synonyms, fcp. 8vo. ....                                                  | 2s. 6d.                           |
| — Synopsis of French Grammar, fcp. 8vo. ....                                       | 2s. 6d.                           |
| Prendergast's Mastery Series, French, 12mo. ....                                   | 3s. 6d.                           |
| Sewall's Contes Faciles, crown 8vo.....                                            | 1s.                               |
| The Stepping-Stone to French Pronunciation, 18mo.....                              | 1s. 6d.                           |
| Souvestre's Philosophie sous les Toits, by Stiévenard, square 18mo. ....           | 4s. 6d.                           |
| Stiévenard's Lectures Françaises from Modern Authors, 12mo.....                    | 3s. 6d.                           |
| — Rules and Exercises on the French Language, 12mo.....                            | 6s. 6d.                           |
| Tarver's Eton French Grammar, 12mo.....                                            |                                   |

*German, Spanish, Hebrew, Sanskrit.*

|                                                                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Blackley's Practical German & English Dictionary, post 8vo. ....               | 7s. 6d.                            |
| Buchheim's German Poetry, for Repetition, 18mo.....                            | 3s. 6d.                            |
| Collis's Card of German Irregular Verbs, 8vo. ....                             | 2s.                                |
| Fischer-Fischart's Elementary German Grammar, fcp. 8vo.....                    | 2s. 6d.                            |
| Just's German Grammar, 12mo.....                                               | 1s. 6d.                            |
| — German Reading Book, 12mo. ....                                              | 3s. 6d.                            |
| Kalisch's Hebrew Grammar, 8vo. .... Part I. 12s. 6d. Key 5s. Part II. 12s. 6d. |                                    |
| Longman's Pocket German & English Dictionary, square 18mo. ....                | 5s.                                |
| Milne's Practical Mnemonic German Grammar, crown 8vo. ....                     | 3s. 6d.                            |
| Müller's (Max) Sanskrit Grammar for Beginners, royal 8vo. ....                 | 15s.                               |
| Naffel's Elementary German Course for Public Schools, fcp. 8vo.                |                                    |
| — German Accidence, 9d.                                                        | German Prose Composition Book, 9d. |
| — German Syntax, 9d.                                                           | First German Reader, 9d.           |
| — First German Exercise-Book, 9d.                                              | Second German Reader, 9d.          |
| — Second German Exercise-Book, 9d.                                             |                                    |
| Prendergast's Handbook to the Mastery Series, 12mo. ....                       | 2s.                                |
| — Mastery Series, German, 12mo. ....                                           | 2s. 6d.                            |
| — Manual of Spanish, 12mo.....                                                 | 2s. 6d.                            |
| — Manual of Hebrew, crown 8vo. ....                                            | 3s. 6d.                            |
| Quick's Essentials of German, crown 8vo. ....                                  | 3s. 6d.                            |
| Selas's School Edition of Goethe's Faust, crown 8vo. ....                      | 5s.                                |
| — Outline of German Literature, crown 8vo. ....                                | 4s. 6d.                            |
| Wirth's German Chit-Chat, crown 8vo. ....                                      | 2s. 6d.                            |

London, LONGMANS &amp; CO.

Spottiswoode &amp; Co. Printers, New-street Square, London.







11000, Mary B. Lottrop

